new interchange

English for international communication

Jack C. Richards

with Jonathan Hull and Susan Proctor

(CÓ CHÚ GIẢI TỪ VỰNG)

NEW EDITION

FULL ANSWERS

TAPE SCRIPTS

students

2



NHÀ XUẤT BẢN ĐẠI HỌC QUỐC GIA HÀ NỘI

new interchange

English for international communication

Jack C. Richards

with Jonathan Hull and Susan Proctor
(CÓ CHÚ GIẢI TỪ VỰNG)

student's dworkbook

2

Giới thiệu & chú giải : MINH THU

NHÀ XUẤT BẢN ĐẠI HỌC QUỐC GIA HÀ NỘ

LỜI GIỚI THIỆU

New Interchange 2 là giáo trình mới được chỉnh sửa, bố sung, cập nhật về mặt nội dung, bố cục, cách trình bày từ cuốn Interchange 2 do tác giả Jack C. Richards biên soạn, được nhà xuất bản Trường Đại học Cambridge phát hành lần đầu tiên năm 1991. New Interchange được coi là một trong những giáo trình phổ biến nhất, thành công nhất trên thế giới.

Với những thông tin cập nhật, các tình huống thiết thực với đời sống hàng ngày, giáo trình không những tạo cơ hội để người học nâng cao vốn kiến thức mà còn qua đó giúp người học thể hiện được những quan điểm, ý kiến của bản thân mình về những chủ để liên quan tới nhà trường, công việc, xã hội, giải trí... bằng tiếng Anh.

Giáo trình gồm 16 bài học và 4 bài ôn tập với các nội dung chính sau:

Snapshot: Phần này cung cấp một số thông tin mới, một số từ vựng và giới thiệu chủ đề thảo luận.

Conversation: Phần này giới thiệu ngữ pháp mới thông qua những cuộc đàm thoại hàng ngày.

Grammar focus: Trọng tâm ngữ pháp của bài học được giới thiệu một cách rõ ràng, dễ hiểu.

Fluency exercise: Với các bài tập thực hành cặp, thực hành nhóm, đóng vai, bạn có cơ hội luyện tập các tình huống trong bài.

Pronunciation: Nội dung này tập trung vào các đặc trưng về trọng âm, dấu nhấn, ngữ điệu của tiếng Anh trong giao tiếp.

Listening, Writing, Reading: Mục đích của các nội dung này là phát triển kỹ năng nghe, đọc và viết của bạn

Word power: Phần này giúp bạn nâng cao vốn từ vựng tiếng Anh và cách sử dụng từ vựng trong các ngữ cảnh khác nhau.

Interchange activity: Các bài tập trong phần này chiếm vị trí trung tâm của giáo trình, cho phép bạn phát triển toàn diện 4 kỹ năng: nghe - nói - đọc - viết.

Unit summaries: Cuối mỗi bài học sẽ có phần tổng kết bao gồm từ vựng, các cụm từ và ngữ pháp bổ sung của từng bài.

Chúng tôi hy vọng rằng cuốn sách sẽ đem lại cho bạn những giờ học tiếng Anh thú vi và bổ ích.

Chúc các bạn thành công!

Người giới thiệu Minh Thu

PUBLISHED BY THE PRESS SYNDICATE OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE

The Pitt Building, Trumpington Street, Cambridge, United Kingdom

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS

The Edinburgh Building, Cambridge CB2 2RU, UK 40 West 20th Street, New York, NY 10011-4211, USA 10 Stamford Road, Oakleigh, vic 3166, Australia Ruiz de Alarcón 13, 28014 Madrid, Spain Dock House, The Waterfront, Cape Town 8001, South Africa

http://www.cambridge.org

© Cambridge University Press 1997

This book is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements, no reproduction of any part may take place without the written permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 1997 15th printing 2001

New Interchange Student's Book 2 has been developed from Interchange Student's Book 2, first published by Cambridge University Press in 1991.

Printed in the United Kingdom at the University Press, Cambridge

Typeface New Century Schoolbook

System QuarkXPress*

[AH]

A catalog record for this book is available from the British Library

Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication data

Richards, Jack C.

New interchange: English for international communication:

student's book 2 / Jack C. Richards with Jonathan Hull and Susan Proctor.

Rev. ed. of: Interchange : English for international communication : student's book 2. 1991.

ISBN 0-521-62862-8

- English language Textbooks for foreign speakers.
- 2. Communication, International Problems, exercises, etc.
- I. Hull, Jonathan. II. Proctor, Susan. III. Richards,

Jack C. Interchange, IV. Title.

PE1128.R4593 1997

428.24 - dc21

97-27440

	0, 2, 1,0
	CIP
ISBN 0.521-62862-8. Student's Book 2	Also uvaitable
ISBN 0 521 62861 X Student's Book 2A	ISBN 0 521 62849 0 Video 2 (NTSC)
ISBN 0 521 62860 1 Student's Book 2B	ISBN 0521 62848 2 Video 2 (PAL)
ISBN 0 521 62859 8. Workbuok 2	ISBN 0 521 62847 4 Video 2 (SECAM)
ISBN U 521 62858 X Workbook 2A	ISBN 0 521 62846 6 Video Activity Book 2
ISBN 0-521-62857 Workbook 2B	isan 0.521 62845 8 Video Teacher's Guide 2
ISBN 0.524-62856 3. Teacher's Edition 2	ISBN 0 521 63887 9 Video Sampler 1-2
ISBN 0 521 62855 5. Teacher's Manual 2	ISBN 0 521 65594 3 CD-ROM (PC & Mac format)
ISBN -0-521-62854-7. Class Audio Cassettes 2	Forthcoming
ISBN 0 521 62852 0 Student's Audio Cassette 2A	ISBN 0.521 62882 2 Placement Test (revised)
isbn 0.521 62652 8 Student's Audio Cassette 2B	ISBN 0-521-77379-2 Lab Guide 2
688 0.521 62853 9 Class Audio CDs 2	ISBN 0-521-77378-4 Lab Cassettes 2
ISBN 0 521 62851 2 Student's Audio CD 2A	
ISBN 0.521-62850 4 Student's Audio CD 2B	Available from the First Edition
isas 0.521 95019 8 Audio Sampler 1=3	ISBN 0 521 46759 4 Placement Test
	ISBN 0 521 42220 5 Lab Guide 2
	(SBN 0.521 42219 1 Lab Classettes 2

Book design, art direction, and layout services: Adventure House, NYC

Illustrators: Adventure House, Jack and Judith DeGraffenried. Randy Jones, Susan Jones, Mark Kaulman, Kevin Spaulding, Bill Thomson, Sam Viviano

Photo researcher: Sylvia P. Bloch

Introduction

THE NEW EDITION

New Interchange is a revision of Interchange, one of the world's most successful and popular English courses. New Interchange incorporates many improvements suggested by teachers and students from around the world. Some major changes include many new Conversations, Snapshots, and Readings; more extensive Grammar Focus models and activities; a greater variety and amount of listening materials; extensive changes to the Teacher's Edition and Workbook; and additions to the Video.

New Interchange is a multi-level course in English as a second or foreign language for young adults and adults. The course covers the four skills of listening, speaking, reading, and writing, as well as improving pronunciation and building vocabulary. Particular emphasis is placed on listening and speaking. The primary goal of the course is to teach communicative competence, that is, the ability to communicate in English according to the situation, purpose, and roles of the participants. The language used in New Interchange is American English; however, the course reflects the fact that English is the major language of international communication and is not limited to any one country. region, or culture. This level is for intermediate students and takes them from the lowintermediate up to the intermediate level.

This level builds on the foundations for accurate and fluent communication already established in prior levels by extending grammatical, lexical, and functional skills. Because the syllabus covered in this Student's Book reviews language features taught at the prior level, students who have not previously used New Interchange can successfully study at this level.

COURSE LENGTH

Each full level of *New Interchange* contains between 70 and 120 hours of class instruction time. For classes where more time is available, the Teacher's Edition gives detailed suggestions for Optional Activities to extend each unit. Where less time is available, the amount of time spent on Interchange Activities, Reading, Writing, Optional Activities, and the Workbook can be reduced.

Each split edition contains approximately 35 to 60 hours of classroom material. The Student's Book, Workbook, and Student's Audio Cassettes or CDs are available in split editions.

COURSE COMPONENTS

The **Student's Book** contains 16 six-page units, each divided into two topical/functional "cycles," as well as four review units. At the back of the book are 16 communication tasks, called "Interchange Activities," and summaries of grammar and vocabulary taught in each unit.

The full-color **Teacher's Edition** features detailed teaching instructions directly across from the Student's Book pages, along with audio scripts, cultural notes, answer keys, and optional activities. At the back of the Teacher's Edition are instructions for Interchange Activities, an Optional Activities Index, a Workbook Answer Key, and four photocopiable Achievement Tests with audio scripts and answer keys.

The Workbook provides a variety of reading, writing, and spelling exercises to reinforce the grammar and vocabulary taught in the Student's Book. Each six-page unit follows the same teaching sequence as the Student's Book; some exercises recycle teaching points from previous units in the context of the new topic. The Workbook can be used for classwork or homework.

The Class Audio Program, available on cassette or CD, is intended for classroom use. The Conversations, Grammar Focus models, Pronunciation exercises, and Listening activities in the Student's Book are all recorded naturally with a variety of native and some nonnative accents. Recorded exercises are indicated with the symbol \Box .

The Student's Audio Program provides opportunities for self-study. It contains recordings of all Student's Book exercises marked with the symbol \square , except for the Listening tasks, which are intended only for classroom use. These tasks appear exclusively on the Class Audio Program and are indicated by the symbol \square

The Video offers entertaining dramatic or documentary sequences that review and extend language learned in each unit of the Student's Book. The Video Activity Book contains comprehension, conversation, and language practice activities, and the Video Teacher's Guide provides instructional support, answer keys, and photocopiable transcripts of the video sequences.

The CD-ROM, appropriate for home or laboratory use, offers a wealth of additional practice. Each of the 16 units is based on a sequence from the Video. Four tests help students monitor their progress.

The Placement Test helps determine the most appropriate level of New Interchange for incoming students. A booklet contains the four-skills test on photocopiable pages, as well as instructions for test administration and scoring. A cassette accompanies the listening section of the test.

The Lab Cassettes provide self-study activities in the areas of grammar, vocabulary, pronunciation, listening, and functional use of English. The Lab Guide contains photocopiable pages that guide students through the activities.

The **Teacher-Training Video** offers clear guidance for teaching each section of the Student's Book and professional development activities appropriate for individual or group use.

APPROACH AND METHODOLOGY

New Interchange teaches students to use English for everyday situations and purposes related to school, social life, work, and leisure. The underlying philosophy is that learning a second or foreign language is more rewarding, meaningful, and effective when the language is used for authentic communication. Throughout New Interchange, students are presented with natural and useful language. In addition, students have the opportunity to personalize the language they learn, make use of their own knowledge and experiences, and express their ideas and opinions.

KEY FEATURES

Adult and International Content New Interchange deals with contemporary topics that are of high interest and relevant to both students and teachers. The topics have been selected for their interest to both homogeneous and heterogeneous classes.

Integrated Syllabus New Interchange has an integrated, multi-skills syllabus that links topics, communicative functions, and grammar. Grammar – seen as an essential component of second and foreign language proficiency and competence – is always presented communicatively, with controlled accuracy-based activities leading to fluency-based communicative practice. In this way, there is a link between grammatical form and communicative function. The syllabus is carefully graded, with a gradual progression of teaching items.

Enjoyable and Useful Learning Activities A variety of interesting and enjoyable activities provides thorough individual student practice and enables learners to apply the language they learn. The course also makes extensive use of information-gap tasks; role plays; and pair, group, and whole class activities. Task-based and information-sharing activities provide a maximum amount of student-generated communication.

WHAT EACH UNIT CONTAINS

Snapshot The Snapshots graphically present interesting real-world information that introduces the topic of a unit or cycle, and also develop vocabulary. Follow-up questions encourage discussion of the Snapshot material and personalize the topic.

Conversation The Conversations introduce the new grammar of each cycle in a communicative context and present functional and conversational expressions.

Grammar Focus The new grammar of each unit is presented in color boxes and is followed by controlled and freer communicative practice activities. These freer activities often have students use the grammar in a personal context.

Fluency Exercise These pair, group, whole class, or role-play activities provide more personal practice of the new teaching points and increase the opportunity for individual student practice.

Pronunciation These exercises focus on important features of spoken English, including stress, rhythm, intonation, reductions, and blending.

Listening The Listening activities develop a wide variety of listening skills, including listening for gist, listening for details, and inferring meaning from context. Charts or graphics often accompany these task-based exercises to lend support to students.

Word Power The Word Power activities develop students' vocabulary through a variety of interesting tasks, such as word maps and collocation exercises. Word Power activities are usually followed by oral or written practice that helps students understand how to use the vocabulary in context.

Writing The Writing exercises include practical writing tasks that extend and reinforce the teaching points in the unit and help develop student's compositional skills. The Teacher's Edition demonstrates how to use the models and exercises to focus on the process of writing.

Reading The reading passages use various types of texts adapted from authentic sources. The Readings develop a variety of reading skills, including reading for details, skimming, scanning, and making inferences. Also included are pre-reading and post-reading questions that use the topic of the reading as a springboard to discussion.

Interchange Activities The Interchange Activities are pair work, group work, or whole class activities involving information sharing and role playing to encourage real communication. These exercises are a central part of the course and allow students to extend and personalize what they have practiced and learned in each unit.

Unit Summaries Unit Summaries are located at the back of the Student's Book. They contain lists of the key vocabulary and functional expressions, as well as grammar extensions for each unit.

FROM THE AUTHORS

We hope that you will like using New Interchange and find it useful, interesting, and fun. Our goal has been to provide teachers and students with activities that make the English class a time to look forward to and, at the same time, provide students with the skills they need to use English outside the classroom. Please let us know how you enjoy it and good luck!

Jack C. Richards Jonathan Hull Susan Proctor

Authors' Acknowledgments

A great number of people contributed to the development of *New Interchange*. Particular thanks are owed to the following:

The reviewers using the first edition of Interchange in the following schools and institutes - the insights and suggestions of these teachers and their students have helped define the content and format of the new edition: Jorge Haber Resque, Centro Cultural Brasil-Estados Unidos (CCBEU), Belém, Brazil; Lynne Roecklein, Gifu University, Japan; Mary Oliveira and Montserrat M. Dimal, Instituto Brasil-Estados Unidos (IBEU), Rio de Janeiro, Brazil; Liliana Baltra, Instituto Chileno Norte-Americano, Santiago de Chile; Blanca Arazi and the teachers at Instituto Cultural Argentino Norteamericano (ICANA), Buenos Aires, Argentina: Mike Millin and Kelley Seymour, James English School, Japan; Matilde Legorreta and Manuel Hidalgo, Kratos, S.A. de C.V., Mexico D.F.; Peg Donner, Ricia Doren, and Andrew Sachar, Rancho Santiago College Centennial Education Center, Santa Ana, California, USA; James Hale, Sundai ELS, Japan; Christopher Lynch, Sunshine College, Tokyo, Japan; Valerie Benson, Suzugamine Women's

College, Hiroshima, Japan; Michael Barnes, Tokyu Be Seminar, Japan; Claude Arnaud and Paul Chris McVay, Toyo Women's College, Tokyo, Japan; Maria Emilia Rey Silva, UCBEU, São Paulo, Brazil; Lilia Ortega Sepulveda, Unidad Lomoa Hermosa, Mexico D.F.; Eric Bray, Kyoto YMCA English School, Kyoto, Japan; John Pak, Yokohama YMCA English School, Yokohama, Japan; and the many teachers around the world who responded to the Interchange questionnaire.

The editorial and production team: Suzette André, Sylvia P. Bloch, John Borrelli, Mary Carson, Karen Davy, Samuela Eckstut, Randee Falk, Andrew Gitzy, Christa Hansen, Pauline Ireland, Stephanie Karras, Penny Laporte, Kathy Niemczyk, Kathleen Schultz, Rosie Stamp, and Mary Vaughn.

And Cambridge University Press staff and advisors: Carlos Barbisan, Kathleen Corley, Kate Cory-Wright, Riitta da Costa, Peter Davison, Peter Donovan, Robert Gallo, Cecilia Gómcz, Colin Hayes, Thares Keeree, Jinsook Kim, Koen Van Landeghem, Alex Martinez, Carine Mitchell, Chuanpit Phalavadhana, Sabina Sahni, Helen Sandiford, Dan Schulte, Ian Sutherland, Chris White, Janaka Williams, and Ellen Zlotnick.

Plan of the Book

	IO NONV	
Title/Topics	Functions	Grammar
UNIT 1 PAGES 2-7		
A time to remember People; childhood; reminiscences	Introducing yourself; talking about yourself; exchanging personal information; remembering your childhood; asking about someone's childhood	Past tense; used to for habitual actions
UNIT 2 PAGES 8-13		
Caught in the rush Transportation; transportation problems; city services	Talking about transportation and transportation problems; evaluating city services; asking for and giving information	Adverbs of quantity with countable and uncountable nouns: too many, too much, not enough, more, fewer, less; indirect questions from Wh-questions
UNIT 3 PAGES 14-19		
Time for a change! Houses and apartments; lifestyle changes; wishes UNIT 4 PAGES 20-25	Describing positive and negative features; making comparisons; talking about lifestyle changes; expressing wishes	Evaluations and comparisons with adjectives: not enough, too, not as as, as as; Evaluations and comparisons with nouns: not enough, as many as; Wish
I've never heard of that! Food; recipes; instructions; cooking methods	Talking about food; expressing likes and dislikes; describing a favorite snack; giving instructions	Simple past vs. present perfect; sequence adverbs: first, then, next, after that, finally
REVIEW OF UNITS 1-4 PAGES 26-27		
UNIT 5 PAGES 28-33		
Going places Travel; vacations; plans	Describing vacation plans; giving travel advice; planning a vacation	Future with be going to and will; modals for necessity and suggestion: (don't) have to, must, need to, better, ought to, should
UNIT 6 PAGES 34-39		
Sure. No problem! Complaints; household chores; requests; excuses; apologies	Making requests; accepting and refusing requests; complaining; apologizing; giving excuses	Two-part verbs; will for responding to requests; requests with modals and Would you mind?
UNIT 7 PAGES 40-45		
What's this for? Technology; instructions	Describing technology; giving instructions; giving advice	Infinitives and gerunds; infinitive complements
UNIT B PAGE 46-51		
Let's celebrate! Holidays; festivals; customs; celebrations	Describing holidays, festivals, customs, and special events	Relative clauses of time; adverbial clauses of time: before, when, after

REVIEW OF UNITS 5-8

PAGES 52-53

	Writing/Reading	Interchange Activity PAGE 106 UNIT 1
Listening to people talk about their past; listening for personal information Reduced form of used to	Writing an autobiography "Joan Chen": Reading about an actress's career	"Class profile": Finding out about a classmate's childhood
		PAGE 107 UNIT 2
Listening to a description of a transportation system; listening for incorrect information; listening to people ask for information	Writing a description of a city's transportation services "Stuck in an airport?: What to do ": Reading about ways to	"Making the city better": Suggesting ways to improve a city
Question intonation in Wh- questions and indirect questions	spend time in an airport	
		PAGE 108 UNIT 3
Listening to descriptions of apartments for rent; listening to comparisons; listening to people talk about lifestyle changes	Writing about a wish "Dreams Can Come True": Reading about people who changed their lifestyles	"Wishful thinking": Finding out about classmates' wishes
Sentence stress		PAGE 109 UNIT 4
Listening to descriptions of foods;	Writing a recipe	"Risky business": Collecting
listening to recipes Reduced forms of did you and have you	"Eating for Energy": Reading about how food affects physical and mental performance	personal information from classmates
		BLOSC 440 - 1440
Listening for descriptions of	Writing shout a vacation	
Listening for descriptions of vacation plans; listening to travel advice	Writing about a vacation "Getting more for less when you travel": Reading about how to save	PAGES 110 and 112 UNIT 5 "Fun vacations": Deciding on a trip
vacation plans; listening to travel advice Reduced forms of ought to and	_	
vacation plans; listening to travel advice	"Getting more for less when you travel": Reading about how to save	"Fun vacations": Deciding on a trip
vacation plans; listening to travel advice Reduced forms of ought to and	"Getting more for less when you travel": Reading about how to save	"Fun vacations": Deciding on a trip
vacation plans; listening to travel advice Reduced forms of ought to and have to Listening to requests; listening to complaints, excuses, and apologies	"Getting more for less when you travel": Reading about how to save money on travel arrangements Writing a persuasive letter "Summer in the Country": Reading	"Fun vacations": Deciding on a trip PAGE 111 UNIT 6 "That's no excuse!": Apologizing and making excuses
vacation plans; listening to travel advice Reduced forms of ought to and have to Listening to requests; listening to complaints, excuses, and apologies	"Getting more for less when you travel": Reading about how to save money on travel arrangements Writing a persuasive letter "Summer in the Country": Reading about the Fresh Air Fund Writing advice about a useful item "A Day in Your Life - In the Year 2020": Reading about life in	"Fun vacations": Deciding on a trip PAGE 111 UNIT 6 "That's no excuse!": Apologizing and making excuses
vacation plans; listening to travel advice Reduced forms of ought to and have to Listening to requests; listening to complaints, excuses, and apologies Stress with two-part verbs Listening to people describe how to use technology; listening to advice	"Getting more for less when you travel": Reading about how to save money on travel arrangements Writing a persuasive letter "Summer in the Country": Reading about the Fresh Air Fund Writing advice about a useful item "A Day in Your Life - In the	"Fun vacations": Deciding on a trip PAGE 111 UNIT 6 "That's no excuse!": Apologizing and making excuses PAGES 113 and 114 UNIT 7 "Good advice": Giving advice to
vacation plans; listening to travel advice Reduced forms of ought to and have to Listening to requests; listening to complaints, excuses, and apologies Stress with two-part verbs Listening to people describe how to use technology; listening to advice	"Getting more for less when you travel": Reading about how to save money on travel arrangements Writing a persuasive letter "Summer in the Country": Reading about the Fresh Air Fund Writing advice about a useful item "A Day in Your Life - In the Year 2020": Reading about life in	"Fun vacations": Deciding on a trip PAGE 111 UNIT 6 "That's no excuse!": Apologizing and making excuses PAGES 113 and 114 UNIT 7 "Good advice": Giving advice to classmates

Title/Topics UNIT 9 PAGES 54-59	Functions	Grammar
Back to the future Life in the past, present, and future; changes and contrasts; consequences UNIT 10 PASES 60-65	Talking about change; comparing time periods; describing possibilities	Time contrasts; conditional sentences with <i>if-</i> clauses
I don't like working on weekends! Abilities and skills; job preferences; personality traits; careers	Describing abilities and skills: talking about job preferences; describing personality traits	Gerunds; short responses; clauses with because
UNIT 11 PAGES 68-71		
It's really worth seeing! Landmarks and monuments; aspects of countries; world knowledge	Talking about landmarks and monuments; describing countries; discussing facts	Passive with by (simple past); passive without by (simple presen
UNIT 12 PAGES 72-77		
It's been a long time! Information about someone's past; recent past events	Asking about someone's past; describing recent experiences	Past continuous vs. simple past; present perfect continuous
REVIEW OF UNITS 9-12 PAGES 78-79		
UNIT 13 PAGES 80-85		
A terrific book, but a terrible movie! Entertainment; movies and books; reactions and opinions	Describing movies and books; talking about actors and actresses; asking for and giving reactions and opinions	Participles as adjectives; relative clauses
UNIT 14 PAGES 86-91		
So that's what it means! Nonverbal communication; gestures and meanings; emotions; proverbs; signs and meanings; drawing conclusions	Interpreting body language; explaining gestures and meanings; describing emotions; explaining proverbs; asking about signs and meanings	Modals and adverbs: might, may, could, must, maybe, perhaps, probably; permission, obligation, and prohibition
UNIT 15 PAGES 92-97		
What would you do? Money; hopes; predicaments; speculations	Speculating about past and future events; describing a predicament; giving advice and suggestions	Unreal conditional sentences with if-clauses; past modals
UNIT 16 PAGES 98-103		•
What's your excuse? Requests; excuses; invitations; "white lies"	Reporting what people say; making requests; making invitations and excuses	Reported speech: requests; report speech
REVIEW OF UNITS 13-16 PAGES 104-105		
UNIT SUMMARIES PAGES \$2-\$17		_
APPENDIX	·	

Listening/Pronunciation	Writing/Reading	Interchange Activity PAGES 176 UNITS
Listening to people talk about changes; listening to possible solutions to a problem Pitch	Writing about future hopes "Are You in Love?": Reading about the signs of being in love	"Consider the consequences": Agreeing and disagreeing with classmates
		PAGES 117 and 118 UNIT 10
Listening for job requirements; listening to people talk about their interests; listening to personality traits	Writing a personality description "Find the job that's right for you!": Reading about how to find the perfect job	"Dream job": Hiring an employee
Final t in not, don't, and can't		PAGES 119 UNIT 1
Listening to descriptions of monuments; listening for information about a country Linked sounds	Writing about a country "Seven Modern Wonders of the World": Reading about the modern wonders of the world	"Traveler's profile": Finding out about classmates' travel habits
		PAGE 120 UNIT 1
Listening to people talk about events in their careers; listening for information about someone's recent past	Writing a biography "Child Prodigies": Reading about child prodigies	"Life is like a game!": Finding out about classmates' lives
Contrastive stress		
		REVIEW OF UNITS 9-1
		PAGE 121 UNIT 1
Listening for opinions; listening to a movie review Word and sentence stress	Writing a movie review "Star Wars": Reading three movie reviews	"At the movies": Asking classmate opinions about movies and actors
		PAGE 122 UNIT 1
Listening to people interpret meanings; listening to people talk about the meanings of signs Emphatic stress	Writing an interpretation of a proverb "Body Language: What Does It Say?": Reading about body language	"What's going on?": Interpreting body language
		PAGE 120 UNIT 1
Listening to people talk about predicaments; listening to advice and suggestions	Writing a letter asking for advice "Ask Alice": Reading an advice column	"Do the right thing!": Deciding wh to do in a difficult situation
Reduced form of have		PAGES 119 and 125 UNIT I
Listening for excuses; receiving telephone messages	Writing telephone messages "The Truth About Lying": Reading	"Excuses, excuses": Making up
Reduced forms of had, would, and was	about "white lies"	REVIEW OF UNITS 13-
······································		UNIT SUMMARIE
		APPEND

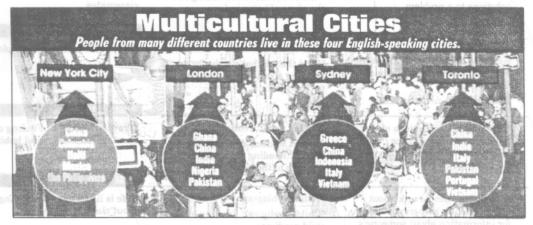
1

A time to remember

1 SNAPSHOT

Một thời để nhớ

Thông tin nhanh



Talk about these questions.

Source: UN Department for International, Economic, and Social Affairs

Why do you think these cities have so many immigrants?

Are there any immigrants in your city? Where are they from originally?

2 CONVERSATION

A Disten and practice.

Ted: Oh, I'm really sorry. Are you OK?

Ana: I'm fine. But I'm not very good at this.

Ted: Neither am I. Say, are you from South America?

Ana: Yes, I am, originally. I was born in Argentina.

Ted: Did you grow up there?

Ana: Yes, I did, but my family moved here

eight years ago, when I was in high school.

Ted: And where did you learn to Rollerblade?

Ana: Here in the park. This is only my second time.

Ted: Well, it's my first time. Can you give me

some lessons?

Ana: Sure. Just follow me.

Ted: By the way, my name is Ted. Ana: And I'm Ana. Nice to meet you.

B Listen to the rest of the conversation. What are two more things you learn about Ted?

originally (adv) grow up (v) immigrant (n) [o'rid3noli] [grou Ap]

['imigront]

đầu tiên/trước tiên lớn lên/trưởng thành người nhập cư



3 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trọng tâm ngữ pháp

Dact to	
rasi tel	126 (14)

Where were you born? Were you born in Brazil?

Where did you grow up? When did you move here?

Did you learn Spanish in high school? Did you go to college in California? I was born in South America.

No, I wasn't. I was born in Argentina.

I grew up in Buenos Aires.

I moved here eight years ago, when I was in high school.

No, I didn't. I studied it in college.

Yes, I did. I went to college in Los Angeles.

A Complete these conversations. Then practice with a partner.

1.	A:	Could you tell me a little about yourself?
		Where you born?

- B: I born in South Korea.
- A: you grow up there?
- B: No, I I up in Canada.
- 2. A: Where you to high school?
 - B: I to high school in Ecuador.
- 3. A: you study English when you a child?
 - B: Yes, I
 - A: How old you when you began to study English?
 - B: I eleven years old.

B Pair work Take turns asking the questions in part A. Give your own information when answering.



4 LISTENING

Nghe

Listen to interviews with two immigrants to the United States. Complete the chart.

		Yu Hong	Ajay
1 .	Where is he/she from? When did he/she move to the United States?		
	What does he/she do now? What is difficult about being an immigrant?		
5.	What does he/she miss the most?		

college (n)
to be born (v)

[ˈkɔlidʒ]

trường cao đẳng/đại học

được sinh ra

v) [tu bi: bɔ:n]

GETTING TO KNOW YOU

Tìm hiểu ban

A Pair work Interview a classmate you don't know very well. Ask questions like the ones below and take notes. Start like this:

A: Hi! My name's

B: Hello. I'm Nice to meet you.

A: Good to meet you, too. Could you tell me a little about yourself?

B: Sure. What do you want to know?

A: Well, where were you born?

Where were you born? Did you grow up there?

Where did you go to elementary school?

Where did you go to high school?

Did you study any foreign languages? When did you first study English?

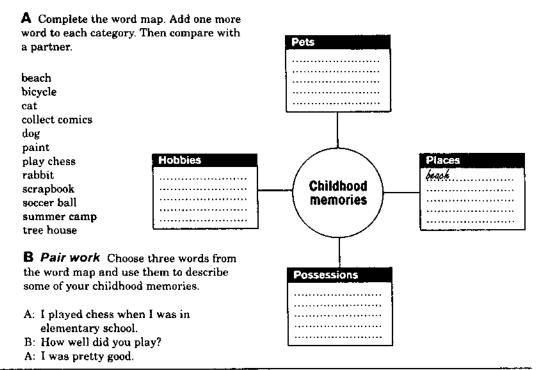
When did you graduate?

How old were you when you moved to . . .?

B Class activity Use your notes and introduce your partner to the class. Start like this:

"I'd like to introduce Angela. She was born in Mexico, but she grew up in a small town near Monterey, California."

6 WORD POWER When I was a child . . . Từ vựng: Khi tôi còn bé...



comic (n) memory (n)

elementary school (n)

[,eli'mentori,sku:l] ['komik]

['memori]

trường tiểu học truyện tranh vui ký ức/hổi ức

7 CONVERSATION





A E Listen and practice.

Jeff: Hey! Are these pictures of you when you were a kid?

Kim: Yeah. That's me in front of my uncle's beach house. When I was a kid, we used to spend two weeks there every summer.

Jeff: Wow, I bet that was fun!

Kim: Yeah. We always had a great time.
Every day we used to get up early and
walk along the beach. I had a great
shell collection. In fact, I think it's still
up in the attic!

Jeff: Hey, I used to collect shells, too, when I was a kid. But my parents threw them out!

CLASS AUDIO ONLY

B Listen to the rest of the conversation. What is Jeff's favorite childhood memory?

8 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trọng tâm ngữ pháp

Used to 🖽

Used to refers to something that you regularly did in the past but don't do anymore.

When I was a kid, we used to stay at my uncle's beach house.

Did you use to have a hobby? Yes, I used to collect shells.

What games did you use to play?
I used to play chess.

A Complete these sentences. Then compare with a partner.

- In elementary school, I used to
- 2. I used to be . . . , but I'm not anymore.
- 3. When I was a kid, I used to play.
- 4. After school, my best friend and I used to

B Pair work Write five more sentences about yourself using used to. Do you and your partner have anything in common?



[kid]	trẻ con/thẳng bé
[ʃel]	vỏ/mai
['ætik]	gác xép
[θrou aut]	ném/quăng
	[ʃel] [ˈætik]

9 PRONUNCIATION Used to

Phát âm: Used to

A - Discent and practice

A Disten and practice. Notice the pronunciation of used to

When I was a child, I used to play the violin.

I used to have a nickname.

one verile tool of our Lused to have a pet.

www.bixloranwell.modWI used to play hide-and-seek.

B Pair work Practice the sentences you wrote in Exercise 8 again. Pay attention to the pronunciation of used to.



10 MEMORIES

Kỷ niệm



A Pair work Add three questions to this list.

Then take turns asking and answering the questions.

- 1. What's your favorite childhood memory?
- 2. What sports or games did you use to play when you were younger?
- 3. Did you use to have a nickname?
- 4. Where did you use to spend your vacations?
- 5. Did you ever have a part-time job?

6.

8.

B Class activity Tell the class two interesting things about your partner.

11 WRITING

Việt

A Write about the things you used to do as a child. Use some of your ideas from Exercise 10.

When I was four years old, my family moved to Oregon.
We had an old two-story house and a big yard to play in.
My older brother and I used to play lots of games together.
In the summer, my favorite outdoor game was hide-and-seek.
It was both fun and scary because we

interchange 1

Class profile

Find out about your classmates. Turn to page IC-2.

B *Group work* Take turns reading your compositions aloud. Answer any questions from the group.

hide-and-seek (n) vacation (n) ['haidənd'si:k]

trò chơi trốn tìm

[vø'kei∫n]

kỳ nghỉ

Joan Chen

Do you know these film terms? actor/actress agent director

film studio

producer

a scene from The Last Emperor

(leading) part

Joan Chen is famous both in China, where she grew up, and in the United States, where she now lives. How did Joan become a famous actress in two countries? It's an interesting story.

Joan Chen was born in Shanghai in 1961. When she was 14, some people from a film studio came to her school and chose her to study at the studio. She was happy about this chance, but mainly she liked the idea of getting out of school. Soon, however, she discovered that she really liked acting. At age 18, she won the Golden Rooster, China's top film award.

In the late 1970s, Joan's parents, who were doctors, moved to the United States. Joan joined them when she was 20 and went to college there. Her parents hoped she would study medicine. Instead, she majored in film and later looked for



work as an actress. To work in the United States, Joan had to start all over again. She told Hollywood agents that she was an actress in China, but she only got some small parts in TV shows.

One day Joan went to speak to a director who was making a movie

called *Tai-Pan*. The interview didn't go well. As she walked away, a man in a car noticed her. The man was Dino DeLaurentiis, the film's producer. He immediately offered her a leading part. A year later, she starred in Bernardo Bertolucci's *The Last Emperor* and was on her way to worldwide fame.

A Read the article. Then put the events in Joan Chen's life into the correct order (1-8).

...... won the Golden Rooster appeared in *Tai-Pan*

left school and studied at a film studio

..... starred in The Last Emperor

studied film in college
moved to the United States

1. was born in China in 1961
got her first part in a TV show

B Group work Talk about these questions.

- 1. Do parents and children often have different ideas about careers?

 How are their ideas different?
- 2. Why is it sometimes difficult for people who move to another country to keep doing the same work?

actress (n) discover (v) worldwide (adj) ['æktris]
[dis'k\(\Lambda\)vo]
['wo:ld'waid]

nữ diễn viên khám phá/phát hiện trên toàn thế giới

2

Caught in the rush

Giữa dòng xe cộ

Từ vựng: Danh từ kép

1 WORD POWER Compound nouns

A Match the nouns in columns A and B to make compound nouns. (More than one answer is possible.)

subway + entrance = subway entrance

A B
subway entrance
traffic stop
bus light
bicycle station
stop sign
parking lane

street stand news jam taxi space



a traffic light

B Pair work How many compound nouns can you make beginning with these words?

police

telephone

fire

train

2 CONVERSATION

A De Listen and practice.

Lynn: Why is there never a bus when you want one?

Sam: Good question. There aren't enough buses on this route.

Lynn: Sometimes I feel like writing a letter to the paper.

Sam: Good idea. You should say that we need more

subway lines, too.

Lynn: Yeah. There should be more public transportation in general.

Sam: And fewer cars! There's too much traffic.

Lynn: Say, is that our bus coming? Sam: Yes, it is. But look. It's full!

Lynn: Oh, no! Let's go and get a cup of coffee. We can talk about this letter I'm going to write.

B Listen to the rest of the conversation. What else is wrong with the transportation system in their city?

jam (n) [d3æm] tắc nghẽn entrance (n) ['entrons] lối vào lane (n) [lein] làn đường light (n) [lait] đèn





GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trong tâm ngữ pháp

Adverbs of quantity [2]

With countable nouns There are too many cars. There is too much traffic. There aren't enough buses. There isn't enough parking. We need more subway lines. We need more public transportation.

With uncountable nouns

There should be fewer cars. There should be less pollution.

A Complete these statements about transportation problems. Then compare with a partner. (More than one answer may be possible.)

 There are police of 	fficers.
---	----------

- 2. There should be cars in the city.
- 3. There is public transportation.
- 4. The government needs to build highways.
- 5. There should be noise.
- 6. We should have public parking garages. ogan
- 7. There is air pollution in the city.
- 8. There are cars parked on the streets.

B Group work Complete these statements about the city you are living in. Then compare with others.

- 1. The city needs to provide more 4. There should be fewer
- 2. We have too many 5. We don't have enough . .
- 3. There's too much

LISTENING

- 6. There should be less . . .

Nghe

A Delta Listen to someone talk about how Singapore has tried to solve its traffic problems. Check () True or False for each statement.

and the second of the second of the second	True	False
Motorists are never allowed to drive into the business district.		
2. People need a special certificate to be able to buy a car.		
3. Cars cost much more than they do in the United States and Canada.		
4. Public transportation still needs to be improved.		

B 🖦 Listen again. For the statements that you marked false, write the correct information.

C Class activity Could the solutions adopted in Singapore work in your city? Why or why not?

provide (v)	[pro'vaid]	cung cấp
district (n)	['distrikt]	huyện/quận
improve (v)	[im'pru:v]	củng cố/cải thiện

YOU BE THE JUDGE!

Ban hãy là người phán xét

A Group work How would you rate the transportation services in your city? Complete the chart. Give each item a rating from 1 to 5.

1 = terrific

2 = good

3 = average (OK) 4 = needs improvement

...... taxi service the bus system

..... the train system

..... facilities for pedestrians

...... the subway system parking

B Class activity Explain your ratings to the class.

"We gave taxi service a rating of 4. We think the city needs more taxis and cheaper fares. Also, taxi drivers should be more polite."

Making the city better

Suggest ways to improve a city. Turn to page IC-3.

WRITING

Việt

Write a paragraph about transportation in your city.

Public transportation is good in my city. We have an excellent bus system. The traffic moves quickly, except at rush hour. However, we need more public parking. There aren't enough parking spaces downtown, so it always takes too much time to find a space.

SNAPSHOT

Thông tin nhanh



Talk about these questions.

Source: World Book Encyclopedia

Have you used any of these kinds of transportation? Are there any unusual forms of transportation in your city or country? What kinds of transportation do you usually use?

system (n) pedestrian (n) facilities (n) kind of transportation (n) ['sistem] [pi'destrion] [fo'siliti] [kaind ov ,trænspo:'teisn]

hê thống người đi bô điều kiện/phương tiện dễ dàng phương tiên giao thông

CONVERSATION

Đàm thoai

A 🗐 Listen and practice.

Erica: Excuse me. Could you tell me where the

bank is?

Man: There's one upstairs, across from the

duty-free shop.

Erica: Oh, thanks. Do you know what time it opens?

Man: It should be open now. It opens at 8:00 A.M.

Erica: Good. And can you tell me how often the buses

leave for the city?

Man: You need to check at the transportation

counter: It's right down the hall.

Erica: OK. And just one more thing. Do you know where the nearest restroom is?

Man: Right behind you, ma'am. See that sign?

Erica: Oh. Thanks a lot.

B 🗐 Listen to the rest of the conversation. Check (1) the information that Erica asks for.

☐ the cost of a taxi to the city

the location of a cash machine

the location of a restaurant the location of the taxi stand

GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trong tâm ngữ pháp

Indirect questions from Wh-questions

Wh-questions with be

Where is the bank?

Where is the taxi stand?

Wh-questions with do or did

How often do the buses leave for the city?

When did Flight 566 arrive?

What time does the duty-free shop open?

Indirect questions

Could you tell me where the bank is?

Do you know where the taxi stand is?

Indirect questions

Can you tell me how often the buses leave for the city?

Do you know when Flight 566 arrived?

Do you know what time the duty-free shop opens?

A Write indirect questions using these Wh-questions.

Then compare with a partner.

- 1. How much does a newspaper cost?
- 2. Where is the nearest cash machine?
- 3. What time do the banks open?
- 4. How often do the buses come?
- 5. Where can you get a good hamburger?
- 6. How late do the nightclubs stay open?

B Pair work Take turns asking the questions you wrote in part A.

Give your own information when answering.

- A: Do you know how often the buses come?
- B: Every half hour.

leave (v) counter (n) [li:v]

['kaunto] ['naitklAb] rời đi

quầy hướng dẫn

hộp đêm

nightelub (n)

PRONUNCIATION Question intonation Phát âm: Ngữ điệu của câu hỏi

A 🕒 Listen and practice. Wh-questions usually have falling intonation. Indirect questions usually have rising intonation.

What time does the duty-free shop open?

Where is the taxi stand?

Can you tell me what time the duty-free shop opens? Do you know where the taxi stand is?

B Practice these questions. Pay attention to question intonation.

Where is Adam Street? Could you tell me where Adam Street is? What time does the department store open? Do you know what time the department store opens?

TOURISTS

Du khách

A Pair work What would a tourist visiting your city ask about? Think of six questions about transportation, accommodations, sightseeing, and other services in your city.

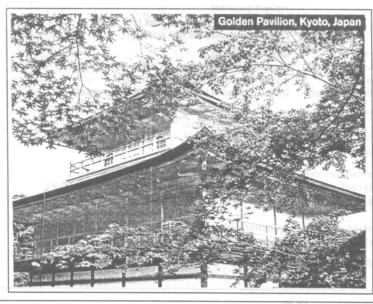
B Group work Take turns asking and answering your questions.

A: Can you tell me where the Golden Pavilion is?

B: Let me think. Oh, yes, it's

useful expressions

Let me think. Oh, yes, I'm not really sure. but I think Sorry, I don't know. It's close to/near . . . It's on the corner of . It's next to



sightseeing (n) service (n) accommodation (n) ['sait,si:in] ['so:vis] [ø,komø'dei∫n]

thắng cảnh/cuộc tham quan dich vu chỗ ở

12 READING

Stuck in an Airport?

What to do . . .

What do people usually do while they're waiting in an airport?

Many people are upset when their flight is delayed. Not only do they have to change their schedule but, even worse, they have to wait in an airport! There's no need to be upset, though. Airports are much better places these days than most people realize.

- Belief: Airport food is bad as bad as airplane food.
- Reality: Airports have fine international cuisine – from fresh seafood in London to Korean barbecue in Honolulu. And you can stock up on something to have for later – for example, cheese and caviar in Paris.





- Belief: Shopping in airports is great, that is, if you need a T-shirt.
- Reality: In Amsterdam, you
 can buy anything from perfume
 to diamonds. In El Paso, Texas,
 you can buy antique knives or
 regional art. The art is so
 interesting that some people fly
 to El Paso just to visit the airport
 gallery. And Singapore's airport
 is known for some of the best
 shopping in the world!



- Belief: Airports make people uncomfortable and tense.
- Reality: The airport at Honolulu
 has peaceful gardens. Pittsburgh
 has a meditation room: When you
 walk in, relaxing music comes
 on and pictures of clouds are
 projected on the walls. If you
 prefer exercise, hotels at the
 airports in Los Angeles, Dallas,
 and many other cities have fitness
 centers that anyone can use.

So, the next time you're stuck in an airport, have some fun!

A Read the article. In which airport can you do the following? Write the letter of the correct place.

- 1. meditate surrounded by music and clouds
- 2. eat Korean barbecue
- 3. buy an interesting painting
- 4. exercise in a fitness center
- 5. buy a diamond
- 6. visit one of the world's best shopping places
- a. Amsterdam
- b. Dallas
- c. Singapore
- d. Honolulu
- e. Pittsburgh
- f. El Paso

B Group work Talk about these questions.

- Which airport mentioned in the article would you prefer to wait in? Why?
- 2. Imagine your flight is delayed. What would you prefer to do: eat, shop, or relax? Anything else?

to be upset delay (v) schedule (n) cuisine (n) perfume (n) diamond (n) [tu bi: Ap'set]
[di'lei]

['daiomond]

['fedju:l; 'sked3ul] [kwi':zi:n] ['po:fiu:m] buồn bực trì hoãn

trì noan lịch trình/thời gian biểu cách nấu nướng nước hoa kim cương

3

Time for a change!

Đến lúc phải thay đổi

1 WORD POWER Houses and apartments

Từ vưng: Nhà và căn hộ

A These adjectives are used to describe houses and apartments. Which words are positive? Which are negative? Write P or N next to each word.

bright	. Р	dingy	private	
comfortable		expensive	 quiet	fine.
convenient		huge	 safe	from fre
cramped		inconvenient	 shabby	RE970.
dangerous		modern	 small	nov brut
dark	odny nastag	noisy	 spacious	of year

B Pair work Tell your partner two positive and two negative features about your house or apartment.

"My apartment is very dark and a little cramped. However, it's in a safe neighborhood and it's very private."



2 CONVERSATION Apartment hunting

A Delisten and practice.

Mr. Dean: What do you think?

Mrs. Dean: Well, it has just as many bedrooms as

the last apartment. And the living

room is huge.

Jenny: But the bedrooms are too small.

And there isn't enough closet space

for my clothes.

Mr. Dean: And it's not as cheap as the last

apartment we saw.

Mrs. Dean: But that apartment was dark and dingy.
And it was in a dangerous neighborhood.

Mr. Dean: Let's see if the real estate agent has

something else to show us.

B Listen to the Deans talk about another apartment. What does Jenny like about it? What doesn't she like?

cramped (adj) shabby (adj) spacious (adj) inconvenient (adj)

[kræmpt] ['fæbi] ['speifos] [,inkon'vi:njont] chật hẹp/tù túng tồi tàn/tiều tuy rộng rãi/nhiều chỗ không thuận tiện

Đàm thoại: Tìm căn hô



3 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trọng tâm ngữ pháp

Evaluations and comparisons 🖙

Evaluations with adjectives
The kitchen isn't big enough.
The living room is too small.

There isn'

Comparisons with adjectives
It's not as cheap as the last apartment.
It's almost as cheap (as the last apartment).

Evaluations with nouns
There aren't enough bedrooms.
There isn't enough closet space.

Comparisons with nouns

It doesn't have as many bedrooms as the last apartment. It has just as many bedrooms (as the last apartment).

A Read the opinions about these apartments. Then rephrase the opinions using the words in parentheses.



Apartment 1

- 1. There are only a few windows. (not enough)
- 2. It's not bright enough. (too)
- 3. It has only one bathroom. (not enough)
- 4. It's not convenient enough. (too)

"There aren't enough windows."

Older, small apartment 2 bedrooms, 2 bathrooms; located downtown, by the commuter train; 1 parking space; \$800 per month.

Apartment 2

- 5. It's not spacious enough. (too)
- 6. It's too old. (not enough)
- 7. It isn't quiet enough. (too)
- 8. There's only one parking space. (not enough)

Apartment 1 isn't as bright as Apartment 2.

B Write comparisons of the apartments using the words below and as . . . as. Then compare with a partner.

Apartment 1

Apartment 2

bright

hig

bedrooms

expensive

bathrooms

modern

C Pair work Compare living in an apartment to living in a house. Which would you prefer to live in?

A: A house is not as expensive as an apartment.

B: Yes, but an apartment is too small for a large family.

locate (v) modern (adj) apartment (n) [lou'keit]

phân bổ

['mɔdən]
[ə'pa:tmənt]

hiện đại căn hộ/căn phòng

phong

PRONUNCIATION Sentence stress Phát âm: Trong âm của câu

carry the most important information.

The apartment isn't big enough.

There aren't enough closets.

The kitchen is too cramped.

There isn't enough light.

B Pair work Practice the sentences you wrote in part A of Exercise 3. Pay attention to sentence stress.

FI LISTENING

Nghe

A 🚍 // Listen to three people call about apartment advertisements. Check (1) the words that best describe each apartment.

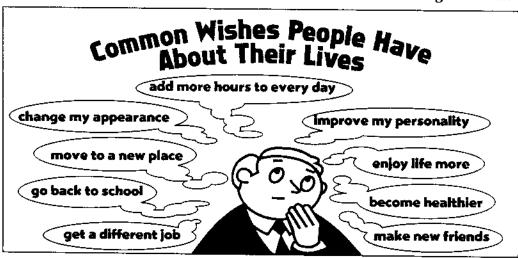
- 1. 🗌 quiet □ noisy □ spacious □ cramped
- 2. Spacious small small ☐ convenient ☐ inconvenient
- 3. appensive □ sofe
- ☐ reasonable ☐ dongerous

- ☐ modern blo 🔲
- □ pulet
- ☐ noisy
- ☐ dark
- 🗆 liaht

B 💌 Listen again. Do you think each caller is going to rent the apartment? Why or why not?

SNAPSHOT

Thông tin nhanh



Talk about these questions.

Based on interviews with adults between 18 and 50

Which of these things would you like to do? Give some examples. What other things would you like to change about your life? Why?

dark (adj)

[da:k]

tới

dangerous (adj) appearance (n)

['deind3res] [openrons]

nguy hiểm

hình dáng/vẻ bể ngoài

Đàm thoại: Mong ước

7 CONVERSATION Making wishes

A DE Listen and practice.

Brian: So where are you working now, Terry?

Terry: Oh, I'm still at the bank. I don't like it, though.

Brian: That's too bad. Why not?

Terry: Well, it's boring, and it doesn't pay very well. Brian: I know what you mean. I don't like my job

either. I wish I could find a better job.

Terry: Actually, I don't want to work at all anymore.

I wish I had a lot of money so I could retire now.

Brian: Hmm, how old are you, Terry?

Terry: Uh, twenty-six.

B Listen to the rest of the conversation. What other changes would Brian and Terry like to make?



8 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Wish 🖦

Wish is followed by past tense forms but refers to the present.

Fact

Wish

I don't like my job.

I wish (that) I could find a better job.

i wish I worked somewhere else.

Llive with my parents.

I wish I lived in my own apartment.

I wish I didn't live with my parents.

Life is difficult.

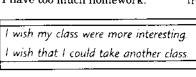
I wish it were * easier.

I wish it weren't so difficult.

*After wish, were is used with I, he, she, and it.

Write a response using wish for each statement. Then compare with a partner. (More than one answer is possible.)

- 1. My class is boring.
- 2. I have to take the bus to work every day.
- 3. Our apartment is too small.
- 4. I have too much homework.
- 5. I'm not in good shape.
- 6. I'm single.
- 7. I don't have enough money.
- 8. I don't have any free time.



Trọng tâm ngữ pháp



mean (v) retire (v) [mi:n]

nghĩa là

wish (n)

(ri'taio) [wi∫] về hưu mong ước

9 LISTENING

Nghe

A Delisten to four people talk about things they wish they could change. Check () the topic each person is talking about.

Topic					
1. apartment job	2. leisure school		4. interests appearance		

B Listen again. What change would each person like to make? Why?

interchange 3

Wishful thinking

Find out about your classmates' wishes.
Turn to page
IC-4.

10 TIME FOR A CHANGE

A What do you wish were different about these situations? Write down your wishes. Then compare with a partner.

your appearance your family your school or job your home your skills your free time

B Group work Choose two of your wishes from part A. Take turns talking about your wishes and how you would make the necessary changes.

- A: I wish I could change my job.
- B: Really?
- A: Yes. I'd like to be a musician.
- C: A musician? Wow!
- A: I'd like to play the guitar in a rock band. I could take guitar lessons. And then . . .

Đến lúc phải thay đổi



11 WRITING

grand man Viêt

A Write about one of your wishes from Exercise 10.

I wish I had more free time. I take classes all day, and I have a part-time job in the evening. At home, I spend my time studying or doing chores around the house. I'd like to have more time to read and go out with my friends.

B Pair work Take turns reading your compositions with a partner. Give your partner suggestions for making the change.

skill (n) band (n) [skil] [bænd] kỹ năng ban nhạc

18

Dreams Can Come True

Do you know anyone who made a big change in his or her lifestyle?

t the age of 40, Tom Bloch was the head of H&R Block, a huge company that helps people prepare their tax forms. He was very successful. Although Bloch earned a lot of money, he wasn't very happy: He spent too much time at work and didn't have enough time to spend with his family. Suddenly, he left H&R Block and became a teacher in a poor neighborhood. "I wanted to . . . help people who didn't have the opportunities I had," Bloch explained.

Learning to control the students was hard at first. But the rewards - helping children and hearing students say he's their favorite teacher - are great. And Bloch is able to spend more time with his family.





or eleven years, Tom Neale worked as a lawyer, and his wife, Mel, worked as a teacher; they saved every penny they could. Finally, they had enough money to buy a boat. That was seventeen years ago, and, except for occasional stops, they have been at sea ever since.

For the Neales and their two daughters, the difficulties of their lifestyle are very real: There's not much money, so meals are often rice and beans (and fish!). Storms are dangerous, especially when the boat is far from land. But Tom Neale says overcoming dangers together as a family is one of the rewards of their way of life. Another, he says, is "seeing the starfish on the bottom of the sea in the moonlight."

A Read the article. What do these people do now? What is one difficulty with their new lifestyles? What is one reward? Complete the chart.

	What they do now	Difficulty	Reward
1. Tom Bloch	TYSS VIII	They sound strange.	
2. the Neales		ve the snarls blease.	

B Group work Talk about these questions.

- 1. Who do you think made the more difficult change in lifestyle, Tom Bloch or the Neales? Explain your answer.
- 2. Would you like to be one of the Neales' children? Why or why not?
- 3. What are some reasons people those in the article and others change their lifestyles?
- 4. Would you like to change your lifestyle? If so, how?

at the age of suddenly (adv) starfish (n) moonlight (n)

[ot fi eig ov] ['s∧dnli]

ở độ tuổi

['sta:fi/] ['mu:nlait] đột nhiên/đột ngột sao biển ánh trăng



I've never heard of that!

Tôi chưa bao giờ nghe nói đến món đó

1 SNAPSHOT

Thông tin nhanh



Talk about these questions.

Sources: Fodor's South America, Fodor's Southeast Asia, World Book Encyclopedia

Have you ever tried any of these dishes? Which ones would you like to try? What other ethnic food can you try in your city? What are three popular dishes in your country?

2 CONVERSATION

A D Listen and practice.

Kathy: Hey, this sounds good - snails with garlic!

Have you ever eaten snails?

John: No, I haven't.

Kathy: Oh, they're delicious! I had them last time.

Like to try some?

John: No, thanks. They sound strange.

Waitress: Have you decided on an appetizer yet? Kathy: Yes. I'll have the snails, please.

Waitress: And you, sir?

John: I think I'll have the fried brains.

Kathy: Fried brains? Now that really

sounds strange!

B Listen to the rest of the conversation. How did John like the fried brains? What else did he order?

	011	
shrimp (n)	[frimp]	con tôm wod os
beans (n)	[bi:n]	đậu/hạt đầu
garlic (n)	['ga:lik]	tỏi
raw seafood (n)	[ro: 'si:fud]	hải sản tươi sống



3 PRONUNCIATION Reduced forms

Phát âm: Dang rút gon

Listen and practice. Notice how did you and have you are pronounced in these questions.

Did you skip breakfast this morning?
Did you cook your own dinner last night?

Have you ever tried Indian food?
Have you ever eaten snails?

4. GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trọng tâm ngữ pháp

Simple past vs. present perfect 🗐

Simple past: completed events at a definite time in the past

Did you eat snails at the restaurant last night?

No. I didn't.

Did you go out for dinner on Saturday? Yes, I did.

I went to a Korean restaurant last week.

Present perfect: events within a land to

Have you ever eaten snails? No. I haven't.

Have you been to a French restaurant?
Yes. I have.

I've never been to a Greek restaurant.

A Complete these conversations. Then practice with a partner. (See the appendix for help with verb forms.)

- 1. A: Have you ever..... (be) to a picnic at the beach?
 - B: Yes, I It was fun!
- 2. A: Did you (have) dinner at home last night?
 - B: No, I (go) out for dinner.
- 3. A: Have you(try) sushi?
 - B: No, I, but I'd like to.
- 4. A: Did you(have) breakfast this morning?
- 5. A: Have you ever(eat) at a Mexican restaurant?
 - B: Yes, I The food was delicious!

B Pair work Take turns asking and answering the questions in part A. Give your own information. Pay attention to the pronunciation of **did you** and **have you**.



[tu skip 'brekfost]
[sneil]

nhịn ăn sáng con ốc sên



5	LISTE	NING	Ph	21	miot b	Reduce	NOU	NCIA	UNOS	Nghe
	Lister restaurant.	to six pe	eople ask q /) the item	uestions that eac	about foo	d and dr	ink in a g about.			
	1. water		coffee the meal	3. 🗌 s	soup pasta		ee 5 meat			
6	BUSY	BODI	ES				dian food? nails?	Nh	ững kể	quấy rầy
	Pair work of your own	. Then as	ur partner sk follow-u	these que p questio	estions a	nd four m	iore	TAR		
	Did you	. ?				Have you	ever ?			
	make your go out for d eat a big lu	inner las	t week	riser: event		tried frog been on a cooked a	a diet amay	er for son	ne friends	
	A: Did you B: Yes, I di A: What di B: I made	d. d you ma	ke?	akfast th	nis morni	ng? Magin	Cycle	tercha	ISC 4 sousines	la la
7	WORD Từ vựng A How do are most co	you cook	these food	<i>pháp n</i> ls? Check	áu nươ (✓) the	methods	anoitnee od rol ziba	facts cla	some intered about you assmates. In to page IC-5.	
	bal				- Charles and Char	(og)			J T. ov 8	
	Methods		fry		roast	Foods	boil	barbe	ecue	steam
	bake fry roast boil barbecue steam	fish	shrimp	eggs	chicken	beef	potatoes	onions	eggplant	bananas
	B What's	vour favo	rite way to	cook the	foods in	nart A?	r bool ad l'.		1.257 3	1
	A: I usuall B: I prefer	y like to	steam fish.							
frog (n bake (v steam boil (v	v) [b (v) [s	rog] eeik] ti:m]	con éch nướng b hấp luộc	ằng lò	gnès ni		breklast]			to slop brei snæl (n)

8 CONVERSATION

Dàm thoại

A Listen and practice.

Kate: What's your favorite snack?

Jim: Oh, it's a sandwich with peanut butter, honey, and a banana. It's really delicious!

Kate: Ugh! I've never heard of that! How do you make it?

Jim: Well, first, you take two slices of bread and spread peanut butter on them. Then cut a banana into small pieces and put them on one of the slices of bread. Finally, pour some honey over the bananas and put the other slice of bread on top. Yum!

Kate: Yuck! It sounds awful!

B 🖃 Listen to the rest of the conversation. What is Kate's favorite snack? Would you like to try it? Why or why not?



GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trong tâm ngữ pháp

Sequence adverbs

First, spread peanut butter on two slices of bread. Then cut a banana into small pieces.

Next, put the pieces of banana on one slice of bread.

After that, pour honey over the bananas.

Finally, put the other slice of bread on top.

A	Here's a recipe for barbecued kebobs. Look at the picture
an	d number the sentences from 1 to 5. Then add a sequence
ad	verb to each step.

..... put the meat and vegetables on the skewers.

..... put charcoal in the barbecue and light it with lighter fluid.

..... take the kebobs off the barbecue and enjoy!

..... put the kebobs on the barbecue and cook for 10 to 15 minutes, turning them over from time to time.

..... cut up some meat and vegetables and put them in a bowl with your favorite barbecue marinade. Marinate for 20 minutes.

B Pair work Cover the recipe and look only at the pictures. Explain each step of the recipe to your partner.

slice of bread honey (n) skewer (n)

[slais ov bred] ['h\Ani]

['skjuo]

mẩu bánh mì cong thức/cách làm (n gno tâm

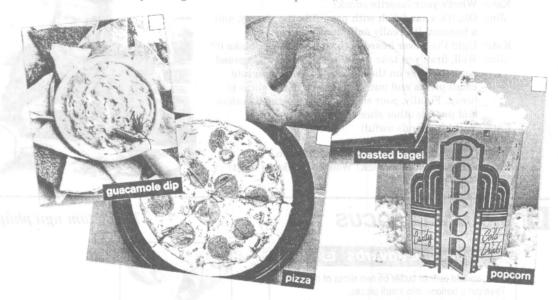
cái xiên (để nướng thịt)



10 TEMPTING SNACKS

Những bữa ăn nhanh hấp dẫn

A Listen to people explain how to make these snacks. Which snack are they talking about? Number the photos (1-4).



B Pair work Choose one of the recipes you heard about in part A. Can you remember how to make it? Compare with your partner.

C Group work Take turns describing how to make your favorite snack. Then tell the class about the most interesting one.

- A: What's your favorite snack?
- B: It's
- C: What ingredients do you need to make it?
- B: You need
- A: How do you make it?
- B: Well, first, you . . . After that, . . . Next, . . . Then . . .

11 WRITING Recipes

Viết: Công thức nấu ăn

A Write a recipe for an interesting dish. First, list the man at an order ingredients you need. Then describe how to make the dish.

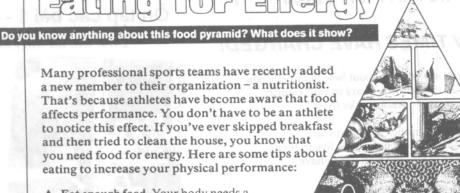
This recipe is for chicken curry. For this dish, you need chicken, coconut milk, First, cut up the chicken. Then fry the chicken pieces in oil

B Group work Exchange recipes and read them. Is there a recipe you would like to try? Why?

ingredient (n) recipe (n) chicken curry (n) [in'gri:djont] ['resopi] ['kAri] thành phần

công thức/cách làm (món ăn)

món ca ri gà



▲ Eat enough food. Your body needs a certain number of calories each day. If you're too thin, you'll often feel tired and you'll be more likely to get sick.

▲ Read the labels on food products.
This information will tell you how nutritious the foods are.

Avoid eating foods that are high in simple carbohydrates, that is, sugars. A chocolate bar will first give you energy, but then it will leave you feeling even more tired.

▲ Eat a balanced diet, one that includes complex carbohydrates, protein, and fat.

Use the food pyramid to help you decide how much to eat of each type of food. Complex carbohydrates provide the body with "fuel." They are found in fruits and vegetables, and in bread, rice, pasta, and other foods made from grains. The body uses protein to build muscles, and it uses fat to absorb the vitamins in food. Protein and fat are found in foods like milk, cheese, meat, fish, and eggs. Too much fat, however, can be harmful.

♠ Read the article and look at the food pyramid. Then check (✓) True or False.
For the statements that you marked false, write the correct information.

	True	False
 You shouldn't eat foods that are high in complex carbohydrates. Fruits and vegetables are a good source of protein. A person should eat more carbohydrates than fat or protein. If you're too thin, you might get sick easily. 	0000	00

B Group work Talk about these questions.

- 1. Which of the tips in the article do you already follow?
- 2. What do you eat in a typical day? Is your diet balanced? What do you need to eat more of? less of?
- 3. Can you think of a time when eating (or not eating) affected your performance? What happened?

nutritionist (n)
physical performance
balance diet

[nju:'tri/nist]
['fizikl po'fo:mons]
['bælons 'daiot]

nhà dinh dưỡng học học hiệu suất hoạt động của cơ thể chế độ dinh dưỡng đầy đủ chất

Review of Units 1-4

Ôn tập các bài 1 - 4

Thời thế đã thay đổi

1 HOW TIMES HAVE CHANGED!

A Group work Talk about how family life has changed in the last fifty years in your country.

Ask and answer questions like these:

How big were families fifty years ago?
What kinds of homes did people live in then?
What kinds of jobs did men use to have?
And what about women?
How were schools different?

How much did people use to earn? What kinds of machines and appliances did people use?

B Class activity Compare answers. Do you think life was better in the old days? Why or why not?



2 CITY PLANNERS

Những người qui hoạch thành phố

A Pair work How would you make your city or town a better place for young people? Make suggestions.

A: How would you make the city better for young people?

B: Well, there should be more free concerts in the summer.

A: You're right. And there aren't enough parks.

B Group work Compare your ideas. Which suggestions do you think are best?

_	ATTENDED 1915年1日 1日 1		
3	LISTENING = 20 and profession and pr	You shouldn't eat foods that are high in complex corc	Ng
		Check (✓) the correct response.	
	 ☐ It's just around the corner. ☐ Yes, it closes at three. 	 It's in the shopping center on King Street. Not until two o'clock. 	
	2. ☐ Yes, it does. ☐ The next one is in ten minutes.	5. Yes, in the Fairmont Hotel on Main Street	
	3. ☐ On the corner of Main and 15th. ☐ At nine o'clock in the morning.	 □ Yes, I do. 6. □ By bus. □ On the corner of Orange and Dewey. 	
	ne (n) [moˈʃiːn] máy nce (n) [oˈplaions] thiết bi/dung cu	(Spansqqail andW Symamiolog	aitietu

buổi hoà nhạc

concert (n)

['konsot]

4 COMPUTER SHOPPING Mua sắm vi tính

Pair work Look at these ads for computers. Make comparisons using $as \dots as$. Which computer would you buy?

"Computer 2 isn't as old as computer 1."

For sale: Used IBM computer (4 yrs old). 8 MB of memory. 13 inch screen. \$2000. Price includes three software programs. Call 638-2825.

FOR SALE:

Used IBM computer (2 yrs old).
16 MB of memory. 20 inch screen.
\$2000. Price includes two software programs. Call 638-7693.

5 HOME IMPROVEMENTS

A Make a list of five things you wish you could change about your house or apartment.

B Pair work Compare your lists. Give at least one reason for each wish.

- A: I wish I had a bigger bedroom. It's too small for all my things.
- B: I know what you mean.
 I wish....

Nâng cấp nhà Shashing Dannkr

TALKING ABOUT FOOD

A Complete the sentences with information about food.

- 1. I have never tried food.
- 2. I have tried..... food, but I don't really like it.
- 3. The most unusual thing I have ever eaten is
- 4. The worst food I have ever tried is
- 5. A dish I have never tried but would like to try is
- 6. I have often cooked

B Pair work Compare sentences with a partner. Ask and answer follow-up questions.

- A: I've never tried Russian food.
- B: Oh, I have. It's delicious.
- A: What is a common Russian dish?

C Pair work Describe how to make a food that you like to cook.

"I like to cook To make it, first you Then Next, "





memory (n) improvement (n) ['memori]
[im'pru:vmont]

bộ nhớ (máy tính) sự cải thiện

Going places

Đi đây đó

Thông tin nhanh

SNAPSHOT LAZ ROZ

what people like to do on vacation

Discover something new

- take language, cooking, or sailing lessons
- ☐ join an archaeological dig



Enjoy nature

- go camping, hiking, or fishing
- relax at the beach





Take an exciting trip

- visit a foreign country
 - Travel through their own country by car or train



Stay home

Based on information from U.S. News and World Report and American Demographics

- catch up on reading I fix up or redecorate
 - the house

Complete these tasks.

Which of the activities above do you like to do on vacation? Check (✓) the activities. Make a list of other activities you like to do on vacation. Then compare with a partner.

CONVERSATION

Đàm thoai



A Listen and practice

Julia: I'm so excited! We have two weeks off! What are you going to do?

Nancy: I'm not sure. I guess I'll just stay home. Maybe I'll catch up on my reading. What about you? Any plans?

Julia: Well, my parents have rented a condominium in Florida. I'm going to take long walks along the beach every day and do lots of swimming.

Nancy: Sounds great!

Julia: Say, why don't you come with us? We have plenty of room.

Nancy: Do you mean it? I'd love to!

B Class activity Have you ever taken a vacation at the beach? What kinds of things can you do there?



decorate (v) archaeological dig (n) condominium (n)

['dekoreit] [,a:kia'lod3ikal dig] ['kondo'miniom]

trang trí/trang hoàng khai quât khảo cổ chế độ công quản

GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trọng tâm ngữ pháp

Future with be going to and will

Use be going to + verb to talk about plans you've decided on. Use will + verb with maybe, probably, I guess, or I think to talk about possible plans before you've made a decision.

Where are you going to go? I'm going to go to the beach.

I'm not sure. Maybe I'll catch up on my reading.

I'm not going to take a vacation.

I probably won't take a vacation this year.

What are you going to do? I'm going to do lots of swimming.

I guess I'll just stay home.

I don't know. I think I'll go camping.

A Complete the conversation with appropriate forms of be going to or will. Then compare with a partner.

- A: Have you made any vacation plans?
- B: Well, I've decided on one thing -I..... go camping.
- A: That's great! For how long?
- B: I be away for a week. I only have five days of vacation.
- A: So, when are you leaving?
- B: I'm not sure. I..... probably leave around the end of May.
- A: And where ______you _____go?
- B: I haven't thought about that yet. I guess I go to one of the national parks.
- A: That sounds like fun.
- B: Yeah. Maybe I go hiking and do some fishing.
- A:yourent a camper?
- B: I'm not sure. Actually, I probably rent a camper – it's too expensive.
 - A: you go with anyone?
 - B: No. I need some time alone.

I travel by myself.

B Have you thought about your next vacation? Write answers to these questions. (If you already have plans, use be going to. If you don't have fixed plans, use will.)

1. How are you going to spend your next vacation? Are you going to go anywhere?

2. When are you going to take your vacation?

- 3. How long are you going to be on vacation?
- 4. What are you going to do?
- 5. Is anyone going to travel with you?

I'm going to take my next vacation

I'm not sure. Maybe I'll

C Group work Take turns telling the group about your vacation plans. Use the information you wrote in part B.

rent (v)

[rent] [kæmpo] cho thuê

người cắm trại

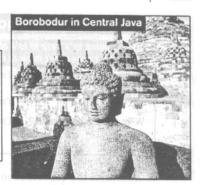
4 WRITING Itineraries

Viết: Lô trình

Write about the trip you planned in Exercise 3 or another trip you are going to take.

Next summer, I'm going to travel to Indonesia with my family. We're going to visit Borobodur in Central Java. It's one of the biggest temples in the world.

And we'll probably visit several other temples nearby. . . .



5 LISTENING

Nghe

Who ?	1. Judy	2. Paul	3. Brenda
is going to learn about a different culture		ou leaving?	wich are yo
will probably visit several different countries probably won't take a vacation		10	un he end
s going to lie on the beach	Toll	d) note in	t where
s going to do something exciting and a little dangerous	Landilan	ed the pap of	03

B Listen again. What is the main reason for each person's choice?

6 WORD POWER Travel

Từ vưng: Du hành

A Complete the chart. Then add one more word to each category.

backpack cash first-aid kit

overnight bag passport shorts

vaccination visa

credit card

hiking boots passport medication plane ticket

suitcase traveler's checks

windbreaker

Clothing	Money	Health	Travel documents	Luggage
take my next vacatio	I'm going to	Shar next vacations		
		your vacation?	ong to go anywae you going to take	
Alayae / T	sius son mit	e on vacation?		
				эталый

B Pair work What are the five most important items you need for these vacations: a trip to a foreign country? a rafting trip? a mountain-climbing expedition?

vaccination (n) windbreaker (n)

[,væksi'nei∫n] ['wind'breik] tiêm chủng guới odo áo gió sau mắc nóu sa

30

7 CONVERSATION S SUST BUS OF FIGURE MONTALOMUMS

Đàm thoại

A E Listen and practice.

Lucy: Hey, Mom. I want to backpack around Europe

this summer. What do you think?

Mom: Backpack around Europe? That sounds and good dangerous! You shouldn't go by yourself.

You ought to go with someone.

Lucy: Yes, I've thought of that.

Mom: And you'd better talk to your father first. Lucy: I already did. He thinks it's a great idea.

He wants to come with me!

B Class activity Would you like to backpack around Europe? Which countries would you like to visit? Why?



8 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trọng tâm ngữ pháp

Modals for necessity and suggestion

Describing necessity
You have to get a passport.
You must get a visa for some countries.

You need to take money.

For some countries, you don't have to get any vaccinations.

Giving suggestions
You'd better talk to your father.
You ought to go with someone.
You should take warm clothes.
You shouldn't go by yourself.

A Give advice to someone who is thinking of taking a vacation abroad. Then compare with a partner.

"You must get a passport."
"You shouldn't pack too ma

"You shouldn't pack too many clothes."

1. . . . get a passport.

2. . . . pack too many clothes.

3. . . . buy a round-trip plane ticket.

4. . . . make hotel reservations.

5. . . . get a vaccination.

6. . . . check the weather.

7. . . . carry lots of cash.

8. . . . get traveler's checks.
9. . . . take a lot of luggage.

10. . . . check on visas.

11. . . . carry your wallet in your back pocket.

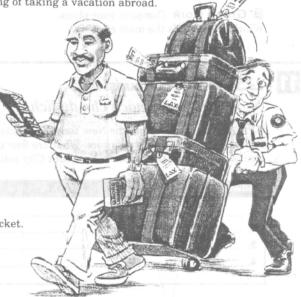
12. . . . take identification with you.

B Group work Give four more pieces of advice.



['bækpæk] ['pa:spo:t] [ai,dentifi'kei/n] cái ba lô hộ chiếu

chứng minh thư/thẻ căn cước



9 PRONUNCIATION Ought to and have to A ONTARRANGO

Phát âm: Ought to và have to

A Ex Listen and practice. Notice the pronunciation of ought to and have to in these sentences.

You **ought to** take a credit card. You **ought to** go in June.

You have to get a passport.
You have to get a visa.

B Pair work Write two sentences using ought to and two sentences using have to. Then practice them with a partner. Pay attention to pronunciation.

10 DREAM VACATION

Kỳ nghỉ trong mơ

A Pair work You won some money in a lottery. Plan an interesting trip around the world. Discuss these questions and others of your own. Make notes.

Where are we going to start from?
What time of the year should we travel?
How are we going to travel?
What countries and cities should we visit.
How long should we spend in each place?
Where are we going to stay?
What are we planning to do and see there.
How much money do we have to take?
What do we need to take with us?

B Group work Compare your plans. Which trip sounds the most exciting?



11 LISTENING Tourist tips

Nghe những lời mách cho du lịch

A spokesperson from the New York City Visitors and Convention Bureau is giving advice to visitors. What are four things people should do to make their visit to New York City safe and pleasant?

Advice	
1.	
2.	t your back pocket.
3	with you.
4	
	contove pleces

interchange 5

Fun vacations

Decide between two vacations. Student A turns to page IC-6. Student B turns to page IC-8.

lotte	ry	(n	
safe	(a	d	i)	

[ˈlɔtəri]

sổ xố

[seif]

an toàn

tting more for less when you travel

Do you know how to get inexpensive airline and train tickets? hotel accommodations?

On a recent flight, Laura was chatting happily with the woman in the next seat - until the conversation turned to fares. The woman, who bought her ticket two months in advance, paid \$109. Laura paid the full fare of \$457. She decided that next time she would find out how to travel for less.

Here are some ways to travel for less:

Cheap airplane tickets. To fly for less money, you can buy non-refundable plane tickets two or three months before your trip. The cheapest way to fly is as a courier. In return for delivering a package for a courier company, you get a plane ticket that costs as little as one-quarter of the regular fare - or even less if the company needs someone at the last minute. Recently, a courier flew round trip from Los Angeles to Tokyo for \$100; a regular ticket cost around \$1,800.

Train passes. If you're going to do a lot of traveling by train, a train pass will save you money. Buying a single pass gives you unlimited travel for a period of time. Train passes can be especially useful in India, which has the world's largest rail system; in Japan, where trains are fast and convenient; and in Europe, where trains go to over 30,000 cities.

Hostels. Hostels used to provide cheap accommodations - in dormitories - for people under the age of 25. Nowadays, hostels don't have any age requirements. They're not only cheap (\$8-\$17 a night) but a great way to meet people. Hostels are often in interesting places - a castle in Germany, a lighthouse in California, a one-room schoolhouse in the wilderness of Australia. And sometimes hostels have luxuries like swimming pools.





A In your own words, restate some of the information from the article using the phrases below.

- 1. 25% of the normal fare
- 2. \$100 instead of \$1,800
- 3. more than 30,000 cities
- 4. younger than 25
- 5. \$17 or less

"Fly as a courier. You can buy your plane ticket for one-quarter of the normal fare."

B Pair work Talk about these questions. Give reasons for your answers.

- 1. Would you want to travel as an air courier? take a long train trip? stay in a hostel?
- 2. What advice would you give someone who wants to travel for less in your country? Which hotels, restaurants, means of transportation, and stores would you recommend?

dormitory (n) lighthouse (n) non-refundable (adj) ['do:mitri] ['laithaus] ký túc xá đèn hải đăng

[,no nri'f\ nodb(o)l] shhông hoàn lại [nao] số no số m

Sure. No problem!

Được thôi không sao đâu

SNAPSHOT

Thông tin nhanh



Commo



My kids

- on't help around
- the house.
- con't listen to my advice. watch too much TV.
- have strange friends.
- ress badly and have
 - ugly hairstyles.
 - @ don't study enough.

My parents . . .

- nag about chores and homework.
- con't like my friends.
- criticize my appearance.
- o don't respect my privacy.
- always tell me what to do.
- con't listen to my opinions.

Based on information from America Online's Parent Resource Site

Talk about these questions.

Have you ever heard parents or children make these complaints? Which ones? Have you ever had any complaints like these about family members?

CONVERSATION Making requests

Đàm thoại : Nêu yêu cầu

A Disten and practice.

Mr. Field: Jason . . . Jason! Turn down the TV

a little, please.

Jason: Oh, but this is my favorite program!

Mr. Field: I know. But it's very loud.

Jason: OK. I'll turn it down. Mr. Field: That's better. Thanks.

Mrs. Field: Lisa, please pick up your things.

They're all over the living room floor.

Lisa: In a minute, Mom. I'm on the phone. Mrs. Field: OK. But do it as soon as you hang up.

Lisa: Sure. No problem!

Mrs. Field: Goodness! Were we like this when

we were kids? Mr. Field: Definitely!

B Listen to the rest of the conversation.

What complaints do Jason and Lisa have about their parents?



to be on the phone

[tu bi: on do foun] dang gọi điện thoại don Africa on.]

tôn trọng



GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trong tâm ngữ pháp

Two-part verbs; will for responding to requests

With nouns Turn down the TV. Turn the TV down. With pronouns

Turn it down.

Requests and responses Please turn down the music.

OK. I'll turn it down.

Pick up your things. Pick your things up.

Pick them up.

Pick up your clothes, please. Sure. I'll pick them up.

A Complete the requests with these words. Then compare with a partner.



the books



the toys



the radio



vour coat



the TV



your boots



the yard



the light





the trash your cigarette

- Pick up the toys , please. 2. Turn off, please. 3. Clean up, please. 4. Please put away. 5. Please turn down
- 6. Please take off
- 7. Hang up, please. 8. Please take out
- 9. Please put out. 10. Turn on please.
- **B** Pair work Take turns making the requests above. Respond with pronouns.
- A: Pick up the toys, please.
- B: Sure. I'll pick them up.

PRONUNCIATION Stress with two-part verbs

Phát âm: Trong âm với đồng từ hai thành phần A Listen and practice. Both words in a two-part verb receive equal stress.

Please turn down the radio.

Turn it down.

Pick the magazines up, please.

Pick them up.

B Write four more requests using the verbs in Exercise 3. Then practice with a partner. Pay attention to stress.

turn down (v) turn off (v)

[to:n daun] [to:n o:f]

văn nhỏ tắt

turn on (v)

[to:n on]

mở/bât

5 WORD POWER Household chores

Từ vựng: Việc nhà

A Find a phrase in the list that is usually paired with each verb. (Some phrases go with more than one verb.) Can you think of one more phrase for each verb?

the mess	the oven	the dry cleaning	word I'll burn	newspapers	the groceries the towels
clean off		k them up. /	put out	M mem up.	dn söuig nos i
clean up			take out		`
hang up	n partner	en compare with	throw out	sts with these	omplete the reque
pick up			turn off		
put away			turn on		
THE RESERVE OF THE PARTY OF THE					77 77 77 77 77 77 77 77 77 77 77 77 77

B What requests can you make in each of these places? Write four requests and four unusual excuses. Use two-part verbs.

the kitchen the bathroom the living room

C Pair work Take turns making the requests you wrote in part B. Respond by giving an unusual excuse.

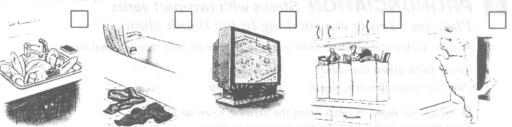
- A: Mark, please clean up your mess in the kitchen.
- B: I can't clean it up right now.
 I have to take the cat out for a walk.



6 LISTENING Excuses, excuses!

Nghe: Có, có!

A Listen to parents ask their children to do things. Match each conversation with the picture it describes. Number the pictures from 1 to 5.



B Listen again. What excuse does each person give?

put away (v) put out (v) faucet (n) [put o'wei] [put aut] cất đi tắt

faucet (n) ['fɔ:sit] mess (n) [mes]

tăt cái vòi

tình trạng hỗn độn/lộn xôn

7 CONVERSATION

Đàm thoại

A Ele Listen and practice.

George: Hi. I'm your new neighbor, George Rivera.

I live next door. sta salt palmut bolm pay bloow

Stephanie: Oh, hi. I'm Stephanie Lee.

George: So, you just moved in? Do you need anything?

Stephanie: Not right now. But thanks.

George: Well, let me know if you do. Um, by the way, would you mind turning your stereo down? The walls are really thin, so the sound goes

right through to my apartment.

Stephanie: Oh, I'm sorry! I didn't realize that. I'll make

way, is there a good Italian restaurant in

the neighborhood?

George: Yeah. There's a great one a couple of blocks

ladord villate from here. Try their lasagna. It's delicious!



B Pair work Has a situation like the one in part A ever happened to you? What did you do?

8 APOLOGIES

Xin lỗi

People apologize in different ways.
For example, if someone complains about the noise from your stereo, you can:

apologize and . . . give an excuse "I'm sorry. I didn't realize."

admit a mistake "I forgot I left it on."

make an offer "I'll turn it down right now."

make a promise "I'll make sure to keep the volume down."

People often apologize in more than one way. For example, in Exercise 7, Stephanic apologized, gave an excuse, and made a promise.

A Class activity How do people usually apologize in your country? What do you usually do when you apologize?

B Listen to three people complaining. What are they complaining about? How does the other person apologize? (More than one answer is possible.)

Complaint		Type of	apology	
	give an excuse	admit a mistake	make an offer	make a promise
1	you 🗖 Sano	VIII 10 10 10	oca he	0,430mm
2				
3				

lasagne	(n)
mistake	(n)

[lo'zænjo] [mis'teik] món bột với cà chua, nước sốt

lỗi lầm thị ruso\iid nă da

GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trong tâm ngữ pháp

Requests with modals and Would you mind ...?

Modal + simple form of verb Can you turn the stereo down? Could you leave the door open, please? Would you please keep the noise down?

Would you mind . . . ? + gerund Would you mind turning the stereo down? Would you mind not closing the door, please? Would you mind keeping the noise down?

A Match the requests with the appropriate responses. Then compare with a partner and practice them. (More than one answer may be possible.)

- 1. Could you lend me twenty dollars? a. We're sorry. We'll talk more quietly.
- 2. Would you mind picking up a sandwich b. Sorry. I'll do it right away. for me?
- 3. Can you help me move into my new apartment was the non-smoking section. tomorrow? d. Are you kidding? I'm totally broke!
- 4. Would you mind not smoking here?
- 5. Would you please move your car? It's blocking f. Sure, no problem. I'd be glad to. my driveway.
- 6. Would you mind not talking so loud?

B Pair work Take turns making the requests in part A. This time give your own responses.

C Class activity Think of five unusual requests. Go around the class and make your requests. How many people accepted and how many refused?

- c. Oh, I'm sorry. I didn't realize this
- e. I'm really sorry, but I'm busy.



"I'm totally broke!"

10 WRITING

A Write a letter to a "rich relative," asking him or her to lend you some money. Explain why you need it and when you will pay it back.

Dear Uncle John,

I'm planning to drive across the U.S. by car when I graduate. The only problem is, I can't afford to buy a car. Would you mind lending me \$4,000 to help me buy one? I'll pay you back as soon as I get a job. . . .

Việt That's no excuse!

How good are you at apologizing? Turn to page IC-7.

B Pair work Exchange letters with a partner. Write a reply to your partner's request.

afford to do sth to be broke

[b:cl'6] [tu bi: brouk] có đủ khả năng để làm gì nhẫn túi/can túi

11 READING

Doc

Summer in the Country

How is summer in the country different for young people from summer in the city?



"Before I came here," one child said, "I thought swimming was running through an open fire hydrant."

"Here" is a summer camp that's only an hour from New York City – but a world away. This camp and four others nearby are run by the Fresh Air Fund. Since 1877, the fund has helped poor children from New York City spend summers in the country. Each year, over ten thousand children, ages 6 to 18, participate in the program. Some stay at a camp; others live with a host family. The fund pays for all expenses.

The camps are for 8- to 15-year-olds. At camp, children can learn about the stars, see deer and cows and other

animals, and go hiking, fishing, and of course,

swimming. The children learn responsibility by helping out with chores like making beds and waiting on tables. They also learn a lot from counselors, who are often college students from around the United States and from other countries.

Host families from thirteen states and Canada volunteer to have children spend the summer with them. Many of these families have their own children. The visiting children become part of the family. They go with the family on picnics, to the pool or beach, and on trips. The children are from 6 to 12 years old when they make their first visit, and most are invited back. Some of the children and families become friends for life.



A Read the article. Imagine you work for the Fresh Air Fund. A mother wants to send her child and calls to ask for information. How would you answer these questions?

- 1. Is the Fresh Air Fund program new?
- 2. Are the camps far from New York City?
- 3. What are some things children do at camp?
- 4. Does the Fresh Air Fund run only summer camps?
- 5. Can a 7-year-old go to camp?
- 6. Can a 7-year-old live with a host family?
- 7. What are some things children do with host families?
- 8. Can a child who lives with a host family go back for a second year?

B Pair work Talk about these questions. Give reasons for your answers.

- 1. If you were a child in New York City, would you rather an analysis of the go to a camp or live with a host family?
- 2. Would you like to be a counselor at a Fresh Air Fund camp?
- 3. How does the Fresh Air Fund benefit children? host families?

volunteer (n) to make a bed benefit (v) [,vɔlən'tiə] [tu meik ə bed] ['benifit] tình nguyện viên dọn giường đọn giường đem lại lợi ích



What's this for?

Thiết bị này có công dụng gì?

1 SNAPSHOT

Thông tin nhanh



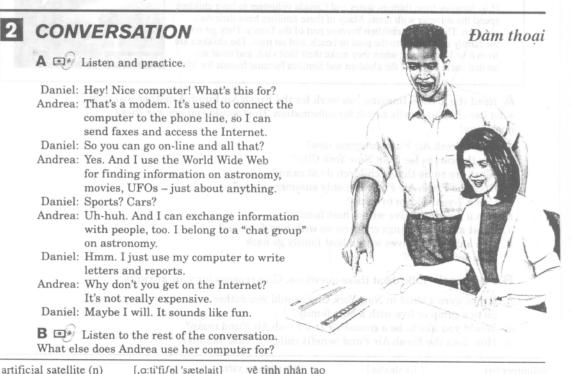
Sources: The Universal Almanac, The New York Public Library Source Desk Reference

Talk about these questions.

['ækses]

[ød'va:ns]

Can you explain the significance of each of these advances? Which do you think is the most important? the least important? Which have affected your life? Which have not?



truy câp

tiên tiến/tiến bô

access (v)

advance (n)

GRAMMAR FOCUS Trọng tâm ngữ pháp

Infinitives and gerunds

Infinitives and gerunds can describe a use or a purpose.

Infinitives

A modem is used to connect computers to phones. Computers are often used to write letters.

I can use the World Wide Web to find information.

Gerunds

It's used for connecting computers to phones. They're often used for writing letters.

I can use it for finding information.

A What do you know about this technology? Complete the phrases in column A with information from column B. Then compare with a partner. (More than one answer is possible.)

A

- 1 Satellites are used . . .
- 2. Robots are sometimes used . . .
- 3. You can use a fax machine . . .
- 4. People use the Internet . . .
- DNA fingerprinting is used . . .
- 6. CD-ROM is sometimes used . . .

study the world's weather perform dangerous tasks read the latest weather report

transmit telephone calls make a photocopy identify criminals make travel reservations transmit television programs store an encyclopedia

Satellites are used for transmitting telephone calls.

B Group work Take turns completing the phrases in column A with your own information.

Satellites are used to transmit telephone calls.



4 PRONUNCIATION Syllable stress

Phát âm: Trong âm của vẫn

A Where is the stress in these words and compound nouns? Mark the stressed syllable. Then listen and check.

television programs telephone calls

travel reservations weather report

fingerprinting photocopy

fax machine Internet

B Pair work Practice the statements you wrote in Exercise 3. Pay attention to syllable stress.

fingerprinting (n) transmit (v)

['fingoprint] [trænz'mit]

mẫu dấu tay truvền/phát

WORD POWER The world of computers Từ vựng: Thế giới

máy vi tính

A What are three uses for computers at home? at school? in a factory? in a restaurant? Complete the chart. Then add two more uses for each place.

communicate with people keep the attendance pay household bills process credit cards

create the menu make budgets pay the workers research papers

create work schedules make report cards place orders run the machines

At home	At school	In a factory	In a restaurant
	? Complete tha	oly, about this fachouless	M. What do you lon
		A with information from then (More than one an	
		8	:
		odsluc	ISatellilles are.og
	pales ammenmen man		

B Group work Compare your lists with classmates. Talk about the different uses for computers.

- A: At home, people use computers to pay household bills.
- B: My mother uses ours for making budgets.
- C: I use mine to communicate with people on the Internet.

LISTENING

Nghe

A Pair work How do you think these people use computers in their work? Make two guesses.



Sandy Watson is a police officer. She analyzes crime patterns.



Alex Hunt is a psychotherapist. He helps people change their behaviors.



Janet Brown is a professor. She teaches at a medical school.

B Delisten to interviews with the people in part A. Were your guesses correct?

create (v) communicate (v) research (v)

[kri:'eit] [ko'mju:nikeit] [ri'so:t], 'ri:so:t]

tao ra liên kết nghiên cứu

7 CONVERSATION

Đàm thoại



A 🗐 Listen and practice.

Jennifer: I read the instructions, but I'm still not

sure how to use my cellular phone.

Richard: Actually, it's pretty easy. First of all,

don't forget to turn it on.

Jennifer: Got it!

Richard: Then dial the number. And remember

to press the "send" button.

Jennifer: That's all?

Richard: Pretty much. Just make sure to

recharge the batteries every few weeks.

And try not to drop it. It's fragile.

Jennifer: Good advice.

Richard: And one more thing: Be sure to pay the

phone bill every month!

B Class activity How many advantages can you think of for owning a cellular phone?



GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trong tâm ngữ pháp

Infinitive complements 🗐

Don't forget to turn it on.

Remember to press the "send" button.

Make sure to recharge the batteries.

Try not to drop it.

Be sure to pay the phone bill every month.

A Look at these pieces of advice. Which ones refer to a microwave oven (M)? a hair dryer (H)? a laptop computer (L)? (More than one answer is possible.) Then think of another piece of advice for each thing.

- 1. Unplug it after you use it......
- 2. Save your work often......
- 3. Recharge the batteries often. 7. Don't heat closed containers in it.
- 4. Keep it away from water.
- 5. Don't spill drinks on it.
- 6. Don't put metal in it.
- 8. Don't expose it to extreme heat or cold.

B Pair work Take turns giving advice for using the items above.

Use these phrases.

Don't forget to.....

Try to

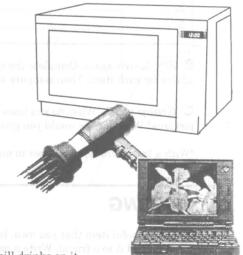
Make sure to

Remember to

Try not to Be sure not to......

recharge the battery keep it away from water [ri:'tsa:d3 do 'bætori] nap pin

[ki:p it o'wei from 'wo:to] tránh xa khỏi nước



9 FREE ADVICE

Tư vấn miễn phí

A Listen to people give advice about three of the things below.

Write down the name of each item.



fax machine



motorbike



camcorder



in-line skates



ATM card



personal watercraft

Item	Advice	
1		
2		
3		

B Listen again. Complete the chart with a piece of advice for each item. Then compare answers with classmates.

C Group work What do you know about the other items in the pictures? What advice would you give to someone about them?

"With a fax machine, remember to put the document facedown."



Good advice

Do you give good advice? Student A turns to page IC-9. Student B turns to page IC-10.

10 WRITING

Choose a useful item that you own. Imagine you're going to lend it to a friend. Write a paragraph giving advice on how to use it.

It's easy to use my fax machine. First, plug it into an electrical outlet. Then connect it to a phone line and turn it on. Remember to put the document facedown. Then dial the person's number. . . .





camcorder (n) ATM (n) ['kæmkɔ:də(r)] [ei ti em] máy quay video xách tay

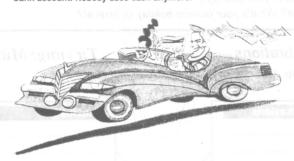
A Day in Your Life - In the Year

What are two ways that technology will probably change your life in the next 20-25 years?

eople used to know more or less how their children would live. Now things are changing so quickly that we don't even know what our own lives will be like in a few years. What follows is not science fiction. It's how experts see the future.

You're daydreaming behind the wheel of your car, but that's OK. You have it on automatic pilot, and with its high-tech computers and cameras, your car "knows" how to get you home safely.

You're hungry, so you head for the kitchen as soon as you get home. You ordered groceries by computer an hour ago, and you know that by now they've arrived. Your kitchen has a two-way refrigerator, which opens to the outside to accept deliveries. You've already paid for the food by having the money subtracted from your bank account. Nobody uses cash anymore.







What's for lunch? In the old days, you used to stop off to buy a hamburger or pizza. Now you use your diagnostic machine to find out which foods your body needs. You find out you need more vegetables and less fat. Your food-preparation machine makes you a salad.

After lunch, you go down the hall to your home office. Here you have everything you need for doing your work. Thanks to your information screen and your new computer, you almost never go into the office anymore.

The information screen shows an urgent message from a co-worker in Brazil. You set the screen to translate Portuguese into English. As you wait, you think about later, when you'll have a movie transmitted. What movie should you order tonight?

A Class activity In your own words, tell about a change mentioned in the reading in each of these areas.

- 1. transportation
- 4. work
- 2. food
- 5. communications
- 3. money
- 6. entertainment

B Pair work Talk about these questions. Give reasons for your answers.

- 1. Which of the changes sounds the most interesting and useful? Are there any changes that you don't like?
- Imagine you could invent a machine that would make life easier and better. Describe the machine.

automatic (adj) high-tech (adj) refrigerator (n) translate (v)

[,ɔ:to'mætik]
['haitek]
[ri'frid3oreito]
[trænz'leit]

tự động công nghệ cao tủ lạnh



Let's celebrate!

Chúng ta hãy mừng lễ

SNAPSHOT

Thông tin nhanh



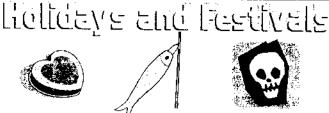
Chinese New Year January or February

Chinese people celebrate with firecrackers and lion dances.



Valentine's Day February 14

People in many countries give chocolates, flowers, or jewelry to the person they love.



Children's Day (formerly Boys' Day) May 5

Japanese families put up colored streamers shaped like fish, in honor of their children.



Day of the Dead November 2

Mexican families offer food to the dead and then have a meal in a cemetery.



Thanksgiving Fall

In October in Canada and in November in the United States, people celebrate the harvest by preparing a large meal. They usually serve roast turkey.

Talk about these questions.

Source: Reader's Digest Book of Facts

Do you have holidays similar to these in your country? What other special days do you have? What's your favorite holiday or festival?

WORD POWER Celebrations

Từ vưng: Mừng lễ

Pair work Complete the word map. Add two more words to each category. Then compare with a partner

anniversary cake cards champagne dancing fireworks flowers parade party presents roast turkey wedding

Special occasions		Activities
·····		
	\/	
		1-1
	Celebrations	
Special food and drink	\setminus /	Things we give/receive
, /		***************************************
		•

special occasion	[ˈspeʃl]øˈkei3n]	dịp đặc biệt
anniversary (n)	[,æni'və:səri]	lễ kỷ niệm
firecracker (n)	['faio,kræko]	pháo
fireworks (n)	['faiowo:ks]	pháo hoa/pháo bông
celebration (n)	[,scli'brei/n]	sự kỷ niệm/lễ kỷ niệm

3 CONVERSATION

A Listen and practice.

Leo: Did you know next week is Halloween?

It's on October 31.

Natasha: So what do you do on Halloween?

We don't have that holiday in Russia.

Leo: Well, it's a day when kids dress up in masks and costumes. They knock on people's doors and ask for candy by

saying the words "Trick or treat!"

Natasha: Hmm. Sounds interesting.

Leo: But it's not just for kids. Lots of people have

costume parties. Hey . . . my friend Pete is having a party. Would you like to go?

Natasha: Sure. I'd love to.

B Listen to the rest of the conversation. What are Leo and Natasha going to wear to the Halloween party?



4 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trọng tâm ngữ pháp

Relative clauses of time

Halloween is a day when kids in the United States dress up in masks and costumes.

November 2 is the day when Mexicans observe the Day of the Dead.

Fall is the season when people in the United States and Canada celebrate Thanksgiving.

A How much do you know about these days and months? Complete the sentences in column A with information from column B. Then compare with a partner.

A

- 1. New Year's Eve is a night when
- 2. April Fools' Day is a day when
- 3. May Day is a day when
- 4. Valentine's Day is a day when
 5. July 14 is the day when
- 6. February is the month when
- В
- a. Brazilians celebrate Carnival.
- b. people like to "party."
- c. the French celebrate their revolution.
- d. people play tricks on friends.
- e. people in many countries honor workers.
- f. people give presents to the ones they love.

B Complete these sentences with information of your own. Then compare with a partner.

- 1. Winter is a season
- 2. Spring is a time of the year
- 3. Mother's Day is the day
- 4. A birthday is a day
- 5. A wedding anniversary is a time

mask (n) dress up (v) [ma:sk] [dres Ap]

cái mặt nạ mặc/đeo

LISTENING

Nghe

Mike has just returned from Brazil. Listen to him talk about Carnival. Take notes to answer these questions.

What is Carnival? How long does it last? When is it? What is the best part about it? What is the samba?



6 ONCE A YEAR

Mỗi năm một lần

A Pair work Take turns asking and answering these questions and others of your own.

What's the most interesting holiday or festival in your country? When is it? How do people celebrate it? Do you eat any special food? What do you like most about it? What else do people do?

B Class activity Give a short talk about an interesting holiday or festival. Answer any questions your classmates may have.



7 WRITING

Viết

A Write about your favorite holiday or festival. What usually happens? What do you usually do?

My favorite holiday is Thanksgiving. In the United States, it's always the fourth Thursday in November. Everyone in my family gets together at my parents' house. We cook a large turkey and serve it with cranberry sauce. . .

B Pair work Read your partner's composition. Do you have any questions?

samba (n) cranberry

['sæmbo]

điệu nhảy samba (gốc Braxin)

['krænbøri]

cây nam việt quất

8 CONVERSATION

Đàm thoại

A Listen and practice.

Jill: You look beautiful in that kimono, Mari. Is this your wedding photo?

Mari: Yes, it is.

Jill: Do most Japanese women wear kimonos when they get married?

Mari: Yes, many of them do. Then after the wedding ceremony, the bride usually changes into a Western bridal dress during the reception.

Jill: Oh, I didn't know that.

B Listen to the rest of the conversation. Take notes to answer these questions.

Where was Mari's wedding held? Who attended the wedding ceremony? What happened at the reception?



PRONUNCIATION Stress and rhythm

Phát âm: Trong âm và tiết nhip

A E Listen and practice. The words with the most important information in a sentence are usually stressed.

When women get married in Japan, they usually wear kimonos. After the wedding ceremony, they change into Western clothes.

B Pair work Mark the stress in these sentences. Listen and check. Then practice the sentences.

Halloween is a day when children go "trick-or-treating." On Thanksgiving Day, Americans eat turkey and cranberry sauce. When people have birthdays, they usually get presents from friends. June is a month when many young people like to get married.

bride (n) wedding ceremony (n) [braid] ['wedin 'serimoni]

cô dâu lễ cưới

Adverbial clauses of time 🗐

Before a Japanese couple gets married, they send wedding announcements.

When they get married, they usually wear kimonos.

After they return from the honeymoon, they move into their own home.

A Read this information about marriages in North America.

Match the clauses in column A with information from column B.

A

Before a man and a woman get married,

2. Before the man gets married,

3. When the woman gets engaged,......

4. When the woman gets married,

5. After the couple gets married,

6. After they return from their honeymoon,

R

- a. the newlyweds usually live on their own.
- b. she usually wears a white wedding dress.
- c. they usually date each other for a year or so.
- d. his male friends often give him a bachelor party.
- e. her female friends often give her a bridal shower.
- f. there's usually a wedding reception.

B Pair work What happens when people get married in your country? Add your own information to the clauses in column A. Pay attention to rhythm and stress.

interchange 8

Once in a blue moon

How do your classmates celebrate special events? Turn to page IC-11.

11 MARRIAGE CUSTOMS Phong tục cưới hỏi

Group work Talk about marriage customs in your country. Ask these questions and others of your own.

How old are people usually when they get married?

Is there an engagement period? How long is it?

Who pays for the wedding?

Who is invited?

Where is the wedding ceremony usually held?

What happens during the ceremony?

What do the bride and groom usually wear?

Is there a reception after the ceremony?

What type of food is served at the reception?

What kinds of gifts do people usually give?

Where do couples like to go on their honeymoon?

How long is the honeymoon?



honeymoon (n) groom (n) engagement (n) ['h∆nimu:n] [grum] tuần trăng mật chú rể

[in'geid3mont]

sự đính hôn/hứa hôn/ước hẹn

Unique customs

Look at the photos below. What do you think is happening in each picture?







January 17 is St. Anthony's Day in Mexico. It's a day when people ask for protection for their animals. They bring their animals to church. But before the animals go into the church, the people usually dress them up in flowers and ribbons.

On August 15 of the lunar calendar, Koreans celebrate Chusok to give thanks for the harvest. It's a day when people honor their ancestors by going to their graves to take them food and wine and clean the gravesites. Also on Chusok, a big meal with moon-shaped rice cakes is eaten.

One of the biggest celebrations in Argentina is New Year's Eve. On the evening of December 31, families get together and have a big meal. At midnight, fireworks explode everywhere and continue throughout the night. Friends and

Choi 18 an vuit Xin loi. 18

families meet for parties, which last until the next morning.

Dong ago in India, a princess who needed help sent her silk bracelet to an emperor. After he helped the princess, the emperor kept the bracelet as a sign of the loyalty between them. Today in India, during the festival of Rakhi, men promise to be loyal to their women in exchange for a bracelet of silk, cotton, or gold thread.

On the evening of February 3, people in Japanese families take one dried bean for each year of their age and throw the beans around their homes and shrines, shouting "Good luck in! Evil spirits out!" This is known as "Setsubun," a time to celebrate the end of winter and the beginning of spring.

A Read the article. Make five correct sentences using an item from each column. ROLE PLAY I'm sorry. I'll. 2

On January 17, During Rakhi, On Chusok,

On New Year's Eve. On February 3,

people in Argentina men in India

people in Japan visit the graves of their ancestors. bring their animals to church. stay up all night. people in Mexico celebrate the end of winter. people in Korea promise loyalty to their women.

B Pair work Is there a holiday or custom in your country that is similar to one described here? Describe the holiday or custom.

ribbon (n) lunar calender harvest (n) ancestor (n) New Year's Eve

['ribon] ['lu:no 'kælondo] ['ha:vist] ['ænsisto] ['nju:'jo: i:v]

ruy băng âm lich mùa màng tổ tiên Đêm Giao thừa

Review of Units 5-8

Ôn tập các bài 5 - 8

1 RESOLUTIONS

Quyết tâm

A Group work What are you planning to do or thinking about doing during the next year? Tell your group about at least three things.

"I'm going to take dancing lessons."

"I'll probably go on a diet."

B Class activity Tell the class about the most interesting or unusual plans in your group.

A: Bob is going to take dancing lessons.

B: And he thinks he'll go on a diet, too.



2 ON THE ROAD

Trên đường



A Group work Your friends are planning a long car trip for their next vacation. What plans do they need to make? How many suggestions can you think of? Use had better, must, ought to, should, and shouldn't.

A: You should take some road maps.

B: You'd better check the tires on your car.

C: You ought to check the oil.

B Class activity Compare your suggestions around the class.

3 ROLE PLAY I'm sorry. I'll

Chơi phân vai: Xin lỗi, tôi sẽ

Student A: Complain to your partner about these things:

Your partner has not returned your tennis racquet.

Your partner is playing a CD loudly. You are trying to study.

Your partner has been using the telephone for almost an hour. You need to make an important call.

Student B: Listen to your partner's complaints.

Apologize and make suitable responses.

Change roles and try the role play again.

resolution (n)

[.rezo'lu:\sigma]

quyết tâm/ý định cương quyết

WONDER GADGET Vật dụng kỳ diệu

A Group work Imagine that this is a popular new gadget. Think of as many possible uses for this item as you can.

A: You can use this gadget for

B: It's used to

B Class activity Tell the class your ideas. Which uses do you think are the most interesting?



THAT'S AN INTERESTING CUSTOM. Đó là một phong tục thú vị

A Group work What interesting customs do you know for births, marriages, the seasons, or good luck? Take turns talking about them like this:

"When a boy courts a girl in some parts of the Philippines, he stands outside her house at night and sings to her."

Others ask questions.

Why does he do that? Is it just a village custom? Is it common?

B Class activity Which was the most interesting custom you talked about in your group? Tell the class about it.



A 🗐 Listen to some information about unusual marriage customs. Check (✓) True or False for each statement.

Marriage customs	True	False
When two women of a tribe in Paraguay want to marry the same man, they put on boxing gloves and fight it out.	emb ano e ou 🗖 ja nasma	
When a man and a woman get married in Malaysia, they eat cooked rice the day before the wedding.		
In Italy, before a man and a woman get married, a friend or relative releases two white doves into the air.		
In some parts of India, when a man and a woman get married, water is poured over them.		

B 🗐 Listen again. For the statements that you marked false, write the correct information.

gadget (n)	[ˈgæd3it]	máy cải tiến
court (v)	[kɔ:t]	tán tỉnh
tribe (n)	[traib]	bộ lạc/bộ tộc
dove (n)	[dAv]	chim bồ câu



Back to the future

Trở lại tương lai

Thông tin nhanh

SNAPSHOT

Present **Future** Wright brothers' first Concorde supersonic jet commercial flights Air travel successful flight (1903) to outer space? Home color television (1941) computer games 3-dimensional TV? entertainment Tokyo: megacities in Population 4,000,000 (1890) 28,500,000 (1995) every country?

Source: New York Public Library Book of Chronologies

Talk about these questions.

Which of these past and present developments are the most important? Why? Do you think any of the future developments will happen in your lifetime? How will tomorrow's cities be different? Suggest three differences.

2 CONVERSATION

A Listen and practice. Dogsar nam lengum Jud

Mr. Lee: The neighborhood sure has changed!

Karen: What was this place like before, Grandpa?

Mr. Lee: Well, there used to be a grocery store

right here on this corner. Hmm.

It was pretty quiet. Not many people

lived here then.

Karen: These days, the population is growing fast.

Mr. Lee: Yeah. I bet they'll tear down all these

old buildings soon. In a few years, there will be just malls and

high-rise apartments.

Karen: Hey, that doesn't sound too bad! Mr. Lee: No, but I'll miss the old days.

B Class activity How is your town or city changing?

List three important changes that are taking place.

bet (v) high-rise (adj) [bet] ['hairaiz] cá cược nhiều tầng



3 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trọng tâm ngữ pháp

Time contrasts

Past Present **future** In the past, not many These days, the population Soon, there will be a lot of high-rise people lived here. is growing fast. apartments. People used to shop Today, people shop at In twenty years, people might buy supermarkets. groceries by computer. at grocery stores. in the future, people are going to live Fifty years ago, people Nowadays, people five lived to around sixty. to about seventy-five. even longer.

A Match the phrases in column A with the appropriate information from column B. Then compare with a partner.

 Before the automobile,	A	•	В	
7. In the next hundred years, g. people played the first game of golf. 8. Sometime in the future, h. they might find a cure for the common cold	2 3 4 5 6 7	Before there were supermarkets,	b. c. d. e. f.	pollution is becoming a serious problem. most people are going to work at home. people didn't travel as much from city to city. there will probably be cities in space. people work more than forty hours a week. people played the first game of golf.

B Complete these sentences with your own information. Then compare with a partner.

As a child, I used to Next year, I'm going to In ten years, I'll Nowadays, I

4 PRONUNCIATION Intonation

A 🖼 Listen and practice. Notice the intonation of these sentences.

Thirty years ago, very few people used computers.

Today, people use computers all the time.

In the future, there might be a computer in every home.

B Add your own information to the phrases in column A of Exercise 3. Read your statements to a partner. Pay attention to intonation.



Phát âm: Ngữ điều

phương thuốc chữa/chữa bệnh

5 LISTENING

Nghe

Listen to people discuss changes. Check () the topic each person talks about. What change has each person noticed? Are things better or worse than they were?

Тәр	ic	Change Change	je .	Better or	worse?
population transportation		CITIES		le used _uhop grocerrres	000
		shopping	ie Nawadays, į		

6 CHANGING TIMES

Thời thế thay đổi

Group work How have things changed? Choose two of these topics or topics of your own. Then choose a period of time and discuss the questions below.



Торі	cs
clothing	medicine
education	sports
entertainment	technology
housing	work

What was it like (fifty years ago)? What is it like today? What will it be like in (fifty years)?

Entertainment

- A: Fifty years ago, there were very few TVs.
- B: People used to listen to the radio.
- C: Nowadays,

7 WRITING

A *Pair work* Interview your partner and write a paragraph about his or her hopes for the future. Don't write your partner's name on the paper.

In ten years, she'll be a successful actress. She'll be famous, and will star in movies and on TV....

B Class activity Pass your paragraphs around the class. Read one of the paragraphs. Can you guess who it is about?



entertainment (n)

[,ento'teinmont]

sư giải trí

8 CONVERSATION

Đàm thoai

A De Listen and practice.

Jody: Ugh! I feel awful. I really have to stop smoking.

Luis: So why don't you quit?

Jody: Well, if I quit, I might gain weight!

Luis: A lot of people do, but

Jody: And if I gain weight, I won't be able to fit

into any of my clothes!

Luis: Well, you can always go on a diet.

Jody: Oh, no. I'm terrible at losing weight on diets. So if my clothes don't fit, I'll have to buy new ones. I'll have to get a part-time job, and

Luis: Listen, it is hard to quit, but it's not that hard.

Do you want to know how I did it?

B 🗗 Listen to the rest of the conversation. What advice does Luis give Jody? How does Jody respond?



"I really have to stop smoking."

GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trong tâm ngữ pháp

Conditional sentences with if clauses

Conditional sentences can describe situations and consequences that are possible in the present or future.

Possible situation (with present tense forms) Consequence (with future modals will, may, or might)

If I quit smoking,

I might gain weight.

If I gain weight,

I won't be able to" fit into my clothes.

If my clothes don't fit.

I'll have to buy new ones.

If you get a part-time job. you may be able to* save some money.

"Be able to is often used with other modals; will or won't be able to, may be able to, might be able to.

A Match the clauses in column A with the appropriate information from column B. Then compare with a partner.

Α

B

- 1. If you eat less sugar,
- 2. If you walk to work every day,
- 3. If you don't get enough sleep, 4. If you own a pet,
- 5. If you don't get married,
- a, you may feel more relaxed.
- b. you might feel healthier.
- c. you'll stay in shape without joining a gym.
- d. you'll have more money to spend on yourself.
- e, you won't be able to stay awake in class.

B Add your own information to the clauses in column A. Then practice with a partner.

"If you eat less sugar, you'll lose weight."

awful (adj)

['b:ful]

khủng khiếp

quit (v)

[kwit]

rời/thoát được

to stay awake

[tu stei o'weik]

tình ngủ

10

WORD POWER Consequences

Từ vưng: Các kết quả

A Pair work Can you find two consequences for each possible event? Complete the chart with information from the list.

be able to buy expensive clothes feel better about yourself feel hungry a lot feel jealous sometimes feel more energetic

feel safer in your home
have to give up your favorite snack
get requests for loans from friends
have to learn a new language
have to take it out for walks
lose touch with old friends
gain weight

Possible event	Consequences
buy a large dog	
fall in love	
go on a diet	
inherit a lot of money	
move to a foreign country	
quit smoking	

B Group work Can you think of one more consequence for each event?

UNEXPECTED CONSEQUENCES

Những kết quả bất ngờ

A Group work Choose three possible events from Exercise 10. One student completes an event with a consequence. The next student adds a new consequence. Suggest at least five consequences.

- A: If you buy a large dog, you'll have to take it out for walks every day.
- B: If you take it out for walks every day, you might have an accident.
- C: If you have an accident, you may have to go to the hospital.
- D: If you go to the hospital, you won't be able to take care of your dog. A: If you aren't able to take care of your dog, you'll probably have to sell it.
- B Class activity Who has the most interesting consequences for each event?

fall in love go on a diet inherit (v) lose touch with sb $[f_{\mathcal{S}}:]$ in $[\Lambda v]$ [gou on b 'daiet]

phải lòng ai an kieng

[in'herit] [luz tAt/ wið sb] thừa kể mất liên lạc với ai

Consider the consequences

Give your opinion about some issues. Turn to page IC-12.

Are You in Love?

What is the difference between "having a crush" on someone and falling in love?

ou think you're falling in love.
You're really attracted to a
certain person. But this
happened before, and it was just
a "crush." How can you tell if it's real this
time? Here's what our readers said:

If you're in love, ...

- you'll find yourself talking to or telephoning the person for no reason. (You might pretend there's a reason, but often there's not.)
- ▼ you'll find yourself bringing this
 person into every conversation. ("When
 I was in Mexico ," a friend begins.
 You interrupt with, "My boyfriend made
 a great Mexican dinner last week.")
- you might suddenly be interested in things you used to avoid. ("When a woman asks me to tell her all about football, I know she's fallen in love," said a TV sports announcer.)



OK, so you've fallen in love. But falling in love is one thing, and staying in love is another. How can you tell, as time passes, that you're still in love? If you stay in love, your

relationship will change. You might not talk as much about the person you are in love with. You might not always call him or her so often. But this person will nevertheless become more and more important in your life.

You'll find that you can be yourself with this person. When you first fell in love, you were probably afraid to admit certain things about yourself. But now you can be totally honest. You can trust him or her to accept you just as you are. Falling in love is great – staying in love is even better!

A Read the article. What happens when you fall in love compared to when you stay in love? Check () the correct boxes.

	Falling in love	Staying in love
 You call the other person for no reason. You can be honest about yourself. 	cen's bedes to bec	
 You feel you can completely trust the other person. You suddenly have new interests. 		sound□nteresti i, Let's ⊡e. You n se's lice□u. And s
5. You talk about the other person at every opportunity.	uniruh koninavo	a never

B Pair work Talk about these questions.

- 1. The article lists several signs of being in love. Can you think of other signs?
- 2. Do you agree that staying in love is even better than falling in love?

 Is it more difficult?

pretend (v) interrupt (v) accept (v)

[pri'tend] [,into'r∧pt] [ok'sept] giả vờ làm gián đoan

chấp nhận



I don't like working on weekends!

Tôi không thích làm việc vào ngày nghỉ cuối tuần!

SNAPSHOT

Thông tin nhanh



Source: Time Magazine

Talk about these questions and complete the task.

Does any of this information surprise you? Why?

What jobs do you think are "hot" in your country? Are they the same as the jobs above?

Rank the jobs from the most interesting (1) to the least interesting (10).

2 CONVERSATION

A Listen and practice.

Brad: Any interesting jobs listed on the Internet today?

Sue: Well, there are a lot of retail jobs - selling clothes and stuff. But you have to work

Saturdays and Sundays.

Brad: Hmm. I hate working on weekends.

Sue: Hmm . . . so do I. Oh, here's a job in sales. It's a job selling children's books to bookstores.

Brad: That sounds interesting.

Sue: Yeah. Let's see. You need to have a driver's license. And you have to work

some evenings.

Brad: I don't mind working evenings during the week. And I enjoy driving. So, what's

the phone number?

Sue: It's 798-3455.

B Listen to Brad call about the job. What else does the job require?

stuff (n)

['st∧f,]

quặng sạch giấy phép

license (n) ['laisoons]



Đàm thoại

GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trong tâm ngữ pháp

Gerunds; short responses 🖃

Agree	Disagree	Other verbs or p	
		tollowed by geru	inas
So do I.	Really? I like it.	love	
So am I.	Gee, I'm not.	enjoy	
Agree	Disagree	be interested in	
Neither do I.	Well, I do.		
Neither am I.	I am!		
Neither can I.	Oh, I don't mind.		
	So do I. So do I. So am I. Agree Neither do I. Neither am I.	So do I. Oh, I don't. So do I. Really? I like it. So am I. Gee, I'm not. Agree Disagree Neither do I. Well, I do. Neither am I. I am!	So do I. Oh, I don't. followed by gerd. So do I. Really? I like it. love So am I. Gee, I'm not. enjoy be interested in Well, I do.

A Pair work Match the phrases in columns A and B to make statements about yourself. Then take turns reading your sentences and giving short responses.

- 1. I don't like
- 3. I'm good at
- 4. I hate
- 5. I can't stand
- 6. I'm interested in
- 7. I don't mind
- 8. I enjoy

- a. talking on the phone.
- 2. I'm not very good at b. working with a team.
 - c. solving problems.
 - d. sitting in meetings.
 - e. commuting to work.
 - f. making coffee for my boss.
 - g. organizing my time.
 - h. learning languages.
- A: I don't like commuting to work.
- B: Neither do I.
- B Group work Write five more statements about yourself like the ones above. Then talk about your statements. Other students ask for more information
- A: I'm interested in working abroad.
- B: Really? Where would you like to work?
- A: Maybe in Mexico or Chile.



PRONUNCIATION Not, don't, and can't

Phát âm: Not, don't và can't

A Delay Listen and practice. Notice how the final t in not, don't, and can't is not released

I'm not good at filing and typing. I don't like doing sales work. I can't stand working from nine to five.

B Pair work Write three sentences using don't like, can't stand, and don't like and stand, and stand and s and not good at. Then practice the sentences. Pay attention to the reduction of the t

to be good at sth/doing sth solve (v)

[tubi gud ot st/duin st] [vlca]

giỏi cái gì/làm gì giỏi giải quyết

LISTENING Job hunting

Nghe: Tìm việc A 🖭 Listen to people talk about the kind of work they are looking for. Check () the job that would be best for each person.

		E	Best job		
1. 0	flight attendant teacher songwriter	-	lawyer bookkeeper doctor	3. 🗆	marine biologist model architect

B 🖭 Listen again. What did each person say that made you choose the jobs you did?

JOB PROFILE

maivis bag seonetaes ruov uniber sarat esta Hô sơ việc làm

A Group work What are your skills and job preferences? Take turns asking questions like these and others of your own.



Are you good at . . . communicating with people? remembering names? solving problems? making decisions quickly? meeting deadlines?



Do you . . . have any special skills? have any experience? have any special certificates or diplomas? speak any foreign languages?



Do you like traveling? commuting? working evenings?

A: Are you good at communicating with people, Juan?

B: Oh, sure. I enjoy talking to people. How about you, Su Hee?

C: Oh, I don't. I'm a little shy. What about you, Maria?

B Group work Prepare a personal job profile. Write down your name, skills, and job preferences. Then compare profiles with your classmates. Make suggestions for possible jobs.

"You like solving problems. So I think you should be an executive."



Dream job

Decide who to hire for a job. Student A turns to page IC-13. Student B turns to page IC-14.

marine biologist (n) songwriter (n) make decision diploma (n)

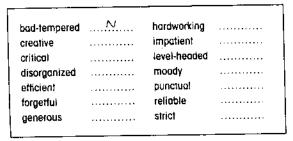
[mo'ri:n bai'olod3ist] ['son,raito] [meik di'si3n] [di'plouma]

nhà sinh vật học về biển nhac sĩ ra quyết đinh bằng cấp

7 WORD POWER Personality traits

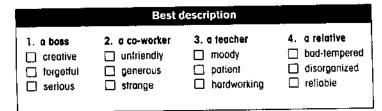
Từ vựng: Các nét cá tính

A Are these adjectives positive or negative? Write P or N next to each word. Do you know any people with these personality traits?



[&]quot;My neighbor is bad-tempered "

B Listen to four conversations about these people. Check (\checkmark) the adjective that best describes each person.





bad-tempered



disorganized

8 CONVERSATION

Đàm thoại

A De Listen and practice.

Tim: I don't know what classes to take this semester. I can't decide what I want to do with my life. Have you thought about it. Brenda?

Brenda: Yes, I have. I think I'd make a good

journalist because I love writing.

Tim: Maybe I could be a teacher because I'm very creative. And I like working with kids.

Brenda: Oh, I wouldn't want to be a teacher

I'm too impatient.

Tim: I know one thing I could never do.

Brenda: What's that?

Tim: I could never be a stockbroker because I'm not good at making decisions quickly.

B Listen to Tim and Brenda discuss two more jobs. What are the jobs? Why wouldn't they be good at them?



creative (adj) generous (adj) strict (adj) [kri:'eitiv]
['d3enoros]
[strikt]

tính sáng tạo hào phóng nghiệm khắc

Clauses with because 🗐

Because introduces a cause or reason.

I'd make a good journalist because I love writing.

I wouldn't want to be a teacher because I'm too impatient.

I could be a teacher because I'm very creative.

I could never be a stockbroker because I'm not good at making decisions quickly.

A Complete the sentences in column A with appropriate information from column B. Then compare with a partner.

A

- 1. I wouldn't want to be an accountant
- 2. I'd like to be a novelist
- 3. I could never be a nurse
- 4. I would make a bad waiter
- 5. I could be a flight attendant

B

- a. because I don't like hospitals.
- b. because I really like traveling.
- c. because I'm very forgetful.
- d. because I'm terrible at math.
- e. because I'm very creative.

B Group work Think about your personal qualities and skills. Then complete these statements. Take turns discussing them with your group.

I could never be a . . . because . . .

I wouldn't mind working as a . . . because . .

I'd make a good . . . because

C Class activity Choose some statements made by members of your group. Share them with the rest of the class.

10 WRITING

Viêt

A Write either about a job you would be good at or a job that you could never do. Give at least three reasons for your choice.

I think I'd make a good flight attendant because I'm a very friendly person and I enjoy meeting people.

Also, I love to travel. . . .

B Pair work Exchange papers. Do you agree with your partner? Why or why not?



"I think I'd make a good flight attendant."

impatient (adj) forgetful (adj)

[im'pei∫ont] [fo'getful] không kiên nhẫn đãng trí/hay quên

Find the Job That's Right for You!

How would you look for a job that's right for you?

early 50% of all workers have jobs they aren't happy with. Don't let this happen to you! If you want to find the right job, don't rush to look through the ads in the newspaper. Instead, sit down and think about yourself. What kind of person are you? What makes you happy?

According to psychologist John Holland, there are six types of personalities. Nobody is just one type, but most people are mainly one type. For each type, there are certain jobs that might be right and others that are probably wrong.

- The Realistic type is practical and likes working with machines and tools.
- The Investigative type is curious and likes to learn, analyze situations, and solve problems.
- The Artistic type is imaginative and likes to express himself/herself by creating art.
- The Social type is friendly and likes helping or training other people.
- The Enterprising type is outgoing and likes to persuade or lead other people.
- The Conventional type is careful and likes to follow routines and keep track of details.



If you think about who you are, you can make the right job decision. Liz is a good example. Liz knew she wanted to do something for children. She thought she could help children as a school counselor or a lawyer. She took counseling and law courses — and hated them. After talking to a career counselor, she realized the problem was that she's an Artistic type. Liz studied film, and she now produces children's TV shows — and loves it.

 \triangle Based on the information in the article, check (\checkmark) the job you feel would *not* be a good choice for each personality type. Then explain your answers to a partner.

Artistic] actor] computer programmer photographer	Conventional accountant bookkeeper inventor secretary	painter manager politician salesperson	detective model psychologist researcher	carpenter factory worker	Social doctor nurse writer teacher
songwriter					

B Pair work Talk about these questions.

- 1. Which personality type are you most similar to? What kinds are the second of jobs do you think would fit your personality?
- 2. Can you think of someone who has the wrong job for his or her personality? Explain why.

realistic (adj) investigative (adj) conventional (adj) [rioʻlistik] [in'vestigeitiv] [kon'ven∫onl] có đầu óc thực tế người có tính hay xét hỏi mực thước



It's really worth seeing!

Nơi đó thật đáng tham quan

Thông tin nhanh

SNAPSHOT



The Great Wall of China was begun in 214 B.C. It is the largest structure ever built.

Famous Landmarks



The Colosseum in Rome was opened in 80 A.D. It was sometimes filled with water

for ship battles.

The Taj Mahal in India was built between 1630 and 1652. It is a tomb for the wife of an Indian prince.



It was a gift to Americans from the people of France.



French Revolution.

Source: World Book Encyclopedia

Talk about these questions.

Have you ever seen any of these landmarks? Do you know anyone who has? What else do you know about these places? What are the three most famous landmarks in your country?

CONVERSATION Sightseeing

A Listen and practice.

Guide: We are now approaching the famous Statue of Liberty, which has welcomed visitors to

New York Harbor since 1886.

Andrew: Wow! Look at it. James: Incredible, isn't it? applicaval

Guide: The statue was given to the United States by the people of France. It was designed by

the French sculptor Bartholdi.

Andrew: It's really huge. Do we get to go inside? James: Of course. We can climb the stairs all the

way up to the crown.

Andrew: Stairs? There's no elevator?

James: Not to the top. But it's just 142 steps!

B Listen to what else the guide says. What is the Statue of Liberty made of? How many people visit the statue every year? To sid tol dol

to be worth doing sth design (v) elevator (n)

[tubi woθ st/duiη st] đáng làm gì [di'zain] ['eliveito]

thiết kế thang máy

Đàm thoại: Ngoại cảnh



3 GRAMMAR FOCUS

zbauoz beskall MOIT Trọng tâm ngữ pháp

Passive with by (simple past)

The passive changes the focus of a sentence. For the simple past, use the past of be + past participle.

Active

Passive

Bartholdi **designed** the Statue of Liberty.

The French **gave** the statue to the U.S. in 1886.

The Statue of Liberty was designed by Bartholdi. The statue was given to the U.S. by the French in 1886.

A Do you know who created these popular works? Match the phrases in column A with the appropriate information from column B. Then compare with a partner.









А

- 1. The Mona Lisa
- 2. The opera La Bohème
- 3. The novel To Kill a Mockingbird
- 4. The film E.T. The Extra-Terrestrial
- 5. The album Thriller

B

- a. was directed by Steven Spielberg.
- b. was written by Harper Lee.
- c. was recorded by Michael Jackson.
- d. was composed by Giacomo Puccini.
- e. was painted by Leonardo da Vinci.

B Pair work Change these sentences into passive sentences with by. Then take turns reading them aloud.

- 1. Thomas Edison invented the phonograph in 1877.
- 2. Marie Curie discovered radium in 1898.
- 3. Gabriel García Márquez wrote One Hundred Years of Solitude in 1971.
 - 4. Tim Berners-Lee developed the World Wide Web in 1989.
 - 5. Woo Paik produced the first digital HDTV (high-definition television) in 1991.

4 TRUE OR FALSE?

malinuot Đúng hoặc sai

A *Pair work* Write five statements like the ones in part A of Exercise 3. Three statements should be true and two should be false.

B Class activity Read your statements to the class. Your classmates say if they are true or false. They should give the correct information for the false statements.

- A: The cartoon character Mickey Mouse was created by Steven Spielberg.
- B: False. Mickey Mouse was created by Walt Disney.

discover (v) compose (v)

[dis'k\(\Lambda\)vo]
[k\(\pha\)m'pouz]

khám phá/tìm ra noil soạn/sáng tác/làm

5 PRONUNCIATION Linked sounds

Phát âm: Các âm nối

A Listen and practice. Final consonant sounds are often linked to the vowel sounds that follow them.

The Colosseum in Rome was opened in 80 A.D.

The light bulb was invented by Thomas Edison.

B Mark the linked sounds in these sentences. Listen and check. Then practice the sentences.

The Eiffel Tower was an important advance in engineering.

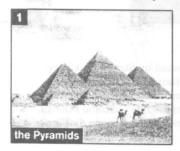
The Taj Mahal is a tomb for the wife of an Indian prince.

6 LISTENING Ancient monuments

Nghe: Các đài kỷ niêm cổ

Listen to three tour guides describe some very old monuments.

Take notes to answer the questions below. Then compare with a partner.



Who built them? Why were they built?



When was it begun? When was it discovered?



Why was it built? How long is it?

7 WORD POWER Features of countries

Từ vựng: Đặc điểm của các nước

A Complete the chart with words from the list.

beef dollar
Buddhists electronics
mining tourism
peso cheese
Christians pound
Muslims wheat

Currencies	Religious groups	Industries	Agricultural products
	tatementa like t true and two sh		
	•••••		

B Pair work Think of a country for each of the items listed above.

"There are many Muslims in Indonesia." "France produces cheese."

ancient (adj)	['einfont]	/ có/хиа вы выи выша
monument (n)	['monjument]	công trình lớn/kiến trúc
wheat (n)	[wi:t]	bột mỳ
currency (n)	[ˈk∧rønsi]	tiền tệ

8 CONVERSATION

A 🖼 Listen and practice.

Linda: Hello?

John: Oh, helle. I need some information.

What currency is used in Japan?

Linda: Where? John: In Japan.

Linda: I'm not sure. Isn't it the yen?

John: Oh, yes. And do they drive on the left or the right?

Linda: I think the left, but I'm not sure.

John: Oh. Well, is English spoken much there?

Linda: I really have no idea.

John: Huh? Well, what about credit cards? Are American Express cards accepted there?

Linda: How would I know?

John: Well, you're a travel agent, aren't you?

Linda: What? A travel agent? This is Linda's Hair Salon.

John: Oh, sorry. Wrong number!

B Pair work Act out the conversation again, asking and answering about a country other than Japan.



Trong tâm ngữ pháp

wear

GRAMMAR FOCUS

Passive without by (simple present) @

Active

eat

They use the yen in Japan.

They speak both Spanish and Portuguese

in Latin America.

grow

They grow a lot of coffee in Brazil.

Passive

The yen is used in Japan.

Both Spanish and Portuguese are spoken

in Latin America.

A lot of coffee is grown in Brazil.

speak

teach

use

A Complete the sentences. Use the passive of these verbs.

1. Both French and English in Canada.

2. English in elementary school in Singapore.

3. A great deal of wheat in Russia.

make up

4. Both cars and computers in South Korea.

5. Mexico of 31 states and a federal district.

6. Kimonos sometimes in Japan.

7. The baht is the currency that in Thailand.

8. A lot of beef in Argentina.

B Use the passive of the verbs in part A to write sentences about your country. Then compare with a partner.

manufacture (v) travel agent (n)

[mænjuˈfækƯv] ['trævl'eid3ont]

sản xuất/chế tao đại lý du lịch

69

manufacture

10 WHAT DO YOU KNOW?

Ban biết gì?

A *Pair work* How many of these questions can you answer? Although the causal star A See the appendix for the answers.

- 1. Where is Ecuador located?
- 2. What languages are spoken in Singapore?
- 3. Where is most of the world's wheat produced?
- 4. How many countries can you name where English is spoken as a second language?
- 5. Can you name four countries where French is spoken?
- 6. Can you name three countries that are governed by a prime minister?

B Class activity Write three more world-knowledge questions like the ones in part A. Then ask them around the class.

11 LISTENING

Listen to a short talk about Colombia. Complete the chart.

	-acts about Colombia	
Location		
Population		
Language	9m044	
Religion		
Industries		
Agricultural products		
	sed in Japan.	n si



12 WRITING

Viết

A Make an information chart like the one in Exercise 11 about a country you know. Then write a short composition about it, but don't include the country's name.

This small country is located in Asia. It has a population of around 3,000,000.

English, Malay, Chinese, and Tamil are spoken. The population is made up of Buddhists, Muslims, Taoists, Christians, and Hindus. . . .

B Group work Exchange compositions. Guess the names of the countries.

govern (v)
prime minister (n)

['gAvən]
['praim'ministə]

thống trị/cai quản thủ tướng

Seven Modern Wonders of the World

Do you recognize any of the sites in the pictures?

he ancient Greeks spoke of the Seven Wonders of the World.
Recently, some engineers came up with this list of the seven
wonders of our modern world:

The Panama Canal, begun in the 1880s, wasn't finished until 1914. It joins the Atlantic and Pacific oceans. Engineers describe the canal as a victory of humans over geography: Workers dug huge amounts of land and tamed rivers.

For 40 years after it was completed in 1931, the Empire State Building, in New York City, was the tallest building in the world. Amazingly, this 102-story building was constructed in just 410 days.

The Netherlands North Sea
Protection Works is another
victory over geography. The
Netherlands, which is below sea
level, was often flooded by the North
Sea and by rivers. Then, between
1927 and 1932, a dam was built to
shut out the sea. Twenty years later,
dams and canals were built to
control the rivers.

The Golden Gate Bridge, completed in 1937, was also a challenge for workers: San Francisco Bay has very strong winds and rough waves. The Golden Gate is still the world's tallest bridge. It has enough steel to wrap around the world three times.

At 1,815 feet, the CN Tower, in Toronto, Canada, is one of the world's tallest free-standing buildings. Completed in 1976, the tower is used for TV and radio broadcasting.

The Itaipú Dam, completed in 1984, goes across the Paraná River at the Brazil–Paraguay border. It is the world's largest hydroelectric plant.

Completed in 1994, the Channel Tunnel joins France and England. The "Chunnel" is a remarkable convenience: Cars, buses, and trucks are all carried through the tunnel by train.







A Read the article. Then cover it and try to name . . .

- 1. a structure that is the tallest of its kind.
- 2. two great victories over geography.
- 3. a structure that joins two bodies of water.
- 4. two structures that join two separate areas of land.
- 5. a structure constructed very quickly.
- 6. two structures that are in Europe.

B Pair work Talk about these questions.

- 1. Which of these wonders would you most like to see? Why?
- 2. What other kinds of things could be described as "modern wonders"?

interchange 11

Traveler's profile

What kind of traveler are you? Turn to page IC-15.

wonder (n)	['wAndo]	kỳ quan
geography (n)	[d3i'ogrefi]	địa lý gmin
challenge (n)	['trælind3]	thách thức
complete (v)	[kom'pli:t]	cạnh tranh



It's been a long time!

SNAPSHOT

Đã lâu lắm rồi

Thông tin nhanh



uccess 1(0) () (C)

Oprah Winfrey

Richest entertainer in the U.S.A. (worth almost \$200 million)

Personal: Born January 29, 1954, in Mississippi

Education: B.A. in speech and

performing arts from Tennessee State University Accomplishments:

At 19, was first African-American news anchor on WTVF-TV in Nashville.

- · Began The Oprah Winfrey Show, one of the most popular talk shows in the United States.
- · After several years, formed a company and bought her own show!

William Henry Gates III Richest businessman in the world (worth almost \$20 billion)

Personal: Born October 28, 1955, in Seattle, Washington Education: Dropped out of

Harvard University after second year

Accomplishments:

Dàm thoai

- Wrote the first computer language for personal computers.
- · At 19, founded Microsoft Corporation, the world's leading computer software company.
- · At 31, became the world's youngest billionaire!

Talk about these questions.

Sources: The African-American Almanac, Forbes

What is the most impressive accomplishment of each of these people? Name three successful people from your country. What have they accomplished?

CONVERSATION

A Listen and practice. James 19 ad 1940 at least long

Richard: How did you get into modeling, Stacy?

Stacy: Well, when I graduated from drama school.

I moved to Los Angeles to look for work as an actress. I was going to auditions every day, but I never got any parts. And I was

running out of money.

Richard: So, what did you do?

Stacy: I got a job as a waitress in a seafood restaurant. While I was working there, a customer offered me some work as a model. Within a few weeks, I was modeling full time.

Richard: Wow, what a lucky break!

B 📺 Listen to the rest of the conversation. What did Richard do after he graduated? What does he do now?

speech (n) anchor (n) to drop out of the school run out of sth

[spi:t/] ['ænko] [tu drop ao ov ôo skul]

[rAn au ov st]

bài phát biểu/sư nói cái neo/mô neo bỏ học nửa chừng hết sach cái gì

3 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trọng tâm ngữ pháp

Past continuous vs. simple past 🦼

Past continuous: for an action in progress in the past

I was going to auditions every day,

I was running out of money,

While I was working at the restaurant,

Simple past: for a completed action but I never got any parts. when I got a job as a waitress.

a customer offered me a job as a model.

A Complete these sentences. Then compare with a partner.

1.	I (drive) in England when I su	ademy
	(realize) I was on the wrong si	de of the road.
9	(live) with my grandparents	
	when I (enter) high school.	THE WAY
3.	I (make) dinner last night	Sales Contraction of the Contrac
	when the phone (ring).	A STATE
4	Tracy and Eric (work) in a	

- 7. My brother (ice-skate) when he (break) his arm.

restaurant in Vancouver when they

8. I (watch) TV when the power (go) out.

B Complete these sentences with interesting information about yourself. Use the simple past or the past continuous.

- 1. During my childhood,
- 2. I met my best friend while
 - 3. When I was going to elementary school,

 - 5. Last year,

C Pair work Take turns reading your sentences from part B. Then ask and answer follow-up questions.

- A: During my childhood, my family was living in Chile.
- B: Oh, really? What were they doing there?
- A: My father was working for a mining company.
- B: . . .



useful expressions

Oh, really? That's interesting. Why were you/did you . . . ? Wow! That's incredible!

tiny (adj) tutor (n)

['taini] ['tju:to] nhỏ bé daia và sai trợ giảng/gia sư sin usidi ['infant]

nfant (n) adolescent (n)

4 LISTENING Lucky breaks

Nghe: Những may mắn

Listen to people talk about their professions. What professions are they in? How did they get their lucky breaks?

	Celia	Rodney	Victor
Profession	oiii o zo doj o eni batano 1	BINOISUS D	as werlang at the restaurant.
Lucky break		en compare with a partn	lete these septences. To

5 WORD POWER Human ages

Từ vựng: Tuổi của con người

A What age range can each of these words be used for?

kid	1 – 12	woman	· transitionness	boy	nen the phon
infant		young person		man	эна вик уэв Г ант аатта
child		middle-aged person		young adult	
adolescent	,	baby	(have)	elderly person	everal vears
girl		teenager	#D	math, so I	

B Pair work Compare your ideas.

A: I think a kid is between the ages of 1 and 12. B: I think a kid can be between 1 and 17.

C Class activity Compare information around the class.



6 WRITING

Viết

A Write a short biography of an interesting person in your family – a grandparent, an aunt or uncle – or of someone else you know about.

My grandmother was born in Poland, but she moved to Toronto in 1946 when she was a teenager. She met my grandfather in 1955 when she was working in a department store. After that,

B Pair work Exchange papers. Answer any questions your partner may have.

infant (n) adolescent (n) ['infont] [,ædou'lesnt] trẻ sơ sinh thiếu niên/vị thành niên ny (adj) uor (n)

CONVERSATION Dam thoai

A Listen and practice.

Pete: Hey, Joan! I haven't seen you in ages. What have you been doing lately?

Joan: Nothing exciting. I've been working two jobs for the last six months.

Pete: How come?

Joan: I'm saving up money for a trip to Europe.

Pete: Well, I've only been spending money. I quit my job to go to graduate school. I'm studying journalism.

Joan: Really? How long have you been doing that?

Pete: For two years. Luckily, I finish next month.

I'm almost out of money.

B Listen to two other people at the party. What has happened since they last saw each other?



3 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trong tâm ngữ pháp

Present perfect continuous

Use the present perfect continuous for actions that start in the past and continue into the present.

What have you been doing lately?

I've been working two jobs for the last six months.

Have you been saving money?

No, I haven't been saving any money. I've been spending it.

- A Complete these conversations. Then practice them with a partner.
- 1. A: What......you.....(do) these days?
 - B: Well, I (spend) my free time at the beach.
- 2. A:you(work) part time this year?
 - B: Yes, I have. I (work) at a shoe store on the weekends.
- 3. A: How......you.....(feel) lately?
 - B: Great! I (get) a lot of sleep, and I (eat) too much fat or sugar.
- 4. A:you (get) enough exercise lately?
 - B: No, I haven't. I (go) to the gym often enough.
- B Pair work Take turns asking the questions in part A. Give your own information.



['græd3uot] [seiv] ['d3o:nolizm] tốt nghiệp

cứu/để dành/tiết kiệm ngành báo chí



9 PRONUNCIATION Contrastive stress Phát âm: Trọng âm

A De Listen and practice. You can change the meaning of a sentence by stressing different words.

Phát âm: Trọng âm tương phản

I've been studying journalism. (normal stress)

A: Has your brother been studying journalism?

B: No, I've been studying journalism.

A: Are you going to study journalism?

B: No, I've been studying journalism.

B Pair work Practice this conversation. Pay attention to contrastive stress.

A: Has it been a year since I last saw you?

B: No, it's been two years.

A: Have you been losing weight?

B: Well, actually, I've been gaining weight

A: Oh, and have you been going to school?

B: No, I've been teaching school.

A: Have you been teaching journalism?

B: No, I've been studying journalism.

A: Have you been studying literature?

B: No, I've been studying journalism.



Life is like a game!

Play a board game. Turn to page IC-16.

10 REALLY? HOW INTERESTING!

A Group work What interesting things can you find out about your classmates? Ask these questions and others of your own.

Have you been doing anything exciting recently?
Are you studying anything right now?

How long have you been studying it?
Have you met anyone interesting lately?
Who is your best friend? How did you meet?
Where were you living ten years ago? Did you

like it there? What do you remember about it? Have you been saving up to buy anything special? How long have you been saving up for it?

useful expressions

Really? I didn't know that! Oh, I see. Gee, I had no idea. Wow! Tell me more.

B Class activity Tell the class the most interesting thing you learned about someone in your group.

Thật sao? Thú vị quá



life is like a game

[laiviz likoo geim]

cuộc đời giống như một trò

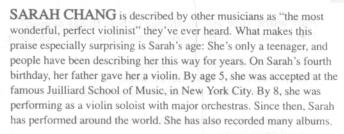
11 READING

Doc

Child Prodigies

Do you know of any child prodigies?







Before **MICHAEL KEARNEY** was born, the doctors warned his parents that he might have learning difficulties. He's been proving them wrong ever since! By the time he was 4 months old, Michael could say full sentences like, "What's for dinner, Mom?" By 10 months, he could read words. Studying at home with his parents. Michael completed four grade levels each year. At 5, he entered high school – and finished in one year. By 10, he graduated from college with honors. At 11, he went to graduate school.



When ALEXANDRA NECHITA was 2, her parents gave her some crayons and coloring books. Alexandra was soon working in inks, watercolors, and by the time she was 7, oil paints. At 8, Alexandra had her first art exhibition. Her paintings are often compared to those of Picasso and other great artists. They have sold for as much as \$80,000. She has been on TV, and a book of her paintings was published.

A Read the article. How did these three young people first show they were prodigies? What has each one accomplished? Complete the chart.

	When/How did he or she begin?	Accomplishment
Sarah Michael		MHO IS THIS BY?
Alexandra	songs, albums,	A Pair work List een novels, meviek or olier popular works.

B Pair work Talk about these questions.

- 1. Which of the three prodigies do you think is the most amazing? Why?
- 2. If you were a prodigy, what would you like to be really good at? Why?

child prodigy orchestra (n) graduate from ... with honors [t/aild 'prodid3i] ['o:kistro] ['græd3uot i]

thần đồng dàn nhạc

tốt nghiệp ở đâu với bằng danh dự

Review of Units 9-12

Ôn tập các bài 9 - 12

WHAT IF ...?

Nhỡ thì sao ... ?

Pair work How will life change if these things happen? Think of at least three possible consequences for each event.

If people stop watching television,

If people work only three days a week, . . .

If people aren't allowed to drive cars in the city,

A: If people stop watching television, they might read more books.

B: And they might spend more time with their friends.

Group work One student makes a statement about



ME, TOO!

Tôi, cũng vây



Something you

are good at doing or not good at doing can do well or can't do well like or don't like enjoy doing or don't enjoy doing hate doing

Then that student says the name of someone else in the group who responds and makes another statement.

A: I hate doing my laundry. (says someone else's name)

B: So do I! I can't whistle. (says someone else's name)

C: Neither can I.



Ai là tác giả?

A Pair work List ten novels, movies, songs, albums, or other popular works.

B Group work Exchange lists with another pair. Take turns saying a true statement about each item on the list. Does everyone agree that each sentence is true?

"The novel War and Peace was written by Leo Tolstoy."

"The song 'Let It Be' was first sung by the Beatles."

stop doing sth allow to do sth

[stop 'du:in]

bỏ/ngừng làm gì [o'lau tu du] cho phép làm gì

novel: War and Peace

song: 'Let It Be'

LISTENING

Nghe

Listen to people on a TV game show answer questions about Spain. What are the answers? Complete the chart.



Currency Driving Population Capital Popular sport Neighboring countries



MEMORY CHECK

Kiểm tra trí nhớ

Pair work Take turns asking and answering these questions.

Group work Take turns asking these questions and four

What were you wearing . . . ?

yesterday two days ago on Saturday night Who did you . . . ?

eat lunch with yesterday talk to on the phone last night last write a letter to?

TELL ME ABOUT IT

Cho tôi biết về điều đó

Have you been . . . lately? working out learning a new hobby working long hours taking driving lessons reading any interesting books doing anything unusual traveling

dating someone new

A: Have you been working out lately?

B: Yes, I have. I've been going to a gym.

A: Really? What kind of exercise do you do there? B: I usually take aerobics classes, but sometimes I swim.

more of your own. Then ask for further information.



A terrific book, but a terrible movie!

Một cuốn sách tuyệt vời, nhưng là SNAPSHOT Thông tin nhanh and một bộ phim quá dở

	Movie	Year	Box office \$ (in millions)
The Contract of the Contract o	1. Star Wars	1977/1997	420.0
	2. E.T. – The Extra-Terrestrial	1982	399.9
	3. Jurassic Park	1993	356.5
	4. Independence Day	1996	306.2
WOVIE	5. The Lion King	1994	300.4
MOVIE	6. Forrest Gump	1994	298.5
MANIA	7. Home Alone	1990	285.8
MAINIA	8. Return of the Jedi	1983	263.7
	9. Jaws	1975	260.0
	10. Batman	1989	251.2

Source: The Information Please Almanac

Talk about these questions.

How many of these movies have you seen? Which is your favorite? Why?

What are the three best movies you have seen in the last few years?

2 CONVERSATION Dam thoai

A Listen and practice.

Paul: Do you want to see a movie tonight?

Carol: Hmm. Maybe. What's playing?

Lynn: How about the new Steven Spielberg film?

I hear it's really exciting.

Carol: Who's Steven Spielberg?

Paul: You know. He directed Jaws, E.T., and Jurassic Park.

Carol: Oh, Jurassic Park was boring. The book by Michael Crichton was fascinating, but the movie was terrible!

Lynn: Well, I'm interested in that new Johnny Depp movie.

It's a romance. It's been playing for about a month. Carol: Now that sounds good. I've never seen him in

a romance, and I think he's a wonderful actor!

B Listen to the rest of the conversation. What happens next? What do they decide to do?



actor (n) romance (n) fascinating (adj)

80

['æktə] [rou'mæns] ['fæsineitin] nam diễn viên sự mơ mộng/lãng mạn hấp dẫn/quyến rũ

Denzel Washington

3 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trọng tâm ngữ pháp

Participles as adjectives 🗐

Present participles

Past participles

The new Johnny Depp movie sounds interesting.

The movie Jurassic Park was boring.

The book was fascinating.

I'm interested in the new Johnny Depp movie.

I was **bored** by *Jurassic Park*.
I was **fascinated** by the book.

Complete these sentences. Then compare with a partner.

- 1. Denzel Washington is a very...... actor. (interest)
- 2. I find nature films (fascinate)
- 3. I'm not.....in horror movies. (interest)
- 4. I'mwith watching television. (bore)
- 5. I loved Winona Ryder's latest movie.

I wasthat it didn't do better. (amaze)

- 6. I thought Jurassic Park was anbook. (excite)
- 8. It'sthey don't make many westerns these days. (surprise)



4 WORD POWER Reactions

Từ vưng: Phản ứng

A Complete the chart with synonyms from the list.

dumb marvelous silly absurd terrible fabulous bbo bizarre unusual outstanding disgusting fantastic ridiculous weird horrible dreadful

awful	wonderful	stupid	strange
		playing now2	otstanding movies
		nterested in?	i nov eus saivom lo
			movies.

B Write six sentences like the ones in Exercise 3 about movies, actors, or novels. Then compare with a partner. Does your partner agree?

bizarre (adj)	[biˈzaː]	rất kỳ quặc
dumb (adj)	[dAm]	khờ dại/ngu ngơ
weird (adj)	[wiod]	kỳ quặc/bí ẩn
silly (adj)	[ˈsili]	ngu ngốc

5 LISTENING

2UDOS SAMMAS Nghe

Listen to people talk about books and movies. Check (🗸) the adjective that best describes what they say about each one.

1. ☐ fascinating 2. ☐ wonderful ☐ silly ☐ odd ☐ boring	3. boring terrific dreadful	4. ridiculous interesting exciting
--	-----------------------------	-------------------------------------

6 PRONUNCIATION Word and sentence stress

Phát âm: Trọng âm từ và trọng âm câu

A Which syllable is stressed in each of these words? Mark the stress. Then listen and check. Practice the words with a partner.

absurd	fantastic	outstanding	successful	terrible	unusua
omonin a	6-1-1			CCITIBIC	unusua
amazing	fabulous	fascinating	ridiculous	surprising	terrific

B Listen and practice these sentences. Pay attention to stress.

It was a terrific book, but a terrible movie! I thought *Jurassic Park* was ridiculous, but it was very successful. *Jaws* was an exciting movie with many frightening scenes.

7 LET'S GO TO THE MOVIES!

A Pair work Take turns asking and answering these questions and others of your own.

What kinds of movies are you interested in? Why? What kinds of movies do you find boring?

Who are your favorite actors and actresses? Why? Are there any actors you don't like?

What's one of the most exciting movies you have ever seen?

What did you like about it?

What are your three favorite movies in English? Why?

Are there any outstanding movies playing now?

- A: What kinds of movies are you interested in?
- B: I love action movies.
- A: Really? Why is that?
- B: They're exciting! What about you?
- A: I think action movies are kind of silly. I prefer .

B Group work Compare your information.

Chúng ta hãy đi xem phim



fabulous (adj) dreadful (adj) ['fæbjuløs] ['dredful] thần thoại/hoang đường dễ sợ/kinh khiếp

8 CONVERSATION

Đàm thoại

Listen and practice. We elbada noisivelet a se

Nina: This John Grisham novel looks interesting.

Alan: Oh, it is. It's about a guy who joins a corrupt law firm and then can't leave. Luckily he has a brave wife who helps him out of the mess.

Nina: Hmm. Maybe I'll read it.

Alan: Well, the movie is even better.

Nina: Oh, is that the movie that stars Tom Cruise?

Alan: Yeah. Why don't we rent the video?

Nina: You don't mind seeing it again?

Alan: Not at all. You rent the video, and I'll bring the popcorn.



9 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trong tâm ngữ pháp

Relative clauses (19)

Use who or that for people.

It's about a guy. He joins a corrupt law firm.

It's about a guy who/that joins a corrupt law firm.

Use which or that for things. It's a thriller. It stars Tom Cruise. It's a thriller which/that stars Tom Cruise.

A Rewrite B's answers using relative clauses. Then practice with a partner.

- A: Have you heard of West Side Story?
 - B: Yes, it's a musical. It has some wonderful songs.
- 2. A: What's the movie Schindler's List about?
 - B: It's about an Austrian man. He saved the lives of many people during World War II.
- 3. A: Did you enjoy reading Stephen King's latest novel?
- B: Yes! It was a great book. It was hard to put down.
- 4. A: Who was George Gershwin?
- B: He was an American composer. He wrote lots of fantastic music.
- 5. A: Who is Steven Spielberg?
 - B: He's a movie director. He's made some of the most successful movies of all time

B Pair work Complete these sentences with relative clauses. Then write three more sentences of your own. Compare your information around the class.

- 1. Tom Cruise is an actor
- 2. Star Wars is a movie
- 3. Walt Disney was a famous movie director
- 4. Marilyn Monroe was an actress
- 5. The Wizard of Oz is a musical



guy (n) corrupt (adj)/(v) mess (n)

[gai] [ko'rApt] [mes]

đồi bai/thối nát/ăn hối lộ tình trang hỗn lộn/rắc rối

10 SCRIPT WRITERS

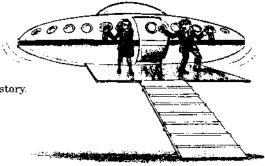
Người viết kịch bản

A Group work You are script writers for a television studio. You have to write a new script for a TV detective show or mystery. Plan an interesting story. Make brief notes.

Where does the story take place? Who are the main characters? What are the main events? How does the story end?

B Class activity Tell the class about your story.

"Our story is about two secret agents who are chasing after aliens from another planet. There are two main characters...."



11 LISTENING

Nghe

A : Listen to two critics talk about a new movie. What do they like or not like about it? Rate each item in the chart from 1 to 3.

	Pauline	Colin
Acting		
Story	***************************************	
Photography		
Special effects		

Ratings

1 = didn't like it
2 = OK
3 = liked it very much

B Dook at the chart in part A. Guess how many stars each critic gave the movie. Then listen to the critics give their ratings.

* poor

★★ fair

*** very good

**** excellent



At the movies

What do you know about movies and movie stars?

Turn to page IC-17.

WRITING Movie reviews

Viết: Điểm phim

A **Pair work** Choose a movie you both have seen recently and discuss it. Then each person writes a review of it.

What was the movie about?
Did you enjoy it?
What did you like or not like about it?
How would you rate it?

B Class activity Read your review to the class. Who else has seen the movie?

Do they agree with your review?

I recently saw It's a comedy that stars It's about a guy who gets lost in a large city. . . . The movie has good special effects and is very funny. . . . I give it . . . stars.

main character (n) chase (v)

[mein 'kærikte] [tJeis] nhân vật chính đuổi/bắt 18 READING

Doc

Star Wars-Three Reviews

Have you ever seen the movie Star Wars?

Movie Director's Latest Triumph!



Don't believe people who say you can't improve a good thing. Director George Lucas has taken Star Wars, which was a hit back in 1977, and made it even better. There are new scenes, incredible special effects, and an improved soundtrack. But Lucas isn't just a technical genius. He also knows how to win our hearts. Everyone will love this science-fiction adventure story about growing up, friendship, and good against evil. Audiences will especially like the exciting chase scenes, shootouts, and Darth Vader, who is one of the greatest movie villains of all time. This movie is spectacular!

A New, Old Hit

Star Wars is back and better than ever . . . sort of. Yes, the soundtrack is clearer, but it's also louder. Yes, there are some new characters, but the old ones seem a little silly

now. Even though it's a fun movie, and I liked it the first time I saw it, I expected this to be so much better. Maybe George Lucas should have made an entirely new movie.

"What Junk!"

Why did George
Lucas spend
his money and time
on a tired old movie?
There is a scene
where Luke
Skywalker, the
hero, is rushing to
the spaceship that
will take him on his
journey to save a

princess, some robots, and, oh yes, the universe. When Luke sees the old spaceship, he exclaims, "What a piece of junk!" I knew exactly how he felt. This movie is just that, a piece of junk.

A Read the reviews. What rating would each critic give Star Wars?

Circle the words in each review that helped you decide on the critics' ratings.

* poor

** fair

*** very good

*** excellent

B Pair work Talk about these questions. Explain your answers.

- Do you read movie reviews or watch movie critics on TV?
 Do they help you decide which movies you want to see?
- 2. What movie did you see when you were a child that is still special to you today?
- 3. What makes a movie great? terrible?

 $[d3\Lambda\eta k]$

genious (n) to win one's heart spaceship (n) junk (n) ['d3i:nios] [to win wAns ha:t] ['speis'Jip] thiên tài chiếm được tình cảm của ai con tàu vũ trụ sách/phim kém chất lượng

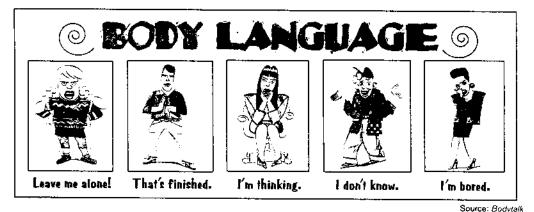


? So that's what it means!

Thì ra nghĩa là vậy

1 SNAPSHOT

Thông tin nhanh



Talk about these questions.

Do people in your country use these gestures? Do you?

What other gestures do you use to communicate these meanings?

What are three other gestures you sometimes use? What do they mean?

2 CONVERSATION

Đàm thoại

A 🕮 Listen and practice.

Ron: Have you met Raj, the student from India?

Laura: No, I haven't.

Ron: Well, he seems really nice, but there's one thing I noticed. He moves his head from side to side

when you talk to him. You know, like this.

Laura: Maybe it means he doesn't understand you.

Ron: No, I don't think so.

Laura: Or it could mean he doesn't agree with you.

Peter: Actually, people from India sometimes move
their heads from side to side when they

agree with what you're saying.

Ron: Oh, so that's what it means!

B

'Listen to Raj talking to his friend. What does he find unusual about the way people in North America communicate?



gesture (n)

['d3est/o]

cử chỉ/điệu bộ

3 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trọng tâm ngữ pháp

Modals and adverbs

Modals

It might/may mean he doesn't understand you.
It could mean he doesn't agree with you.
It must mean he agrees with you.

Adverbs

Maybe it means he doesn't understand you.

Perhaps it means he doesn't agree with you.

That probably means he agrees with you.

A Pair work What do you think these gestures mean? Make a statement about each gesture using the meanings from the list. Then compare with a partner.



- A: What do you think number one means?
- B: That probably means What do you think?
- A: Yeah, or it could mean

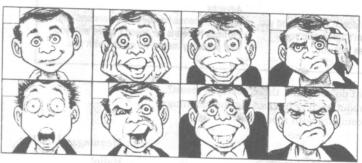
B Group work Think of gestures that communicate these meanings. Then take turns acting out your gestures. Can the group guess what you are trying to communicate?

Go away. I give up.	Pay attention, please. That's perfect!	I'm angry! I'm scared.	I'm hungry. That's delicious.	
pay attention crazy (adj)	[pei o'ten/n] ['kreizi]	chú ý đi čn/kh ùng/mê d	ại	

WORD POWER Emotions

ZUDO Từ vưng: Cảm xúc

A What emotions do you think this person is communicating with his facial expressions? Match each picture with the emotion.



"He looks .

- a. amazed
- b. annoved
- c. confused
- d. disgusted
- e. embarrassed
- f. excited
- g. interested
- h. shocked

B Pair work Take turns acting out the emotions above. Can you guess what your partner is trying to communicate? Use an -ing adjective. "That's amazing!" was Jan'T

F PLAY A GAME Charades

A Think of two other meanings that you can communicate with gestures or expressions. Write your meanings on slips of paper.

B Class activity Put all the papers in one pile. Each student takes two slips of paper. Take turns acting out the meanings. Can others in the class guess what you are trying to communicate?

A: Maybe that means.

B: No, not exactly.

C: It might mean . . .

B: Yes, that's close.

Choi một trò choi: Đoán nghĩa



PRONUNCIATION Emphatic stress Phát âm: Trọng âm nhấn mạnh

A Disten and practice. Words expressing strong emotions are often to the body of the work of the body stressed and have higher pitch. B: That probably means . . . What do you think?

That was amazing!

You really **frightened** me!

B Pair work Write four sentences using these words. Then take turns reading your statements. Pay attention to emphatic stress in the sentences. shocking exciting Pay attention, please. betsugsiby!

embarrassed

facial expression (n) disgusted (adj) shocked (adj)

['fei∫ol iks'pre∫n] [dis'gAstid] [Jok]

những biểu hiện trên nét mặt phẫn nộ/chán ghét bị sốc/sửng sốt

PROVERBS

211007 RAMMA Tuc ngữ

A Group work Here are some common proverbs in English. What do you think they mean?

A penny saved is a penny earned. A stitch in time saves nine. Don't burn your bridges behind you. Every cloud has a silver lining. One person's meat is another one's poison. Don't count your chickens before they hatch.

Việt

"That could mean '

B Think of three interesting proverbs from your country. Tell them to your group in English. What do they mean?



What's going on?

Interpret people's body language. Turn to page IC-18.

WRITING

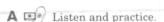
A Write about one of your favorite proverbs. What does it mean? Why do you like it?

One of my favorite proverbs is "There are truths on one side of the mountain which are falsehoods on the other." I like this proverb because it states an important truth. What it means is that the things that some people think are true, other people may think are false.

B Class activity Read your paragraph to the class.

CONVERSATION

Đàm thoại



Vickie: You know, these highways are really great, but the road signs are pretty confusing.

John: Hmm. What do these lines on the road mean?

Vickie: They must mean you aren't allowed to pass here.

John: No. I don't think so. I'm going to pass this car in front of us. It's going too slow. Now, I wonder what that sign up ahead means.

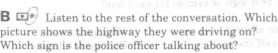
Vickie: It may mean you've got to take a left in this lane.

John: Or maybe it means you can turn left if you want to. I think I'll just go straight.

B Listen to the rest of the conversation. Which picture shows the highway they were driving on? Is one northing? Which sign is the police officer talking about? do no of the box







truth (n) road sign (n) [tru:0] [roud sain] sư thất cád mỗid oád ũm iộb bảng tín hiệu ở đường phố

GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trong tâm ngữ pháp

Permission, obligation, and prohibition

Permission

You con turn left here.

You're allowed to pass here.

Obligation

You have to turn left here.

You've got to pass here.

Prohibition

You con't turn left here.

You aren't allowed to pass here.

A What do you think these international signs mean? Match each sign with the correct meaning. Then compare with a partner.









3



allowed. d. Drinking water.

Meanings

e. Do not touch.

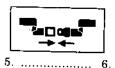
a. No playing ball. b. Wear hard hats. c. Swimming

f. Fasten seat

belts.

g. No bicycles.

h. Recyclable.









B Write sentences about the meaning of each sign. Say where you might see each one. Then compare in groups.

Number one means you aren't allowed to touch something. You might see this sign in a gift shop or a museum.

II LISTENING What's in a sign?

A \bigcirc Listen to people talk about the meaning of these signs. Number the signs they discuss from 1 to 5.











B Group work Draw a sign or symbol to express these meanings. Then compare with others. Who has the best sign or symbol for each one?

Remove your shoes. Don't litter.

Children are allowed to enter. You can't go off the path.

No dogs allowed. Fishing is allowed.

wear hard hat remove your shoes

[wee 'ha:d,hæt] [rimuv jo fus]

đội mũ bảo hiểm/bảo hộ

cởi giấy

Doc

Body Language

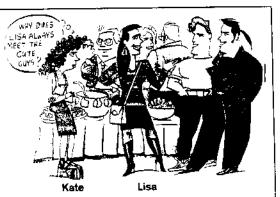
What Does It Say?

What do you think is happening in the picture?

More than half of what we communicate is communicated not through words but through body language. This includes our posture, facial expressions, and gestures. Because body language is so important, you'll want to know what yours is saying and how to interpret other people's, too. Here are some examples of body language and its meaning. (Note: These meanings are for North America. Interpretations may differ a bit in other cultures.)

If your posture is slumped and your head is down, this could mean that you are sad or lack confidence. If your posture is straight but relaxed, you are expressing confidence and friendliness.

A smile is a sign of friendliness and interest. But people sometimes smile just to be polite. To get another clue from people's faces, notice their eyes. Friendliness and interest are expressed when a



person's eyes meet yours (especially when you're the one who's talking) and then look away and meet yours again. A person who doesn't look away is expressing a challenge. A person who doesn't look at you is expressing lack of interest or is shy.

Hand gestures can mean a person is interested in the conversation. But repeated movements — like tapping a pencil or tapping a foot — often mean the person is either impatient or nervous. Stay away from someone who points at you while talking with you: That person might be angry at you or feel superior to you.

A Read the article. Then circle the letter of the correct answer.

- 1. Look at the picture above. Who appears to be confident?
 - a. Kate.
- b. Lisa.
- c. Both Kate and Lisa.
- 2. While you're talking to your boss, he or she is tapping a foot. This might be a sign that your boss:
 - a. is impatient with what you're saying.
- b. is interested in what you're saying.
- c. feels he or she is superior to you.
- 3. If you want to show someone that you're interested, you should:
 - a. continue to look at the person without stopping.
- b. look away from the person.
- look at the person but not for too long.

B Pair work Talk about these questions.

- 1. Do you agree with all the interpretations given in the article? If not, what don't you agree with?
- How aware are you of people's body language?
- 3. What do you notice most people's posture, facial expressions, or gestures?
- 4. Why do people sometimes express more through body language than through words?

posture (n) feel superior to sb

['post/o(r)]
[fil supierio to sb]

tu thế

cảm thấy vượt trội ai

What would you do?

SNAPSHOT

Ban sẽ làm gì?

Thông tin nhanh

· Some storie nesi

Taxi Driver Returns **Brazilian Soccer** Player's World Cup Gold Medal and \$60,000:

is rewarded with \$1,000 and souvenirs Businessman tracks down owner of \$750,000 and is thanked only with a phone call

to find owner of lost cash, credit cards, airline tickets, and jewelry; "I'm an honest man," the student tells relieved owner.

Homeless Mom and 3 Kids Return Lost \$400 Check to Owner: Owner helps family move into house of their own

Source: The Los Angeles Times

Talk about these questions.

What would you do in these situations?

People who return lost things sometimes get a reward. Is that the meaning of the saying "Honesty pays"?

Have you ever found anything valuable? What did you do?

CONVERSATION

A Listen and practice.

Lou: Look at this. Some guy found \$750,000! He returned it and the owner thanked him with a phone call.

Kate: You're kidding! If I found \$750,000, all between all did I wouldn't return it so fast.

Lou: Why? What would you do?

Kate: Well, I'd go straight to Las Vegas and try my luck in the casinos. I could double the money in a day and keep \$750,000 for myself.

Lou: You might also lose it all in a day. And then you could go to jail. Kate: Hmm. You've got a point there.

B [Listen to the rest of the conversation.

What would Lou do if he found some money?



[trai wAns lAk] [gou tu d3eil]

thử vân may vào tù/bị đi tù



GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trọng tâm ngữ pháp

Unreal conditional sentences with if clauses

Unreal conditional sentences describe imaginary situations and consequences in the present.
What would you do 11 you found \$750,000?

Imaginary situation (with simple past forms) If I found \$750,000,

Imaginary consequence

(with modals would, might, or could)

I wouldn't return it so tast.
I might go to Las Vegas.
I could double it in a casino.
I would/I'd go straight to the police.

A Match the clauses in column A with information from column B. (More than one answer may be possible.) Then compare with a partner.

A

- 1. If I found a burglar in my home,
- 2. If I saw someone shoplifting,
- 3. If I found \$75,000 on the street,
- 4. If the teacher gave me an A on a test by mistake,
- 5. If I locked myself out of my house,
- 6. If I won a million dollars in a lottery,

B Pair work Add your own information to the clauses in column A. Then take turns reading your sentences aloud.

C Group work Think of three more situations like the ones in part A. Then ask another pair of students what they would do.



- a. I'd break a window to get in.
- b. I could think of ways to invest it.
- c. I might not tell anybody.
- d. I'd probably call the police.
- e. I guess I might spend it. f. I might tell a salesclerk.
- g. I'd run to my neighbors for help.
- h. I could get a set of keys from my friend.



4 LISTENING

Nghe

A Listen to three people talking about predicaments. Summarize each predicament and write it in the chart.

Predicament	Best suggestion		
1. ,,			
2			
3.	***************************************		

B Listen again. What do you think the best suggestion was for each predicament? Complete the chart. Then compare answers with classmates.

5 PREDICAMENTS

Cảnh ngô

A Group work What do you think you would do or might do in these situations?

- you found a valuable piece of jewelry in a park
- you were on vacation overseas and lost all your money and credit cards
- you saw two people fighting in the street
- you discovered your friend has a drinking problem
- someone stole your clothes while you were swimming at the beach
- a friend borrowed money from you and didn't return it

A: What would you do if . . .?

B: I'm not sure. I think I'd

C: I might....

B Class activity Choose three of the best suggestions and tell the class about them.



Do the right thing!

What would you do in

some difficult situations?

Turn to page IC-20.

6 WORD POWER Antonyms

Từ vựng: Từ phản nghĩa

A Find nine pairs of opposites in this list. Complete the chart. Then compare with a partner.

	enjoy
/	admit
	agree

borrow remember enand

dislike divorce find forget

marry refuse lend save

		ассерс	iose	≠ deny	disagree	
admit	≠deny		≠,.		,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	
	, *					
	=	********	=		······ =	

B Pair work Choose four pairs of opposites. Write a sentence using each pair.

I can never save money because I spend it all on clothes.

valuable (adj)

steal (v)

[sti:l] deny (v) [di'nai]

['væljuøbi]

có giá tri

ān cắp phủ định/chối bỏ

7 CONVERSATION

Đàm thoai

A Disten and practice.

Tanya: Is your houseguest still staying with you? Ruth: No, after three weeks, she finally left.

Thank goodness!

Tanya: So how did you get rid of her?

Ruth: Well, I lied and told her my parents were coming for a visit and I needed the room.

1 probably shouldn't have lied. Now I feel bad. What would you have done?

Tanya: Oh, I would have told her to leave after a week. By the way, my father-in-law is coming to visit us next week. Can I move in with you for a few days?

Ruth: No way!

B What would you do if a houseguest stayed too long?



8 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trọng tâm ngữ pháp

Past modals 🖼 🗐

Use would have or should have + past participle to talk about imaginary or hypothetical actions in the post.

What would you have done?

I would have told her to leave. I wouldn't have done anything.

What should I have done?

You **should have spoken** to her about it.
You **shouldn't have lied** about it.

A Read the situations in column A. What would have been the best thing to do? Choose suggestions from column B. Then compare with a partner.

A

- 1. The teacher borrowed my favorite book and spilled coffee all over it.
- 2. I saw a classmate cheating on an exam. So I wrote her a letter about it.
- 3. A friend of mine always has messy hair.
 So I gave him a comb for his birthday.
- 4. I hit someone's car when I was leaving a parking lot. Luckily, no one saw me.
- My aunt gave me a cigarette lighter for my birthday. But I don't smoke.
 So I gave it back to her.

В

- a. You should have spoken to him about it.
- I would have told her that I'd prefer something else.
- c. I would have spoken to the teacher about it.
- d. I would have waited for the owner to come back.
- e. You should have exchanged it for something else.
- f. I wouldn't have said anything.
- g. You should have warned her not to do it again.
- h. You should have left a note for the owner.

B Group work Make another suggestion for each situation above.

Then compare answers with classmates.

houseguest (n) get rid of sb cheat (v) exchange (v)

['haus,gest]
[get rid ov sb]
[ti:t]

người khách thoát khỏi ai/tổng khứ ai

lừa đối/gian lặn

[iksˈưeind3] trao đổi

9 PRONUNCIATION Reduced form of have

Phát âm: Dang rút gọn của have

A Listen and practice. Notice how have is reduced to /əv/ in the following sentences.

What would you have done?

I would have told her to leave.

B Pair work Practice these sentences. Use the reduced form of have.

You shouldn't have lied. You should have been honest. I would have said something.

I wouldn't have said anything.

10 NO REGRETS

A Think about things that have happened in your life over the past few years. What opportunities did you miss? Write down five things you should or shouldn't have done.

I should have married my first girlfriend.
I shouldn't have studied . . .

B Group work Tell your classmates about your missed opportunities. Use the reduced form of have.



11 LISTENING

Nghe

A Listen to people calling Dr. Hilda, a counselor on a radio talk show. Complete the chart.

	What happened to the caller?	What did the caller do?	What should the caller have done?
Caller 1	You aheald have epoken to him	g	watered anilonal nulTi
	I would have told ber that I'd r		
Caller 3	something else. I would have spoken to the tea		2. I saw a classmate d So I wrote her a lett

B Group work Do you agree with Dr. rilida: what would you have done?



opportunity (n)

[,opo'tju:niti]

cơ hôi

askAllice

Do you read advice columns in newspapers and magazines? Do you think they are helpful to everyone who reads them?



Someone told me that my brother's girlfriend was dating another guy. I felt I should let my brother know, and after I did, he confronted her with the story. Although she denied it, it caused a terrible argument and they almost broke up. Now it turns out that the rumor wasn't true, and my brother has stopped speaking to me.

Distraught Sister

Dear Alice.

I was at a friend's house for dinner recently. During dinner, I accidentally broke a beautiful vase. It was my friend's favorite wedding present. I offered to pay for it, but she refused. Should I have insisted? I still feel bad about it.

Feeling Guilty



Dear Alice.

My son is 23 years old. He finished college last year, but he can't seem to find a job that he likes. He still lives at home, and I'm worried that he's not trying hard enough to get a job and be on his own. Meanwhile, I've been cooking his meals and doing his laundry.

Tired Mom

Dear ...,

Well, you learned a lesson. You shouldn't have listened to gossip. And you shouldn't have passed it on. Now you have to repair the damage. Apologize sincerely and hope that he will forgive and forget.

Alice

Dear ...,

I think you did the right thing. It was important to offer to pay for it, but it's not surprising that she refused. Perhaps you could give her a special gift to make up for it.

Alice

Dear . . .

You're making it too easy for him to stay where he is. Be firm and tell him he has two months to find a job (any job) and get his own place. He's old enough to take care of himself – but you have to be willing to let him go.

Alice

Dear . . .

You should have thought more carefully before you acted. It wasn't necessary to get angry. Next time, speak to the child immediately and warn him or her not to do it again.

Alice

A Read the letters to the "Ask Alice" advice column and Alice's replies.

Match the letters with the replies.

B Pair work Talk about these questions. OF Fred A bestes of Fred at sebred T

- 1. Do you agree with the advice in the letters? What advice would you give?
- 2. Think of a problem you or a friend is having. Ask your partner for advice.

13 WRITING

Write a letter to "Ask Alice" about a problem like the ones above. Then put a very your letters on the bulletin board. Choose one and write a reply to it.

confront (v)
rumor (n)
take care (v)

take care (v) be willing to do sth gossip (n) (v) [kon'fr∧nt]

[ˈruːmø] [teik keø]

[qiscg']

đối mặt với/giáp mặt

tin đồn

chăm sóc/cẩn thận sắn sàng làm gì tin đồn nhảm

16 What's your excuse?

Ban viên cớ gì?

Thông tin nhanh

SNAPSHOT

EXCUSES, EXCUSES

Being late for an appointment

'My watch stopped."

Forgetting an appointment

"The traffic was terrible!"

"I wrote the wrong date on my calendar."

"I forgot to check my calendar."

Not doing homework

"My sister was using the computer."

"I thought it was due tomorrow."

Getting home late

"I couldn't get a ride."

"I missed the bus."

Not accepting a date

"I'm not allowed to date." "I have a boyfriend/girlfriend."

"I'm sorry I'm late. My watch stopped."

Talk about these questions.

Have you ever heard any of these excuses? Do you ever use any of them? What other excuses might you give in these situations? Do you think that you should always tell the truth?

CONVERSATION

Đàm thoại



Listen and practice.

Daniel: Hi, Amanda.

Amanda: Oh, Daniel! I was going to call you tonight.

Daniel: What's up?

Amanda: Well, it's Albert's birthday on Saturday, and

I'm planning a surprise party for him.

Daniel: Sounds like fun.

Amanda: The idea is this: I've asked Albert to go to a

movie with me at six. After the movie, we go back to his apartment to have dinner. So be at Albert's by 7:30 to wait for us and surprise him.

His roommate will let you in.

Daniel: OK. Great.

Amanda: Uh, can you bring some soda? Oh, and don't

say anything to Albert. and add sold meldorg

Daniel: No problem. It of ylder a office bas eno



appointment (n) get a rid

[b'pointmont] [get o rid]

cuộc hen gặp đi nhờ xe/quá giang

3 GRAMMAR FOCUS

nollscollo Trọng tâm ngữ pháp

Reported speech: requests 👨

Notice how requests are reported with the verbs ask, tell, and say + the infinitive.

Original request

Reported request

Can you bring some soda?

She **asked me to bring** some soda. She **told me to bring** some soda.

She said to bring some soda.

Don't say anything to Albert.

She **asked me not to say** anything to Albert. She **told me not to say** anything to Albert. She **said not to say** anything to Albert.

Here are some things Amanda told the surprise-party guests. Write down her requests using ask, tell, or say. Then compare with a partner.

- 1. Meet at Albert's apartment at 7:30 on Saturday.
- 2. Can you bring your favorite CDs?
- 3. Don't bring any food.
- 4. Can you bring a small gift for Albert?
- 5. Don't spend more than \$10 on the gift.
- 6. Be careful not to say anything about the party to him.

Amanda told them to meet at Albert's apartment at 7:30 on Saturday

4 PICNIC AT THE PARK

Buổi đi chơi ở công viên

A Imagine you're planning a picnic (or party). Write three positive and three negative requests for your guests.

Meet me at the park at 2 o'clock.

Bring a baseball bat.

Don't forget your bathing suit.

B *Pair work* Take turns reading your requests. Confirm the information using reported requests.

- A: You said to meet you at the park at 2 o'clock.
- B: That's right.
- A: You asked me to bring a baseball.
- B: No, I asked you to bring a baseball bat.
- A: Oh, that's right. And you told me

C Group work Join another pair and report what your partner told you.

"Charles is planning a picnic. He asked me to meet him at the park at 2 o'clock. . . ."



WORD POWER Collocation

Từ vưng: Tổ hợp

flowed more than \$10 on the gall

A Find three words or phrases in the list that are usually paired with each verb.

anger an apology a complaint	a compliment a concern your congratulatio	a criticism an excuse ns an invitation	a joke a lie a reason	your regrets sympathy the truth
express		delet me to bring some social to the social social metric social socialistica social s	in? She	an you bring some soc
give		salá to árixa azmo cada:		
make		nickyno yse ot tox-sm bases	bert She	Michignirhynorypa i api
offer		told the not to say onybing to A		
tell				

B Pair work In what situations would you do the things in part A? Write five questions using the information in the chart. Then take turns asking and answering the questions.

A: When would you tell a lie?

B: Maybe if someone asked me how old I am.

6 CONVERSATION

A Listen and practice.

Albert: Hi, Daniel. This is Albert.

Daniel: Oh, hi. How are things? Albert: Just fine, thanks. Uh, are you doing anything

on Saturday night?

Daniel: Hmm. Saturday night? Let me think. Oh, yes.

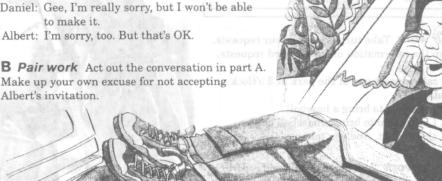
My cousin just called to say he was flying in that night. I told him I would pick him up.

Albert: Oh, that's too bad! It's my birthday. I'm having dinner with Amanda, and I thought I'd invite more people and make it a party.

Daniel: Gee, I'm really sorry, but I won't be able

B Pair work Act out the conversation in part A. Make up your own excuse for not accepting

Albert's invitation.



apology (n) compliment (n) invitation (n) regret (n)

[e'poled3i] ['kompliment] [,invi'teisn] [ri'gret]

lời xin lỗi lời khen/lời ca tung lời mời sự hối tiếc gaod vậg lào

Nghe

7 LISTENING

A 🗐 Listen to Albert inviting friends to his party on Saturday. What excuses do people give for not coming? Match the person to the excuse.

- 1. Scott
- a. She said that she wasn't feeling well.
- 2. Fumiko
- b. He said he was taking his mother to a dance club
- 3. Manuel
- c. She said she had houseguests for the weekend.
- 4. Regina
- d. He said that he would be out of town.
- e. She said she might go out with a friend.
- f. He said he was going away with his family.

B 🗐 Listen. It's the night of Albert's birthday party. What happens?



GRAMMAR FOCUS

Trong tâm ngữ pháp

Reported speech

If the reporting verb is in the post, the statement reported is usually changed to a form of the past.

Direct statement

I'm not feeling well.

There is an office party.

I visit my mother every Saturday.

I made a date with Jim.

I have planned a trip

can't come.

I will be out of town.

I may go out with a friend.

Reported statement

She said (that)

she wasn't feeling well.

there was on office party.

she visited her mother every Saturday.

she had mode a date with Jim.

she had planned a trip.

He told me (that)

he couldn't come.

he would be out of town.

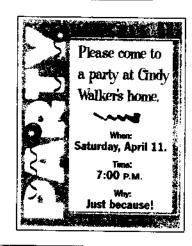
he might go out with a friend.

Cindy is having a party. Look at these excuses. Change them into reported speech. Then compare with a partner.

1. Cindy: "There is a party on Saturday at my house."

Cindy said there was a party on Saturday at her house.

- 2. Bob: "I'm leaving town for the weekend."
- 3. Mary: "I've been invited to a wedding on Saturday."
- 4. Jim: "I promised to help Joanne move."
- 5. Ann: "I can't come because I have the flu."
- 6. John: "I'll be studying for a test all weekend."
- 7. Susan: "I have to meet someone at the airport."
- 8. David: "I may have to work that night."



go out with sb plan (v)

[gou aut wiθ sb]

[plæn]

đi chơi với ai

lập kể hoạch

9 PRONUNCIATION Had, would, and was

Phát âm had, would và was

A E Listen to how had, would, and was are pronounced in these sentences.

She said she had forgotten the appointment.

He said he would be out of town.

She said she was busy.

B Practice the sentences you wrote in Exercise 8 again.

Pay attention to the pronunciation of had, would, and was.

10 NEVER ON SUNDAY!

Không bao giờ vào ngày chủ nhật

A Your teacher wants to have an extra class on Sunday afternoon. You don't want to go. Make up an excuse.

I'm taking my dog to the hairdresser.

B Class activity Talk to at least five classmates. What excuses do they give?

A: Are you coming to the class on Sunday?

B: No. I have an appointment with my psychic.

C Tell the class the best excuse you heard.

"Jack said he was taking his grandmother to a wrestling match."

"Sue said that she had a belly-dancing lesson."



Nghe và viết

II LISTENING AND WRITING

Nancy is out of town for the weekend. Listen to four messages on her answering machine. Her roommate has written down the first one. Write down the other messages.

Nancy -

Friday, 9 P.M.

Bill called. He said he would meet you in front of Pizza House at 6:30 P.M. on Monday.

interchange 16

Excuses, excuses

Make plans with your partner. Student A turns to page IC-19. Student B turns to page IC-21.

wrestling (n)	['reslin]	môn đấu vật
psychic (n)	['saikik]	ông đồng bà cố
belly-dancing	['beli'da:ns]	điệu múa bụng
roommate (n)	['rummeit]	bạn cùng phòng

12 READING

Doc

The Truth About

Do you ever tell little lies? If yes, when and why?

It seems that everybody tells lies – well, not big lies, but what we call "white lies." Telling white lies isn't really that bad. Most of the time, people do it because they want to protect a friendship. Some studies suggest that the average person lies about seven times a day. The only real questions are about when we lie and who we tell lies to. A recent study found that people frequently stretch the truth. Here are some ways they do it.

#1 Lying to hido something:

People often lie because they want to hide something from someone. For example, a son doesn't tell his parents that he's dating a girl because he doesn't think they will like her. Instead, he says he's going out with the guys.

#2 Biving false excuses:

Sometimes people lie because they don't want to do something. For example, someone invites you to a party. You think it will be boring, so you say you're busy.

#3 lying to make someone feel yesd:

Often we stretch the truth to make someone feel good. For example, your friend cooks dinner for you, but it tastes terrible. Do you say so? No! You probably say. "Mmm, this is delicious!"

#4 Lying to hide had news:

Sometimes we don't want to tell someone bad news. For example, you have just had a very bad day at work, but you don't feel like talking about it. So if someone asks you about your day, you just say everything was fine.



A Read the article. Then look at these situations. Are they examples of 1, 2, 3, or 4? (More than one answer is possible.)

(N	lore than one answer is possible.)	
1.	You borrowed a friend's motorcycle and scratched it. You're having	
	it painted. When your friend wants the motorcycle back, you say	
	the engine didn't sound right and you're having it checked.	,,

- Your friend gives you an ugly vase for your birthday. You say, "Oh, it's beautiful!"
- You lost your job and are having trouble finding a new one.
 An old friend calls to find out how you are. You tell your friend you're busy writing a book.
- Someone you don't like invites you to a movie, so you say, "I've already seen it."
- 5. You're planning a surprise party for a friend. To get her to come over at the right time, you ask her to stop by to see your new VCR.

B Pair work Talk about these questions.

- 1. Do you know of any other reasons people tell white lies?
- 2. When is it better to tell the truth rather than lie?
- 3. Do you ever give excuses that are not really true? When and why?

white-lie (n)
scratch (v)
vara (n)

[wait lai] [skræt/] [vo:z] lời nói đối vô hại thổi phồng cái bình/lo/hū

Review of Units 13-16

	On the safe hai di	2 40
1	On tập các bài 13	ng nên
	A Look at the five situations below and think about the	- PO 5T
	 something you shouldn't have bought someone you should have e-mailed or written to someone you should have called something you shouldn't have said something you should have done 	SCOOL
	B Pair work Talk about each situation in part A.	
	A: I bought a lamp at a garage sale. I shouldn't have bought it because I really don't like it.B: I did something similar recently. I shouldn't have bought	
2	LISTENING	Nghe
	A Listen to some people talking. What are they talking ab Write down each topic below.	out?
	1 2 3	4
	B ➡ Listen again. What does each person mean? Check (✓) t	he best response.
	1. ☐ She is confused. 3. ☐ He couldn't understand it. ☐ He thought it was very inte	
	2. She enjoyed it. 4. She thought it was all right She hated it. She thought it was terrible	t.
3	RULES AND REGULATIONS	Luật và qui địni
	A Group work How many rules can you think of for each of t	hese places?
	on an airplane in an art museum at a 200 in a library in a movie theater in school	
	"On an airplane, you have to wear your seat belt when the plane is taking off and landing."	useful expressions You can/can't
	B Class activity Share your group's ideas.	You are/aren't allowed to You have to
	- (·) [1] (G	

WHAT'S BEEN HAPPENING?

Chuyên gì đang xảy ra?

Group work Take turns asking and answering these questions.

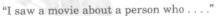
Have you seen any frightening movies lately? Tell the group about it.

What is the most amusing show on TV these days? What is it about?

What is the most shocking news story you've read in the past year? Give some details.

Has a friend told you an amazing story recently? What was it about?

What is the most boring time you've had recently? Why were you so bored?



"I find . . . amusing. It's about a family that"

"I was shocked by a story in the news last month. It was about"



THAT SOUNDS FANTASTIC!

Nghe thật hấp dẫn!

A What would you do in these situations? Complete the chart.

If I had \$1,000 to spend,

If I could invite anyone I wanted to dinner,

If I could take a vacation anywhere in the world,

If I could change one thing in the world,

If I could be a famous movie star,

B Group work Take turns comparing your answers. "There will be you should be said you bid"

6 GOOD INTENTIONS

A Group work What are some things you would like to do in the near future? Think of three good intentions.

A: I'm going to try to learn how to sail.

B: That's interesting. Are you going to take lessons?

C: . . .

B Class activity Report the best intentions you heard.

"Bob said he was going to try to learn how to sail"

"Terry told me that she wanted to spend more time studying."



sail (v)

[seil]

scene (n) seals moy [si:n] bearest a canh/quang canh in teom sat quorg and the T wow quore E

nhổ neo/đi thuyền buồm

Interchange Activities

interchange 1 CLASS Thông ti		
A Class activity Go arounthe information below. Then and take notes. Write a class	ask follow-up questions	
I used to look very differen	(1000)	

ind someone who	Name	Notes
used to look very different.		
"Did you use to look very different?"		
2. used to have a favorite toy when he or she was a child.		***************************************
"Did you use to have a favorite toy when you were a child?"		
3. always listened to his or her teachers.	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	***************************************
"Did you always listen to your teachers?"		
4. hated high school.		***************************************
"Did you hate high school?"		
5. used to fight a lot with his or her brothers and sisters.	***************************************	***************************************
"Did you use to fight a lot with your brothers and sisters?"		
6. dated someone for a long time in high school.	•••••	****************
"Did you "go steady" with someone in high school?"		
7. wanted to be a movie star when he ar she was younger.	***************************************	••••••
"Did you want to be a movie star when you were younger?"		
8. had a pet when he or she was a child.	***************************************	***************************************
"Did you have a pet when you were a child?"		
, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,		***************************************

B Group work Tell the group the most interesting thing you learned about your classmates.

interchange 2 MAKING THE CITY BETTER Làm thành phố tốt hơn

A Read this letter to a local newspaper.

Letters to the Editor

Dear Editor:

I am sick and tired of the traffic in this city! It is so bad that I can never get anywhere on time. There are too many cars on the road, and most of them have only one person in them.

Another problem is the buses. They are so old and slow that nobody wants to take them. They are noisy and very dirty. You can't even see out the windows!

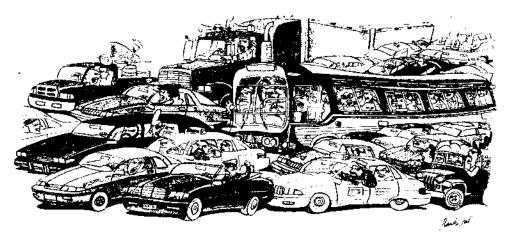
Also, the taxi drivers are rude. They never know where they are going, and they take a long time to get someplace. Taxis are expensive, too. And the subway is just too crowded and dangerous. What are we going to do?

George Grady Oakville

B Group work Suggest five ways to solve the transportation problems in Oakville.

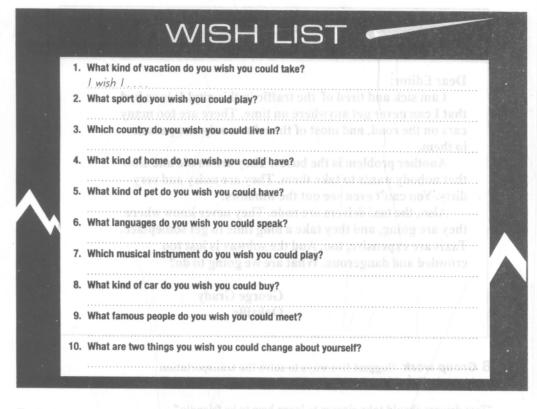
"Taxi drivers should take classes to learn how to be friendly."

C Class activity Tell your group's ideas to the class. Then decide which suggestions are best.



interchange 3 WISHFUL THINKING Suy nghĩ viễn vông

A Complete this questionnaire with information about yourself. of a of rested side basel. A



B Pair work Compare your questionnaires. Take turns asking and answering questions about your wishes.

A: What kind of vacation do you wish you could take?

B: I wish I could go on a safari.

A: Really? Why?

B: Well, I could take some great pictures of wild animals!

C Class activity Imagine that you are at a class reunion. It is ten years since you completed the questionnaire in part A. Tell the class about some wishes that have come true for your partner.

"Sue is a photographer now. She travels to Africa every year and takes pictures of wild animals. Her photos are in many magazines."



interchange 4 RISKY BUSINESS

Việc làm liều lĩnh

A How much do you really know about your classmates? Look at the survey and add two more situations to items 1 and 2.

		Name	Notes
1.	Find someone who has		,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
	a. cried during a movie.	*************************	
	b. gone for a moonlight swim.	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	
	c. sung in a band.	*****************	***************************************
	d. studied all night for an exam.	***************************************	
i.,	e. lied about his or her age.	,	
	f		
	g		**************************************
2.	Find someone who has never		
	a. eaten a hot dog,		***************************************
	b. been on a blind date.	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	
	c. seen a wild onimal.		
	d. kissed someone in public.		1
	e. driven a car.		
	,		,441,*441,**4,11*44,441,444,74441,**441-**********
	f		
	g		,,
L.			

B Class activity Go around the class and ask the questions in the survey. Write down the names of classmates who answer "Yes" for item 1 and "No" for item 2. Then ask follow-up questions and take notes.

- A: Have you ever cried during a movie?
- B: Yes. I've cried during a lot of movies.
- A: What kinds of movies?
- B: Well, sad ones like Casablanca and
- A: Have you ever eaten a hot dog?
- C: No, I haven't
- A: Why not?
- C: Well, I'm a vegetarian.

C Group work Compare the information in your surveys.



interchange 5 FUN VACATIONS Những kỳ nghỉ thú vị

Student A

he survey and add two more situations to items 1 and 2 A Pair work You and your partner are going to take a trip. You have a brochure for a ski trip, and your partner has a brochure for a surfing trip. First ask questions like these about the surfing trip:

How much does the trip cost? What does the price of the trip include? What are the accommodations like? Are surfing lessons available? Is there going to be anything else to do? Tell me about the nightlife. What else can you tell me about the trip?

B Pair work Now use the information in this brochure to answer your partner's questions about the ski trip.

onderland

15-Day Ski Tour in the Green Mountains

Visit these ski resorts in Vermont:

Killington • Okemo • Stowe Stratton • Sugarbush

Accommodations: Country inns, with relaxing atmosphere and fine dining; luxurious rooms feature

Jacuzzis and fireplaces

Price includes: All ski equipment, lift tickets, and daily

2-hour lessons

Nightlife activities: Candlelit dinners in the inn's restaurants.

classical music concerts

Additional activities: Go antique shopping, cross-country skiing,

sledding, ice skating, horse-drawn sleigh rides

Tour cost: Single room: \$2,500

Double room: \$3,200



C Pair work Decide which trip you are going to take. Then explain your choice to the class.

interchange 6 THAT'S NO EXCUSE!

Lòi khuyên hợp lý

A **Pair work** Look at these situations and act out conversations. Apologize and then give an excuse, admit a mistake, make an offer, or make a promise.





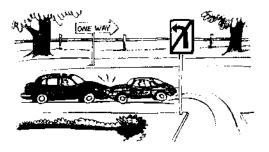
Student A: You're the customer. Student B: You're the hairstylist.

A: My hair! You ruined my hair!

B: I'm so sorry. I

Student A: You own the puppy. Student B: You own the backpack.

3



Student A: You're driving the red car. Student B: You're driving the blue car.



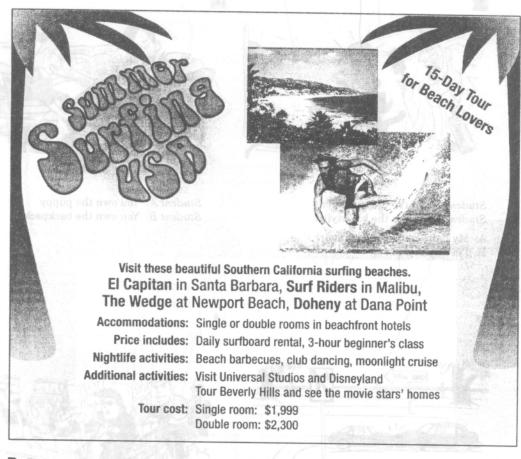
Student A: You're the customer. Student B: You're the cashier.

B Group work Have you ever experienced situations like these? What happened? What did you do? Share your stories.

interchange 5 FUN VACATIONS Dó không phải là cớ

Student B

Apologize and then give an excuse, admit a mistake, make an offer, or A Pair work You and your partner are going to take a trip. You have a salimong a salam brochure for a surfing trip, and your partner has a brochure for a ski trip. First, use the information in this brochure to answer your partner's questions about the surfing trip.



B Pair work Now ask questions like these about the ski trip:

How much does the trip cost? What does the price of the trip include? What are the accommodations like? Are skiing lessons available? Is there going to be anything else to do? Tell me about the nightlife. What else can you tell me about the trip?

C Pair work Decide which trip you are going to take. Then explain your choice to the class.

interchange 7 GOOD ADVICE

BOWGA GOO Lời khuyên hợp lý

Student A

A Pair work Ask your partner for advice about these situations.

I'm going away on vacation and my house will be empty. How can I make my house safe from burglars?

I'm buying a used car. How can I make sure that it's in good condition?

I have an important job interview. How can I make a good impression?







- A: I'm going away on vacation and my house will be empty. How can I make my house safe from burglars?
- B: Well, don't forget to lock all the windows. Oh, and make sure to

B Pair work Now your partner needs and of awoba advice about these situations. Give at least four suggestions for each one.

useful expressions

Don't forget to Remember to Try to

Try not to Make sure to Be sure not to

Your partner is going to rent an apartment with a roommate.



Your partner is meeting his girlfriend's or her boyfriend's parents for the first time.



Your partner is mailing a valuable glass vase to a friend.

interchange 7 GOOD ADVICE

EO VOA GOO Lời khuyên hợp lý

Student B

A Pair work Your partner needs advice about these situations. Give at least four suggestions for each one.

useful expressions

Don't forget to Try not to Remember to

Try to

A. I'm going away on vacation and my house will be empty

Make sure to

Be sure not to







Your partner is going away on vacation and his or her house will be empty.

Your partner is buying a used car.

Your partner has an important job interview.

A: I'm going away on vacation and my house will be empty. How can I make my house safe from burglars?

B: Well, don't forget to lock all the windows. Oh, and make sure to of legical l'nod

B Pair work Now ask your partner for advice about these situations.

I'm going to rent an apartment with a roommate. What can we do to get along well?

I'm meeting my girlfriend's/boyfriend's parents for the first time. How can I make a good impression?

I'm mailing a valuable glass vase to my friend. How can I make sure it arrives safely?







interchange 8 ONCE IN A BLUE MOON

Gần như không bao giờ

A Class activity How do your classmates celebrate special days and times? Go around the class and ask the questions below. If someone answers "Yes," write down his or her name. Ask for more information and take notes.

- A: Does your family have big get-togethers?
- B: Yes, we do.
- A: What do you do when you get together?
- B: Well, we have a big meal. After we eat, we watch old home movies.

	of of things	Name	Notes
1.	Does your family have big get-togethers?	ives. They will spend more time	B. If people-watch less TV
2.	Do you ever buy flowers for someone special?	ests, students will not stud	9. If feachers do not give
3.	Do you often take friends out to dinner?		
4.	Do you wear your national dress at least once a year?	pare your opinions. Be	B Group work Com
5.	Has someone given you money recently as a gift?		. snoinieg mev
6.	Have you given money to someone recently as a gift?	aise the price of cigar	A: I think that if they
7.	Do you like to celebrate your birthday with a party?	7	C: Why not?
8.	Do you ever send birthday cards?	It for people to stop si	B: Well, 'Us very difficit A. But if you'den't have
	Do you ever give friends birthday presents?		
10.	Do you think long engagements are a good idea?	IAG	/ THUNK
11.	Do you drink champagne at special events?	TIW	THAT/IF
12.	Is New Year's your favorite time of the year?		V. Tall
13.	Do you ever celebrate a holiday with fireworks?		

B Pair work Compare your information with a partner.



interchange 9 CONSIDER THE CONSEQUENCES

Xem xét kết quả

A Read over this questionnaire. Check (/) the column that states your opinion.

arrange 21 syriad sanitance and			o-l\aacust.
	I agree.	I don't agree.	It depends.
1. If they raise the price of cigarettes a lot, people will			take notes
stop smoking. 2. If the price of gas goes up a lot, people will drive less.	hig get-to	our family have	A: Does yo
3. If people work only four days a week, their lives will be better.		o you b when	
4. If people have smaller families, they will have better lives.		e have a big m	
If women do not work outside the home, their children will be happier.		aid home movie	Watch
If a woman becomes the leader of this country, a lot of things will change for the better.			
7. If children watch a lot of violent programs on TV, they will become violent themselves.			
If people watch less TV, they will spend more time with their families.	Serio Dileis	our far have big	Boss Doss
9. If teachers do not give tests, students will not study.	son enne spe	oi salwoll cul rava u	O yo

B Group work Compare your opinions. Be prepared to give reasons for your opinions.

- A: I think that if they raise the price of cigarettes a lot, people will stop smoking.
- B: I don't really agree.
- C: Why not?
- B: Well, it's very difficult for people to stop smoking.
- A: But if you don't have much money, you may not be able to afford expensive cigarettes.



interchange 10 DREAM JOB

80 MA39 Việc làm trong mơ

Student A

A Pair work You and your partner are co-owners of NIKO Sneakers, a large company that makes running and walking shoes. You are both looking for someone to be a marketing assistant. You interviewed Lynette Liu. First, read the job description. Then look at what Ms. Liu said during the interview and answer your partner's questions about her.

Marketing Assistant

Requirements:

- · Must have a business degree or marketing experience
- · Must be a "people person"
- · Must enjoy sports and fitness activities - especially running and walking
- · Must be available to work long hours
- · Must be willing to travel

Responsibilities:

- · Interviewing customers about their shoe preferences
- · Writing reports about the customer interviews
- · Working with famous athletes



WORKED FOR THREE YEARS AS A SALES ASSISTANT AT MBA SPORTS

I'M AFRAID I DON'T HAVE A COLLEGE DEGREE. BUT I LEARN FAST

DON'T MIND TRAVELING.

REALLY LIKE MEETING PEOPLE.

> I LOVE WORKING OUT.

N GET

IT'S DIFFICULT FOR ME TO WORK IN THE EVENINGS BECAUSE I HAVE A SMALL CHILD.

> I HATE SITTING IN AN OFFICE ALL DAY.

I'M NOT VERY GOOD AT WRITING REPORTS.

B Pair work Your partner interviewed James Marino. Ask questions like these to get information about him.

What kind of work experience does he have? What kind of degree does he have? Does he like meeting people? Is he good at writing reports?

What kind of sports interest him? Does he mind traveling? Can he work long hours? What else do you know about him?

C Pair work Work with your partner to decide who to hire for the job of marketing assistant, Lynette Liu or James Marino and June Liu of James Marino and Marino and James Marino and James

interchange 10

DREAM JOB

Việc làm trong mơ

Student B

A Pair work You and your partner are co-owners of NIKO Sneakers, a large company that makes running and walking shoes. You are both looking for someone to be a marketing assistant. Your partner interviewed Lynette Liu. First, read the job description. Then ask questions like these to get information about her.

Marketing Assistant

Requirements:

- Must have a business degree or marketing experience
- · Must be a "people person"
- Must enjoy sports and fitness activities – especially running and walking
- Must be available to work long hours
- Must be willing to travel

Responsibilities:

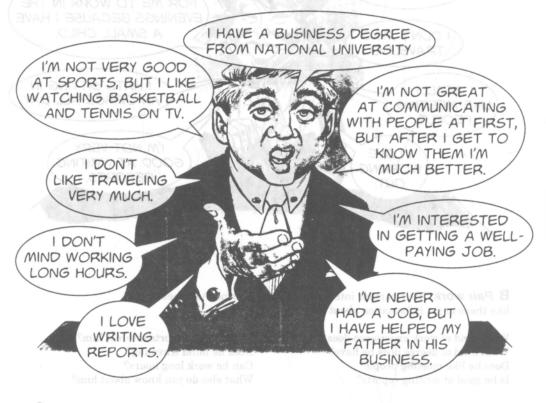
- Interviewing customers about their shoe preferences
- Writing reports about the customer interviews
- Working with famous athletes



What kind of work experience does she have? What kind of degree does she have? Does she like meeting people? Is she good at writing reports?

What kind of sports interest her?
Does she mind traveling?
Can she work long hours?
What else do you know about her?

B Pair work You interviewed James Marino. First, look at what he said during the interview. Then answer your partner's questions about him.



C Pair work Work with your partner to decide who to hire for the job of marketing assistant, Lynette Liu or James Marino.

interchange 11 TRAVELER'S PROFILE Hồ sơ về du khách

A Pair work What kind of traveler are you (or do you think you would be)? Look at the three types of travelers. Which one is most like you? Why?







The "Just-In-Case" Traveler

The "Less-Is-Best" Traveler

The Invisible Traveler

B Group work Decide together which traveler each of these statements best describes. Check (/) the appropriate column.

			THE RESERVE OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN 2 IS NOT THE OWNER.	
		The "Just-In- Case" Traveler	The "Less-Is- Best" Traveler	The Invisible Traveler
 hotel rooms are us postcards are sent no money is spent 	ked days in advance. the last minute. be bought months ahead. sually not reserved. to every friend and relative. on souvenirs. sten at expensive restaurants e trip is organized.	TO SEE .	000000000	

C Class activity Take a survey to find out which kind of travelers are in your class. Are most students "Just-In-Case" Travelers?

A: What kind of traveler are you, Rita?

B: Oh, I'm a "Just-In-Case" traveler. I always pack too many clothes when I go on vacation.

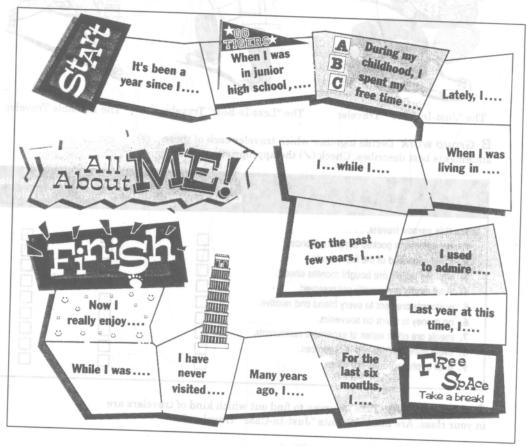
A: How about you, Michael?

C: ...

interchange 12 LIFE IS LIKE A GAME! Cuộc đời như trò chơi

A Group work Play the board game. Follow these instructions.

- 1. Use small pieces of paper with your initials on them as markers.
- 2. Take turns by tossing a coin: If the coin lands face up, move two spaces. If one coin lands face down, move one space.
- 3. Complete the sentence in the space you land on. Others ask two follow-up questions to get more information.
- A: It's been a year since I started working.
- B: Oh, really? Do you like your job?
- A: Well, the job's just okay, but the money is great!
- C: What do you do?
- A: ...



B Class activity Tell the class an interesting fact that you learned at taple a mil do at about someone in your group.

"Last year at this time, Daniel was hiking in the Swiss Alps!"

interchange 13 AT THE MOVIES

Ở rạp chiếu phim

A Complete this questionnaire.

What is the name of an actor or ac	tress
1. that reminds you of someone in your family?	
2, that has beautiful eyes?	
3, who does things to help society?	·····
4, who has a beautiful speaking voice?	*1*************************************
5, who isn't good looking out who is very taiented?	***************************************
What is the name of a movie	
6. that made you feel sad?	***************************************
7. that made you laugh a lot?	
8. which scared you?	
9. which had great music?	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
10. that was about a ridiculous story?	

B Pair work Compare your questionnaires. Ask follow-up questions of your own.

- A: What is the name of an actor or actress that reminds you of someone in your family?
- B: Tom Cruise.
- A: Who does he remind you of?
- B: My brother, Todd.
- A: Really? Why?
- B: Because he looks like my brother. They have the same smile.



interchange 14 WHAT'S GOING ON?

Chuyện gì đang xảy ra?

A **Pair work** Look at this scene of a crowded restaurant. What do you think is happening in each of the five situations? Look at people's body language for clues.

- A: Why do you think the woman in situation 1 looks upset?
- B: Well, she might be having a fight with . . .
- A: What do you think the woman's gesture in situation 5 means?
- B: Maybe it means she . . .



B Group work Compare your interpretations. Do you agree or disagree?

interchange 16 EXCUSES, EXCUSES

Có, có

Student A

A Role play You and your partner want to get together one evening in July. However, you are very busy and you also want to keep time open for other friends. You don't want to hurt your partner's feelings, so you make up excuses for many of the days in that month. Look at your calendar of evening plans. Then ask and answer questions to find out when you are both free. (Write your partner's excuses on the calendar.) Don't give up until you make a date.

A: Do you want to go out on the second?

B: I'm sorry. I'm going to my friend's wedding. Are you free on the first?

A: Well, I

July										
Sunday	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday 1	Saturday 2				
					dinner with Lynn					
3	4 class	5		o these dates free.	movie with Tom	9				
10		12 a a friend calls. up excuses!	jazz club with Mike	theater with Jane	15	16				
17 dinner with office friends	18 class	19	study for exam tomorrow		22 I friend will probabl ake up excuses!	23				
24	25		eep these dates free up excuses!	dinner for Dad's birthday	go dancing with Ted & Sarah					

B Pair work Now work with another "Student A." Discuss the excuses "Student B" gave you. Decide which excuses were probably true and which ones were probably not true.

[&]quot;Anna said that on the ninth she had to stay home and reorganize her clothes closet. That was probably not true."

interchange 15 DO THE RIGHT THING!

Làm việc đúng

 ${\bf A}$ What would you do in each of these situations? Circle ${\bf a}$, ${\bf b}$, or ${\bf c}$. If you think you would do something else, write your suggestion next to ${\bf d}$.

"What Would You Do?"
If an artist friend gave me a large original painting that was ugly, I would a. say something nice and put it in a closet later. b. say that I didn't like it.
c. say thank you and hang it on the wall.
2. If I saw a parent spanking a child for no reason, I would a. do nothing.
b. yell at the parent. c. call the police. d
3. If i saw a student cheating on an exam, i would a. do nothing. b. tell the teacher.
c. talk to the student about it after the exam.
4. If I saw my friend's boyfriend or girlfriend with someone other than my friend, I would a. do nothing. b. talk to my friend.
b. talk to my friend.c. talk to my friend's boyfriend or girlfriend.d
 if I saw a woman standing on a highway next to her car with a flat tire, I would a. do nothing.
b. stop and help her. c. find the nearest telephone and call the police. d



- B Group work Compare your choices for each situation in part A.
- A: What would you do if an artist friend gave you an ugly painting?
- B: Well, I would probably say that I didn't like it.
- A: Really? I would . . .
- f C Class activity Take a class survey. Find out which choice was most popular for each situation. Talk about any other suggestions people added for f d.

interchange 16 EXCUSES, EXCUSES

Có, có

Student B

A Role play You and your partner want to get together one evening in July. However, you are very busy and you also want to keep time open for other friends. You don't want to hurt your partner's feelings, so you make up excuses for many of the days in that month. Look at your calendar of evening plans. Then ask and answer questions to find out when you are both free. (Write your partner's excuses on the calendar.) Don't give up until you make a date.

A: Do you want to go out on the second?

B: I'm sorry. I'm going to my friend's wedding. Are you free on the first?

A: Well, I

		J	UL	1 2		_
Sunday	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday 1	Saturday 2
						Sue's wedding
3 4 You want to keep these dates free. Make up excuses!		5 movie with Bob	6	7 8 9 You don't want to make plans in case you want to ge away for a few days. Make up excuses!		
10 visit Mom and Dad	office party	12	photography workshop at school	14	15 16 Maybe an old friend will call. Make up excuses!	
17 visit Grandma	18	19 museum with Joe	20	21	22 party at Amys	23 baseball game with Jim
24 family get- together 31	You need a break. Make up an excuse!	26 book group meeting	27	28 need to work late tonight	29	30

B Pair work Now work with another "Student B." Discuss the excuses "Student A" gave you. Decide which excuses were probably true and which ones were probably not true.

"Joe said that on the sixth he had to stay home and reorganize his clothes closet. That was probably not true."

Unit Summaries

Units Summaries contain lists of key vocabulary and functional expressions, as well as grammar extensions for each unit. For Grammar Focus models, please refer to the appropriate unit page.

1

A TIME TO REMEMBER

KEY VOCABULARY

Nouns attic (soccer) ball beach bicycle (Summer) camp cat chess child childhood college comic dog family friend hide-and-seek hobby immigrant job

kid

lesson

memory
parents
park
pet
picture
place
possession
rabbit
scrapbook
shell
town
tree house
uncle
vacation
violin

Pronouns that this yourself Adjectives big favorite fine first fun

good (at . . .)
great
near
OK
old
scary
second
small

Verbs
Modals
can
could
would

Other
be begin collect follow get up give go grow up have (a . . . time)

move
paint
play
Rollerblade
spend (time)
stay
study

learn

study think throw out walk Adverbs Prepos

ago always early every (day) here just most neither not anymore now only

originally pretty really still there too yery Prepositions about (yourself) after (school) along (the beach) at (his house) from (South

America) in (high school) in front of to (college)

Conjunctions and but

Interjections by the way hey in fact oh say wow

EXPRESSIONS

Greeting someone Hi./Hello.

Introducing yourself My name is . . . /I'm . . . Nice to meet you.

Good to meet you, too.

Exchanging personal

information
Could you tell me (a little) about
yourself?
Sure. What do you want to know?
Are you from ...?
Yes, I am./No, I'm not.

Where were you born?
I was born in
Did you grow up there?
Did you go to school in ...?
Yes, I did./No, I didn't.

Talking about past activities
Where did you learn to ...?

Here.
How old were you when you began to ...?
I was ... years old.
What/Where did you use to ...?

When I was a kid, I used to
I used to too, when I was a kid.

Talking about past abilities How well did you . . . ?

I was pretty good.

Apologizing I'm (really) sorry.

Asking for and agreeing to a favor

Can you . . . ? Sure.

Giving opinions
I bet

GRAMMAR EXTENSION Adverbial clauses with when

These four sentences mean the same; here, when means "at that time":

- a) When I was in high school, we moved here.
- c) When we moved here, I was in high school.
- b) We moved here when I was in high school.
- d) I was in high school when we moved here.

When an adverbial clause comes before an independent clause (as in sentences a and c), a comma is used.

KEY VOCABULARY

Nouns City places airport bank cash machine dance club department store (business) district newsstand restaurant (duty-free) shop

Transportation bicycle (lane/stand)

(lane/station/stop) car subway

(entrance/station) taxi (driver/lane/stand)

Other certificate coffee

train

counter crime cup facility fare fire

government hall hamburger highway (half) hour idea letter location ma'am

(news)paper noise parking (garage/light/space) terrible pedestrian police (officer) (air) pollution

question restroom route rush hour stop (light/sign) street (light/sign) system telephone traffic

(light/sign/jam)

Pronoun one

Adjectives average cheap close (to) full polite public special sure terrific wrong

Verbs Modal be able to should

Other arrive be allowed (to)

buy check come cost drive feel like find

get

improve leave (for) look move need open park provide see

take (time) talk about write

Adverbs downtown in general much never auickly right

sometimes

upstairs

Prepositions across from around (here) at (rush hour) behind down (the hall) except on (the corner of)

Conjunctions however

next to

Interjection oh, no

EXPRESSIONS

Expressing a concern

There are too many/There is too much There aren't enough . . . /There isn't enough We need more . . .

There should be fewer/There should be less

Getting someone's attention

Excuse me.

Yes?

Asking for and giving information

Can you tell me where . . . ? Let me think. Could you tell me how often . . . ? Every Do you know what time/when . . . ? Sorry, I don't know. Just one more thing.

Asking a rhetorical question

Why is there never a . . . when you need one? Good question.

Thanking someone

Thanks (a lot).

Making a suggestion

Let's (go and)

Expressing probability

It should

GRAMMAR EXTENSION Word order with Wh-words

Direct question

the bank? Where iä subject Wh-word verb

Statement I don't know

where Wh-word the bank subject

ís. verb

Indirect question

Do you know

is? where the bank Wh-word subject verb

TIME FOR A CHANGE!

KEY VOCABULARY

Nouns

window

Houses / Apartments bathroom bedroom closet kitchen living room

Other appearance (rock) band class clothes guitar homework interest leisure life (a) lot (of) money musician neighborhood

personality

skill

Pronouns something somewhere

Adjectives Describing houses and apartments bright comfortable convenient cramped

dangerous dark dingy expensive huge inconvenient large modern new noisy private quiet reasonable

safe shabby spacious

Other boring different. difficult easy free healthy in (good) shape

last own part-time single Verbs

Modal

have to Other add become change do (chores)

enjoy go back go out like live

make (friends)

pay read rent retire show

take (classes) work

Adverbs a little actually all (day) else not at all then well

Prepositions around (the house) in (the evening)

Conjunction though

Interjections hmm uh

EXPRESSIONS

Asking for and giving an opinion

What do you think? The ... isn't ... enough. The . . . is too

There aren't enough /There isn't enough It's not as ... as It doesn't have as many . . . as / It has

just as many ... as

Exchanging personal information

Where are you working now? I'm still at the .

How old are you? $(\Gamma m)_{++++}$

Expressing regret about a present situation

I wish (that) I could I wish I didn't . . . I wish life were easier.

Expressing sympathy and empathy

That's too bad. I know what you mean.

Agreeing I don't ... either.

Expressing interest

Really?

GRAMMAR EXTENSION Evaluations

Evaluations often include an infinitive (to + base verb).

adjective + enough + infinitive

The kitchen isn't large enough to eat in.

too + adjective + infinitive

The kitchen is too small to eat in.

I'VE NEVER HEARD OF THAT!

KEY VOCABULARY

Nouns
Food and beverages
bagel
banana
beef
brains
bread
cake
chicken
coconut milk

chicken coconut milk curry (scrambled) egg

eggplant
fish
frog's legs
garlic
guacamole (dip)
honey
meat
(coconut) milk
oil
onion
pasta
peanut butter

pizza popcorn potato sandwich shrimp snails soup vegetable water

Meals breakfast dinner lunch

Other
appetizer
barbecue
bowl
charcoal
check
diet
dish
ingredient
kebob
lighter fluid
marinade
menu

picnic (food) poisoning recipe skewer slice snack sir

Adjectives awful barbecued delicious fried interesting strange toasted

Verbs Cooking methods bake barbecue boil fry roast steam

Other cut into/up decide (on) eat hear of light

make (= prepare)
marinate
pour (over)
prefer
put in/on
skip
spread
take off
try
turn over

Adverbs ever from time to time lately recently usually yesterday yet

Prepositions for (20 minutes) in (the morning)

EXPRESSIONS

Talking about food and beverages

Have you ever eaten ...?
Yes, I have /No, I haven't.
It's/They're ...!
This/It sounds/They sound
Yum!
Ugh!/Yuck!

Ordering in a restaurant Have you decided yet?

Yes. I'll have
And you?

I think I'll have the

Making and declining an offer

Like to . . . ? No, thanks.

Describing a procedure

First,
Then
Next,
After that,
Finally,

Stating a preference

I usually like to I prefer to

GRAMMAR EXTENSION Two meanings of recently

In the present perfect, recently means "during the period of days or weeks" or "lately."

I've eaten out a lot recently - three times this week.

In the past tense, recently means "not long ago."

I recently ate Korean food for the first time - last week, in fact.

KEY VOCABULARY

Nouns
Activities
camping
fishing
hiking
mountain climbing

rafting reading swimming

Other
backpack
(hiking) boots
camper
cash
condominium
country
cousin
credit card
culture
expedition
father
first-aid kit
identification

lots (of)

luggage
medication
mom
overnight bag
national park
passport
plan
plenty (of)
pocket
(hotel) reservation
shorts
suitcase
temple
thing
(plane) ticket

traveler's check trip vaccination visa wallet weather week windbreaker

world

Pronoun anyone

Adjectives alone back excited exciting foreign pleasant round-trip several warm

Verbs
Modals
had better
must
ought to
should

Other backpack carry catch up on check on have (time off) lie

pack start

take (a vacation/a walk) think (about/of)

travel visit

Adverbs abroad already around away lots of maybe nearby probably so

Prepositions around (Europe) by (yourself) for (a few days)

EXPRESSIONS

Talking about definite plans

Have you made any plans?
I'm going to

Talking about possible plans

What are you going to do?

I guess/I think I'll

I'll probably

Maybe I'll

Asking about length of time

For how long? How long are you going to . . . ? How long should we . . . ? Expressing necessity

You (don't) have to/You must/You need to

Making a suggestion

You'd better You ought to/should/shouldn't

Making and accepting an offer

Why don't you . . . ?

Do you mean it? I'd love to!

GRAMMAR EXTENSION Future sentences

With present continuous

The present continuous is often used with a future meaning when we are talking about things that have already been decided on and planned.

Where are you going for your vacation?

We're staying home. My grandparents are coming for a visit.

With simple present

The simple present is often used with a future meaning when we are talking about timetables, schedules, and so on.

When do you leave?

Our plane takes off at midnight, and we arrive in Paris at 7:00 A.M.

6 SURE. NO PROBLEM!

KEY VOCABULARY

Nouns

block cigarette

cost (a) couple (of) dollar

driveway dry cleaning faucet floor

garbage groceries lasagna

magazine mess music

neighbor oven phone problem program

radio (non-smoking) section

shoe sound stereo towel toy trash TV

wall

Pronoun anything

Adjectives broke busy

loud thin

> Verbs Two-part verbs clean off/up hang up keep down move into

pay back pick up put away/out take off/out throw out

turn down/off/on

Other afford block drive forget help

lend mind plan (to) realize smoke

Adverbs across definitely down

next door (all) over quietly 500n through tomorrow

totally

Prepositions in (a minute) on (the phone)

Conjunction if

EXPRESSIONS

Making and agreeing/objecting to a request

Please Sure. No problem! Oh, but Can/Could you . . . ? I'd be glad to. Would you please . . . ?

OK. Pl . . . Would you mind . . . ?

Sorry. I'll . . . right away.

Apologizing

I'm sorry. I didn't realize./I forgot./Fll . . . right away.

Making a promise

I'll make sure to

Expressing annoyance

Goodness!

Expressing surprise

Are you kidding?

GRAMMAR EXTENSION Separable and inseparable two-part verbs

Some two-part verbs take a direct object and can be separated.

Put away your things.

Why don't you put your things away?

I already put them away.

Other two-part verbs can also take direct objects but can't be separated.

Help me look for my new Suzanne Vega CD. I want to listen to it.

Suzanne Vega? I never heard of her.

KEY VOCABULARY

Nouns Machines / Appliances battery camcorder CD-ROM (laptop) computer fax (machine)

microwave oven modem (cellular) phone

robot satellite

Other

hair dryer

advice astronomy ATM card attendance behavior (household) bill budget (send) button

(phone/telephone) call chat (group/room) cold

container criminal document encyclopedia factory (DNA) fingerprinting

heat in-line skate information instructions Internet jet ski (phone) line medical school

metal mother motorbike movie

number order

(electrical) outlet paper (= composition) (crime) pattern people

person photocopy professor psychotherapist report report card

(work) schedule sport task UFO

worker World Wide Web

Pronouns mine ours

Adjectives closed extreme fragile latest

Verbs access analyze belong communicate connect create dial drop exchange expose

get on heat identify make sure perform place

plug press process recharge

remember research run (a machine)

save send spill store teach unplug use

Adverbs away facedown first of all just about nofto on-line

Prepositions at (a medical school) in (a factory) on (= about)

Interjection uh-huh

EXPRESSIONS

Making a suggestion Why don't you ...?

Describing a use or purpose

What's this for?

Maybe I will,

It's used for /It's used to I can use it for/1 can use it to

What are these for?

They're used for /They're used to

You can use them for . . . /You can use them to

Giving and responding to advice

First of all, don't forget to

Got it!

Then And remember to

That's all?

Pretty much. Just make sure to And try not to Good advice.

GRAMMAR EXTENSION Uncompleted infinitives

Advice

Remember to recharge the batteries.

Response with completed infinitive I won't forget to recharge them.

Response with uncompleted infinitive (to avoid repetition) I won't forget to.

LET'S CELEBRATE!

KEY VOCABULARY

Nouns

Holidays, festivals, and celebrations anniversary April Fool's Day bachelor party birthday bridal shower Carnival engagement. Halloween May Day Mother's Day New Year's Eve

(wedding) reception

Thanksgiving

wedding

Valentine's Day

Other bride candy card champagne costume couple cranberry sauce dancing

door dress fireworks flower gift groom kimono man mask newlywed night occasion part. period photo

woman word Seasons fali spring summer winter

present

samba

turkey

trick

revolution

Pronouns each other everyone ones

Adjectives beautiful engaged female long male Western white young

Verbs ask for attend celebrate change (into) date dress up get

(engaged/married/ together) happen have (a party) hold

honor

invite knock last love party гесеіуе return say serve

Adverb on . . . own

wear

Prepositions by (saying) during (the reception) on (October 31st) with (cranberry sauce)

Interjection Trick or treat!

EXPRESSIONS

Describing holidays, festivals, and celebrations

... is a day/a night when is the day when is the season when A . . . is a time when is the month when Before . . . ,

After . . . , When . . . , Asking about customs

How old are people when they . . . ? Is there . . . ? Where is the . . . usually held? What happens during the . . . ? What do ... wear? What type of food is served?

GRAMMAR EXTENSION Adverbial clauses of time

In sentences with clauses beginning with before and after, there is always one action that comes before another.

Before a man gets married, his friends give him a party. = First, his friends give him a party; then he gets married.

After a woman gets married, she often changes her name. = First, she gets married; then she changes her name.

With clauses beginning with when, however, either one action comes before another – and when means "after" - or both actions happen at the same time.

When a woman gets married, she often changes her name. = First, she gets married; then she changes her name.

When a woman gets married, she usually wears a white dress. = During the time she's getting married, she wears a white dress, (both happen at the same time)

BACK TO THE FUTURE

KEY VOCABULARY

Nouns

accident actress automobile building clothing (common) cold cure education

entertainment environment game

golf grocery store

gym hospital housing language loan mall medicine office population request shopping sleep

space

store

sugar

supermarket technology

Adjectives awake energetic hard high-rise hungry jealous relaxed serious successful

Verbs Modals may might

Other fall (in love) fit (into) gain (weight) give up go on (a diet) grow

inherit

join miss

lose (touch/weight)

own quit sell shop star take care of tear down

Adverbs even

fast nowadays sometime these days today

Prepositions

at (stores) by (computer)

in (the next 100 years/the future)

on (TV)

Conjunction

without

EXPRESSIONS

Talking about the past

In the past,
People used to
years ago, people

Talking about the present

These days,
Today, people
Nowadays, people

Talking about the future

Soon, there will be In . . . years, people might/may

In . . . years, people might/may
In the future, people are going to

Describing situations and possible consequences

If I..., I might...

If you ..., you won't be able to
If they don't ..., they'll have to
If you ..., you may be able to

GRAMMAR EXTENSION Conditional sentences with it clauses

In a conditional sentence about a possible situation, the simple present is usually used in the if clause.

If you quit smoking, you'll feel better.

Sometimes, however, the future with will is used in the if clause – especially if there is an offer in the consequence clause.

If you'll quit smoking, I'll buy you a new car. If you'll buy me a car, I'll quit smoking.

I DON'T LIKE WORKING ON WEEKENDS!

KEY VOCABULARY

Nouns Jobs / Occupations accountant architect bookkeeper doctor executive flight attendant journalist lawyer marine biologist model novelist nurse songwriter stockbroker teacher waiter

writer

Other bookstore boss co-worker deadline decision diploma driver's license experience math meeting mistake sales semester stuff team

Personality traits bad-tempered creative critical disorganized efficient forgetful generous hard-working impatient level-headed moody patient punctual reliable shv strict unfriendly

Adjectives

Other retail Verbs

be interested (in)
commute
file
make (a decision/a mistake)
meet (a deadline)

organize solve stand

Prepositions during (the week) from (nine to five) in (sales) on (weekends)

Interjections Let's see. Mmm.

EXPRESSIONS

Expressing and agreeing with feelings and opinions

I like/hate enjoy So do I.
I'm interested in/
I'm good at So am I.
I'm not good at Neither am I.
I don't mind ... Neither de I.
I can't stand ... Neither can I.

Expressing and disagreeing with feelings and opinions! like/enjoy....

Oh, I don't.

I hate
Really? I like
I'm interested in/
I'm good at
Gee, I'm not.
I'm not good at
I am!

I can't stand . . .

Talking about possible occupations

I'd make a good/bad ... because ...
I'm ... and I like/don't like ...
I wouldn't want to be a/an ...
because I'm too ...
I could (never) be a/an ...
because I'm not good at ...
I wouldn't mind working as a/an ...
because I really like ...

GRAMMAR EXTENSION Verbs followed by either a gerund or an infinitive

Oh, I don't mind.

You can use either a gerund (verb + -ing) or an infinitive (to + verb) after these verbs - without changing the meaning of the sentence:

continue

begin/start

like love hate can't stand

I like commuting/to commute to work. I love meeting/to meet new people.

I hate writing/to write reports.

I can't stand sitting/to sit in meetings.

I've begun/started looking for/to look for a new job.

We continue having/to have problems with our boss.

IT'S REALLY WORTH SEEING!

KEY VOCABULARY

Nouns Currencies. baht dollar peso pound ven

Other advance album (cartoon) character cheese crown electronics elevator engineering film

hair salon

harbor industry light bulb mining monument novel opera painting phonograph prime minister prince product

radium religion sculptor stair state statue step

tomb tourism travel agent visitor wheat wife

which Adjectives agricultural

Pronoun

both digital federal incredible religious

Verbs accept approach build compose design develop direct discover get to govern invent locate

make up manufacture perform produce record

sightsee speak welcome

Adverbs a great deal (of) around inside

Prepositions on (the left/the right) since (1886) to (the top)

Interjection of course

EXPRESSIONS

Expressing amazement Wowl Incredible, isn't it?

Describing works of art, inventions, and discoveries

was built/composed/created/ designed/directed/painted/ recorded/written by was developed/discovered/ invented/produced by....

Asking about a country

Where is . . . located? What languages are spoken in . . .? What currency is used in . . . ? Is English spoken (much) there? Are credit cards accepted there?

Responding to difficult questions I'm not sure. Isn't it . . . ?

I think . . . , but I'm not sure. I really have no idea. How would I know?

Expressing confusion

Huh? What? Where?

GRAMMAR EXTENSION Subject-verb agreement in passive sentences

With expressions of quantity with of

The form of be - singular or plural - is determined by the noun or pronoun that follows of.

A lot of coffee is grown in Brazil. A great deal of it is sent to other countries.

A lot of agricultural products are grown in Brazil.

Some of them are sold at local markets.

With singular nouns ending in -s

The singular form of be is used.

The Philippines is made up of more than 7,000 islands. The news that's printed in many

papers is incredible. Mathematics is taught to very young children.

With plural nouns not ending in -s

The plural form of be is used.

The police were called after the accident.

People are often helped by their neighbors.

IS IT'S BEEN A LONG TIME!

KEY VOCABULARY

Nouns

Human ages adolescent (young) adult baby boy elderly person girl infant

middle-aged person teenager

Otherarm audition break customer drama school exercise ſat graduate school grandfather grandmother grandparent journalism power seafood suburbs tutor

Adjectives

lucky tiny

Verbs break enter finish get into go out ice-skate offer ring run out (of)

save up

Adverbs

almost full time last luckily out of

Prepositions

as (a waitress) between (the ages of 1 and 12) for (the last six months) in (ages) within (a few weeks)

Conjunction

while

EXPRESSIONS

Greeting someone after a long time

I haven't seen you in ages. Has it been . . . since I last saw you?

Talking about past events

I was . . . , but I never I was . . . , when I While I was . . . ,

Exchanging personal information

Have you been doing anything exciting recently?

Yes, I have./No, I haven't. What have you been doing lately/ these days?

I've been . . , , How long have you been doing that?

For . . . How have you been?

Great!

Expressing interest and surprise

Wow, what a lucky break! Wow! That's incredible! Wow! Tell me more. Oh, really? That's interesting. Really? I didn't know that! Oh, I see. Gee, I had no idea.

Asking for a reason How come?

GRAMMAR EXTENSION during and while

during + noun Someone called during dinner. while + subject + verb Someone called while we were having dinner.

A TERRIFIC BOOK, BUT A TERRIBLE MOVIE!

KEY VOCABULARY

Nouns Movies action movie comedy horror movie musical mystery nature film romance western

Other actor alien composer critic detective show director event guy law firm planet rating review scene script

secret agent song special effect star studio video

Adjectives absurd amazing another bizarre brave corrupt disgusting dreadful dumb fabulous fascinating frightening horrible marvelous main hbo

outstanding ridiculous

silly stupid surprising unusual weird wonderful

Verbs amaze bore end fascinate chase (after) put down star surprise take place

Adverbs again kind of

Preposition of (all time)

EXPRESSIONS

Giving opinions about movies, books, and people

I'm interested in . . . Now that sounds good.

I thought . . . was an exciting book. I'm fascinated by I think . . . is a very interesting actor.

I find . . . fascinating.

Describing movies, books, and people

It's the movie which/that . . . It was a great book which/that It's about a man/woman who/that He's/She's ... that

Reminding someone

You know

GRAMMAR EXTENSION Prepositions used with past participles

Some past participles used as adjectives can be followed by a preposition + noun/gerund. Here are some examples:

amazed at bored with/by confused by embarrassed by

disappointed by/in/with disgusted with/by fascinated with/by frightened of/at

interested in scared of surprised at/by tired of

People are often amazed at the special effects in movies these days. I was very disappointed in Tom Cruise's last movie; I was surprised at how silly it was We're tired of seeing the same actors over and over.

SO THAT'S WHAT IT MEANS!

KEY VOCABULARY

Nouns

bridge cloud falsehood gesture

gift shop hard hat head lane

lining mountain museum path

peace penny poison proverb road sign seat belt

silver stitch truth

> Adjectives angry annoyed/annoying

careful confused/confusing crazy

embarrassing false perfect recyclable scared

embarrassed/

shocked/shocking tired true

Verbs Modals can could

have (got) to may might must

Other agree (with) burn

fasten go away hatch litter notice

earn

pass remove seem state touch turn wait win

wonder

Adverbs not exactly perhaps slow

Prepositions from (side to side) in (time)

off (the path) on (one side/the other)

EXPRESSIONS

Hypothesizing

It might/may mean it could mean . . . Maybe/Perhaps it means

Making a logical assumption

That must mean . . . That probably means

Expressing permission

You can. You're allowed to Expressing prohibition

You can't ...

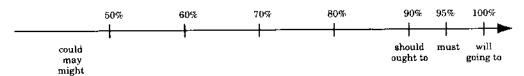
You're not allowed to

Expressing obligation

You have to You've got to

Disagreeing I don't think so.

GRAMMAR EXTENSION Modals to express different degrees of certainty



I wonder where this road goes.

It could/may/might go = The speaker has no information and is only guessing.

It should/ought to go . . . = The speaker has some information.

It must go . . . = The speaker is almost sure.

It will go . . . = The speaker is sure.

WHAT WOULD YOU DO?

KEY VOCABULARY

Nouns aunt burglar caller casino

cigarette lighter classmate comb counselor

drinking problem exam father-in-law girlfriend houseguest jail jewelry

luck note opportunity owner parking lot radio talk show

lottery

regret salesclerk set (of keys) way Pronouns anybody someone

Adjectives bad else honest messy valuable

Verbs Modals could might would

Other admit borrow cheat come back deny disagree dishike divorce double fight get rid of give back invest lie lock (out) marry refuse

refuse shoplift steal swim thank warn

Adverbs overseas straight

Prepositions by (mistake) for (myself) on (a test/the street)

Conjunction

EXPRESSIONS

Describing imaginary situations and consequences in the present

What would you do if . . . ?

If I . . . , I'd/I wouldn't/I might/I could

Talking about imaginary or hypothetical actions in the pust

What would you have done?
I would have

I wouldn't have done anything. What should I have done?

You should have You shouldn't have Emphatically saying no No way!

Saying someone is right Hmm. You've got a point there.

Expressing gladness/relief Thank goodness!

GRAMMAR EXTENSION Past modals

Use could have or might have + past participle to say there was an opportunity for something to have happened although it didn't happen.

You could have/might have waited a little longer. = You had the chance and it was possible to wait a little longer – but you didn't wait.

KEY VOCABULARY

Nouns

anger
answering machine
apology
appointment
baseball bat
bathing suit
belly dancing

CD complaint compliment concern congratulations criticism excuse flu

flu hairdresser invitation joke lie message

psychic

reason roommate soda sympathy truth wrestling match

Verbs bring express

express fly (in) have (the flu) let (in)

make (a date/plans) pick up (someone) promise

wait for

Adverb

out of (town)

EXPRESSIONS

Exchanging personal information

How are things?

Just fine, thanks.
What's up?

Well, 1....

Talking on the phone

Hi, . . . This is Oh, hi.

Reporting requests

... asked/told me to

... said to ...

. . . asked/told me not to

... said not to

Reported statements

... said (that) ...

... told me (that)

Expressing regret

That's too bad.
I'm really sorry.
I'm sorry, too.

Saying you remember

Oh, that's right!

GRAMMAR EXTENSION Reported speech

It is not always necessary to change the verb in reported speech:

 if you're reporting something that you feel is still true:

Mark said, "I need a vacation." = Mark said he needs (or needed) a vacation. if you're reporting something soon after it was said:

Dr. Jones just said, "I'm ready for my next appointment."
Dr. Jones said she is (or was) ready for her next appointment.

• if the verb is in the simple past:

Don said, "I made a date with Jill." ± Don said he made (or had made) a date with Jill.

COUNTRIES AND NATIONALITIES

This is a partial list of countries, many of which are presented in this book.

Argentina Argentine Australia Australian Austria Austrian Brazil Brazilian Bolivia Bolivian Canada Canadian Chile Chilean China Chinese Colombia Colombian Costa Rica Costa Rican Ecuador Ecuadorian Egypt Egyptian England English France French

Germany German Greece Greek Hungary Hungarian India Indian Indonesia Indonesian Ireland Irish Italy Italian Japan Japanese Korea Korean Lebanon Lebanese Malaysia Malaysian Mexico Mexican

Morocco Moroccan

New Zealand New Zealander

Thailand Turkey the United Kingdom British the United States Uruguay Uruguayan

the Philippines Filipino

Poland

Singapore Singaporean Spain Spanish Switzerland Swiss Thai Turkish Peru Peruvian American

Polish

Russia Russian

NUMBERS

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
zero	one	two	three	four	five	six	seven	eight
9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17
nine	ten	eleven	twelve	thirteen	fourteen	fifteen	sixteen	seventeen
18	19	20	21	22	30	40	50	60
eighteen	nineteen	twenty	twenty-one	twenty-two	thirty	forty	lifty	sixty
70 seventy	80 eighty	90 ninety	one h	100 undred (a hun	dred)	one th	1,000 ousand (a th	iousand)

COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE ADJECTIVES

1. Adjective with .er and .est

	CDITC MILLE	e, ama	rat	
big	dirty	high	old	tall
busy	dry	hot	pretty	ugly
cheap	easy	large	quiet	warm
clean	fast	light	safe	wet
close	friendly	long	scary	young
cold	funny	mild	short	. 0
cool	great	new	slow	
deep	heavy	nice	small	

2. Adjectives with man

3. Irregular adjectives good → better → best bad → worse → the worst

PRONUNCIATION OF REGULAR PAST FORMS

with /d/ studied stayed with /t/ worked watched with /td/ invited visited

IRREGULAR VERBS

Present	Past	Participle
(be) am/is, are	was, were	been
become	became	become
break	broke	broken
bring	brought	brought
build	built	built
buy	bought	bought
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
eut	cut	cut
do	did	done
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feel	felt	feit
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
fly	flew	flown
forget	forgot	forgotter
get	got	gotten
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
grow	grew	grown
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
hold	held	held
keep	kept	kept
lend	lent	lent
lose	lost	iost

Past Present made make met meet pay рut quit read ride ring run say see sell send set sit sleep speak spend stand steal swim take teach tell think wear win write

paid paid put put quit quit read read rode ridden rang rung ran run said said saw seen sold sold sent sent set set sat sat slept slept spoke spoken spent spent stood stood stolen stole swum swam took taken taught taught told told thought thought wore worn won won wrote written

Participle

made

met

ANSWER KEY Unit 11, Exercise 10, page 70

- 1. in South America
- 2. English, Malay, Chinese, and Tamil
- 3. Canada, China, France, India, Russia, U.S.
- 4. Burma, India, Kenya, Malaysia, Nigeria, Pakistan, the Philippines, Singapore, Sri Lanka, Sudan, Tanzania, among other countries
- Belgium, Canada, France, Haiti, Luxembourg, Morocco, Senegal, Switzerland, Tunisia, among other countries
- Australia, Canada, Denmark, Italy, Great Britain, Japan, Malaysia, the Netherlands, Norway, Portugal, Spain, Sweden, among other countries

Jack C. Richards
with Jonathan Hull and Susan Proctor

ckboc

ANSWER KEY Unit 11, Exercise 10, 61 CF 10



A time to remember

Một thời để nhớ

1 Past tense

Thì quá khứ

A Write the past tense of these verbs.

Verb	Past tense	Verb	Past tense
be	was/were	laugh	
iose		become	
scream		move	
get		open	
write		have	
hide		do	

B Complete this paragraph. Use the past tense of each of the verbs in part A.

My best friend in school <u>was</u> Migue!.
He and I in Mrs. Gilbert's third grade
class, and we friends then.
We often crazy things in class, but I don't
think Mrs. Gilbert ever really mad at us.
For example, Miguel a pet rat named
Curly. Sometimes he it in Mrs. Gilbert's
desk. Later, when she the
drawer, she always loudly
and the class After two
years, Miguel's family to another town.
Weletters to each other for a
few years, but then we contact.
I often wonder what
he's doing now.

Complete the questions in this conversation.

Hoàn chỉnh các câu hỏi trong bài đàm thoại sau

Mary:	Are	you	from	around	here?
-------	-----	-----	------	--------	-------

Sílvio: No, I'm from Brazil.

Mary: Oh, really? Were you born in Brazil?

Sílvio: No, I wasn't born there, actually. I'm originally from Portugal.

Mary: That's interesting. So, when

to Brazil?

Sílvio: I moved to Brazil when I was in elementary school.

My parents immigrated there.

Mary: ______ in Brazil?

Sílvio: Yes, I grew up in Brazil.

Mary: Where _____

Sílvio: We lived in Recife. It's a beautiful city in northeast Brazil. Then I went to college.

Mary: ______ to school in Recife?

Sílvio: No, I went to school in São Paolo.

Mary: And when ______ to

the United States?

Sílvio: I came here last week. I'm Sílvio Mendes.

It's nice to meet you.

Mary: Nice to meet you, too. I'm Mary Burns.



Answer these questions.

Trả lời các câu hỏi sau

DISHES

- 1. Where were you born?
- 2. Did you grow up there?
- 3. Did you move when you were a child?
- 4. When did you begin to learn English?
- 5. Did you have pets when you were young?
- 6. What hobbies did you have when you were a kid?

4 John Travolta John Travolta

- A Do you know the actor John Travolta? What do you know about him?
- B Read about John Travolta.



ohn Travolta was born in 1954 in Englewood, New Jersey. He was the youngest of six children. He wanted to become an actor. In 1975, he played in a TV program called

Welcome Back Kotter about a high school teacher and his students. The program was very popular and Travolta became famous. Then he started making movies and started in several successful films. They included Saturday Night Fever and Grease. Audiences liked his acting and dancing.

In 1977, things suddenly went wrong. His mother and his girlfriend died. Travolta said it was the worst time of his life. He made several unsuccessful films,

John Travolta

and thought about giving up as an actor. He is a pilot and has three planes, so he considered becoming a full-time pilot.

But then, when he was working on a movie called *The Experts* in 1987, he met Kelly Preston. The film didn't do well, but John and Kelly fell in love. They got married and they now have a son. They named him Jett because Travolta loves jet planes. Before Jett was born, John and Kelly used to work or go out on weekends, but they prefer to stay home now. The only problem is deciding which home. They have four homes – in California, Florida, Maine, and Hawaii.

In the mid-nineties, John Travolta's luck as an actor changed for the better. He made some very popular films, including *Pulp Fiction, Get Shorty*, and *Mad City*. For the second time in his career, he became successful.

Check (✓) True or False. For statements that are false, write the true information.

	True	False
Audiences liked John Travolta in the movie Saturday Night Fever.		
Both his acting and dancing were very popular.		
3. All his films have been successful.		
4. He worked as a full-time pilot.		
5. John and Kelly work or go out on weekends.		
6. They have four planes and three homes.		

5	Choose the correct we	ords or phrases. Chọn các từ hoặc cụm từ thích hợp
	1. I used to collect	shells (hobbies/scrapbooks/shells) when
	I was a kid.	(hobbles/scrapbooks/shells) when wood gov of the
	2. My favorite pet was a	(cat/comic/kid) called Felix.
	3. We used to go to	(an attic/camp/school) during
	summer vacations. It	(an attic/camp/school) during
	4. Our neighbors had a	was really full.
	in their backyard. We	reat (painting/summer camp/tree house)
		oos thauori bas severloved and state
6		Mary in 1944 in policy and has three
alled	Complete the sentence	d pictures of Kate and her brother Peter. es using a form of used to.
	Xem các tranh sau vê	thời thơ ấu của Kate và em trai Peter của cô.
	Hoàn chỉnh các câu	dùng một dạng của used to
		TV program called him Jett because
	A Valence	Wekenne Back Kotter about a high school reacher and was born, John a
		1. In the summer, Kate and Peter sometimes
		used to play in their tree house
	The state of the s	
		2. They also and the was the worst old by with the worst old by was the
	A STATE OF THE PARTY OF THE PAR	Their dog Bruno always used to follow them.
		and dog Bruno always used to follow them.
	the true information.	
		3. And every year they
		Audiences liked John Travolfa in the movie Saturday Hight Faver.
	v	
	To Figure	
		4. Winters were very different. Peter
		A. He worked as a full-time pilot.
	E	
		5. John and Kelly work or go out on weekends.
(5. Kate and Peter bothannot send books and send pendig not send year. &
		6. They have nout protest out where someon
	The state of the s	

7 Look at the answers. Write the questions using a form of used to.

X	em	các câu trá lời. Việt các câ	u hội dùng một dạng của used to	
1.	A:	What did you use to do in	the summer?	d n
	B:	We used to go to the beach.		

- A:
 B: No, we didn't collect shells. We used to build sand castles.
 - B: Yes, we did. We used to go swimming for hours. Then we played all kinds of sports.
- 4. A: Really? What

 B: Well, we used to play beach volleyball with some other kids.
- 5. A:

 B: No, we didn't. We used to win!



How have you changed in the last five years? Write answers to these questions. Bạn đã thay đổi như thế nào trong năm năm qua? Viết các câu trả lời cho các câu hỏi sau

1. What hobbies did you use to	have five years ago: what hob	bles do you
have now?		
I used to		About 16,
Now		About 16 years ago.

- 2. What kind of music did you use to like then? Who were your favorite singers? What kind of music do you like now?
- 3. What kind of clothes did you use to like to wear? What kind of clothes you add you are do you like to wear now?

9 Complete the sentences. Use the past tense of the verbs given. Hoàn chỉnh các câu. Dùng thì quá khứ của các động từ được cho sẵn

 I
 was
 (be) born in Chile

 and
 (grow up) there.

 I
 (come) here in 1995.

 I
 (not be) very happy at

Maria: I'm an immigrant here.

	hrst. Things (be) difficult
	for me. I (not speak)
	English, so I (go) to a
	community college and (study)
	English there. My English(get)
	better and I (find)
	this job. What about you?
Ш	Choose the correct responses. Chọn câu đáp thích hợp
	1. A: Are you from Toronto?
	B: Well, no. I'm originally from Morocco.
	 Well, no. I'm originally from Morocco. Neither am I.
	2. A: Tell me a little about yourself.
	B:
	Sure. Nice to meet you.
	■ What do you want to know?
	3. A: How old were you when you moved here?
	B:
	About 16.About 16 years ago.
	4. A: Did you learn English here?
	B:
	No, I studied it in Morocco.
	5. A: By the way, I'm Lisa.
	B: What's your name?
	■ Glad to meet you.



Caught in the rush

Giữa dòng xe cộ

Choose the correct name for each picture. Chon tên thích hợp cho mỗi hình

☐ bus stop ☐ taxi stand

☐ bicycle lane ☐ street lights

news stand ☐ traffic jam

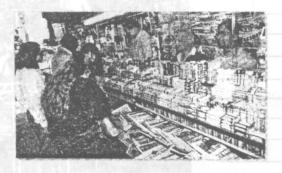




street lights









Problems, problems Vấn đề, vấn đề

Choose a solution for each problem.	
Problems 1. no places to take children: build more parks 2. dark streets: 3. no parking spaces: 4. crime: 5. car accidents: 6. traffic jams:	Solutions install modern street lights build a subway line install more traffic lights hire more police officers build more parks build a public parking garage
B Look at these solutions. Write sentences explaining to Use too much, too many, or not enough and the problems	the problems. s in part A.
There aren't enough places to take children. The city should build more parks. 2.	
The city should hire more police officers. 3. The city should install modern street lights.	
4 The city should build a subway line.	
The city should install more traffic lights. 6. ——————————————————————————————————	
The city should build a public parking garage. C Find another way to say the problems in part B. Beg	in each
sentence with There should be more/less/fewer	an outil
 There should be more places to take children. 	
3.	4_
4.	
	图 200 17 1 18 1

3	City blues	Nỗi buồn đô thị
---	------------	-----------------

Α.	Match the	words in	columns A	and B.	Write	the compoun	d nouns.
----	-----------	----------	-----------	--------	-------	-------------	----------

A		В	
Ø	subway	☐ district	1. subway lines
	business	☑ lines	2
	parking	system	3
	air	☐ officers	4
	police	pollution	5
	train	garages	6
B (Dear Edi	tor,	ewspaper, using the compound nouns in part A.
		_	ds to be improved. For one thing, there are too
	-		e is too much smog, especially at rush hour. The
		•	is terrible. This problem is particularly bad
	downtow	m in the	. Too many people drive their
	cars to v	vork.	
	So wha	at should we	do about it? I think there should be more
			_ at busy intersections. They could stop traffic jams.
	We also	need fewer _	downtown. The city spends
	too muci	h money buil	ding them. It's easy to park, so too many people
	drive to	work. On the	e other hand, the city doesn't spend enough on public
	transpor	rtation. There	e aren't enough, and the
			needs a lot of improvement.
			a city you know. Write about the problem in solutions in the second paragraph.

Transportation in Hong Kong

Giao thông ở Hồng Kông

A How many kinds of public transportation do you have in your city?

Does your city have any of the types in these pictures?









B Read about transportation in Hong Kong. Match the photos in part A to the descriptions.

ong Kong has an excellent transportation system, both old and new. If you fly there, you will arrive at one of the most modern airports in the world. And during your visit, there are many ways to get around Hong Kong.

1.

This word comes from the Japanese jinrikisha.

It is a two-wheeled vehicle that is pulled by one person. Today, there are still about fifty of them in Hong Kong, but they are only for tourists.

2.

Take one of these to cross from Hong Kong Island to Kowloon or to visit one of the smaller islands. You can also use them to travel to Macau and Guangdong. They are safe and comfortable, and one of the cheapest boat rides in the world.

3.

Hong Kong's underground railway is called the MTR – the Mass Transit Railway. It is the fastest way to get around. Two tunnels cross under the harbor and go from Hong Kong Island to Kowloon.

4.

These are found on Hong Kong Island and take you to the top of Victoria Peak – 548 meters (1,800 feet) above sea level. The system is over a hundred years old. In that time, there has never been an accident. Two cars carry up to 120 passengers each.

C Which kind of transportation would you prefer to use? Why?

Complete these conversations. Use words from the list. Hoàn chỉnh các bài đàm thoại sau, dùng các từ từ bảng kê bus station ash machine ☐ schedule duty-free shop ☐ sign 1. A: Could you tell me where I can buy some perfume? B: You should try the duty-free shop 2. A: Can you tell me where the buses are? B: Yeah, there's a _____ just outside this building. 3. A: Oh, no. I don't have enough money. B: There's a _____ right over there. 4. A: Do you know what time the last bus leaves for downtown? B: No, but I can check the _____ for you. 5. A: Could you tell me where the taxi stand is? B: Sure. Just follow that ______ Complete the questions in this conversation at a hotel. Hoàn chỉnh các câu hỏi trong bài đàm thoại sau ở khách san Rob: Could you tell me where the gym is 2 Clerk: Sure, the gym is on the nineteenth floor. Rob: OK. And can you ______? Clerk: Yes, the coffee shop is next to the gift shop. Rob: The gift shop? Hmm. I need to buy something for my wife. Do you ______ ? Clerk: It closes at six o'clock. I'm sorry, but you'll have to wait until tomorrow. It's already six fifteen. Rob: OK. Oh, I'm expecting a fax to arrive for me. Could you _____ Clerk: Don't worry. I'll call you when it arrives. Rob: Thanks. Just one more thing. Do you — Clerk: The airport bus leaves every half hour. Anything else?

Rob: No, I don't think so. Thanks.

Rewrite these sentences. Find another way to say each sentence using the words given.

Viết lại các câu sau. Tìm cách khác để nói mỗi câu, dùng các từ được cho sẵn

- 1. There are too many cars in this city. (fewer)

 There should be fewer cars in this city.
- 2. We need fewer buses and cars downtown. (traffic)
- 3. Where's the subway entrance? (Could you)
- 4. There isn't enough public parking. (parking lots)
- 5. How often does the bus come? (Do you)
- 6. What time does the last train leave? (Can you)
- 8

Answer these questions about your city or a city you know.

Trả lời các câu hỏi sau về thành phố của ban hoặc một thành phố ban biết



The streets are closed to cars in a traffic-free zone.

- 1. Are there any traffic-free zones? Where are they located?
- 2. How do most people travel to and from work?
- 3. What's rush hour like?
- 4. What's the city's biggest problem?
- 5. What has the city done about it?
- 6. Is there anything else the city could do? and llad grave savas and and progris s

Time for a change!

Đến lúc phải thay đổi

	dark expensive inconvenient noisy	□ old □ safe □ small □ spacious					bải
1. c c	onvenient/ <u>inconv</u>	renient		~			
2. ст	ramped/						
3. d	angerous/	<u> </u>					
4. h	uge/		8.	reasonab	le/		
ene		à các từ từ phần A				###	### L
2. T	ough hoặc too v The house is too e The house isn't re The rooms aren't	xpensive. easonable enough		nily.			
2. T -3. T	ough hoặc too v The house is too e The house isn't re The rooms aren't	xpensive. easonable enough. light enough. en't spacious enough		nily.			
2. T 3. T 4. T	ough hoặc too vi The house is too e The house isn't re The rooms aren't The living room is The bathroom is t	xpensive. easonable enough. light enough. en't spacious enough	or the far	nily.	TTS A BAA	GAINT	FOR SALL
end 1. T 2. T 3. T 4. T 5. T	ough hoặc too vi The house is too e The house isn't re The rooms aren't The living room is The bathroom is t	xpensive. casonable enough. light enough. on't spacious enough? oo old. enough for the child	or the far	nily.	ITS A BAR	GAIN	FOR SALL
end 1. T 2. T 3. T 4. T 5. T 6. T	ough hoặc too view he house is too e The house is n't re The rooms aren't The living room is The bathroom is t The yard isn't big	xpensive. casonable enough. light enough. on't spacious enough? oo old. enough for the child	or the far	nily.	TT S A BRAT	GAINT	FOR SHE

Add the word enough to these sentences.

Thêm từ enough vào các câu sau

Grammar note: enough

Enough comes after adjectives but before nouns.

adjective + enough

enough + noun

It isn't spacious enough.

The rooms aren't light enough.

There isn't enough space. It was to sell a strange and straw it doesn't have enough light.

The apartment isn't comfortable

- 1. The apartment isn't comfortable.
- 2. There aren't bedrooms.
- 3. It's not modern.
- 4. There aren't parking spaces.

- 5. The neighborhood doesn't have street lights.
- 6. There aren't closets.
- 7. It's not private.
- 8. The living room isn't spacious.

Complete this conversation. Use the words given and the comparisons in the box. (Some of the comparisons in the box can be used more than once.)

Hoàn chỉnh bài đàm thoại sau dùng các từ cho sẵn và các dạng so sánh trong khung (một số các dạng so sánh trong khung có thể được dùng hơn một lần)

just as many ... as many ... as almost as ... as not as ... as

Realtor: How did you like the house on Twelfth Street?

Lou: Well, it's <u>not as convenient as</u> the apartment

on Main Street. (convenient)

the apartment. (cramped)

Realtor: Yes, the house is more spacious.

in the apartment. (closets)

Lou: I think there are _____

Realtor: You're right. The closet space is the same.

Lou: The wallpaper in the apartment is

in the house. (shabby)

Realtor: I know, but you could change the wallpaper in the house.

Lou: Mmm, the rent on the apartment is

____ the house, but the

house is much bigger. (expensive) Oh, I can't decide.

Can you show me something else?



Nhà, nhà yêu dấu

A Complete this questionnaire about where you live and find your score below to whom where you live and find your score below to whom the property of the complete this questionnaire about where you live and find your score below to whom the property of the complete this questionnaire about where you live and find your score below to whom the property of the proper

 Are you close enough to shopping? Is there enough public transportation nearby? Are the sidewalks clean? Are there good restaurants in the neighborhood? Is there a park nearby? Is the neighborhood quiet? 	Yes No	To score: How many "Yes" answers do you have?
7. Is the neighborhood safe?8. Is there enough parking nearby?9. Is the building in good condition?		16-20 It sounds like a dream home!
The inside 0. Are there enough bedrooms? 1. Is there enough closet space? 2. Is the bathroom modern? 3. Is there a washing machine? 4. Is there enough space in the kitchen? 5. Do the stove and refrigerator work well? 6. Is the living room comfortable enough? 7. Is the dining area big enough? 8. Are the walls newly painted? 9. Are the rooms bright enough? 20. Is the building warm enough in winter?	Yes No	11-15 Great! All you need now is a swimming pool 6-10 Well, at least houseguests won't war to stay too long! 0-5 Time to look for a bette place to live!

Kết họp từ

A W	Thich words or	phrases often go w	with which verbs?	Complete the chart.	
-----	----------------	--------------------	-------------------	---------------------	--

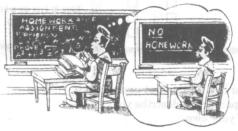
☐ my job my appearance ☐ happier no homework more free time d healthier somewhere else to a new place

change have move healthier

B Describe what these people would like to change. Use I wish and words or phrases from part A.



1. I wish I were healthier.











7 Wish list

Bảng mong ước

A Find six things Dan would like to change in his life. Write sentences with *He wishes*.

Land to miss the many Many land 1 to the	
I used to enjoy life more. Nowadays, I just go to work in the morning and come home in the evening. I don't enjoy my job anymore,	
but I must say the money is good. I don't go out as often as I used to. I used to go to the	
movies once a week. Now I go to the movies only once a month. And I used to visit my frien	
the time. Now I never see them. My weekends are really boring, too. I spend my time cleaning	
house and watching TV. Why don't I go out more often? I guess I just got lazy. Perhaps	•
should buy a car. Yeah, I've saved a lot of money. I'll go buy	
a new car right now!	
THE REAL PROPERTY OF THE PARTY	
	[7]
	Z,
	w 2 ³¹
	1
POTATO	
CMPS	
Torm.	>
1. He wishes he enjoyed his job	
1. He wishes he enjoyed his job.	
2	
3	
4.	
5	
6.	
0	
B Write a wish list. Put your wishes in order of importance (1 = very important;	
5 = not very important).	
1	
2	
3	
4	
5	

Choose the correct responses.

Chọn các câu đáp thích hợp

1. A: I wish I could change my lifestyle. .

B: Why?

- Why?
- I don't like my job, either.
- 2. A: I wish I could retire.

B:

- I don't like it anymore.
- I know what you mean.
- 3. A: Where do you want to move?

B: __

- Somewhere else.
- Something else.
- 4. A: I wish I could find a bigger apartment.

B:

- Is it too large?
- I like it, though.



Rewrite these sentences. Find another way to say each sentence using the words given.

Viết lại các câu sau. Tìm cách khác để nói mỗi câu, dùng các từ được cho sắn

1. There should be more bedrooms. (enough)

There aren't enough bedrooms.

- 2. The neighborhood is safe enough. (dangerous)
- 3. My apartment doesn't have enough privacy. (private)
- 4. Our house has the same number of bedrooms as yours. (just as many)
- 5. I don't have enough closet space. (wish)
- 6. We wish we could move to a new place. (somewhere else)
- 7. The apartment is too small. (big)
- 8. I wish this exercise were easy. (not difficult)



I've never heard of that!

Tôi chưa bao giờ nghe nói đến điều đó!

Compl	ete this conversation with the correct tense.	Hoàn chỉnh bài đàm thoại sau
Isabel:	I went to Sunrise Beach last week.	bằng thì thích hợp
	Have you ever been to Sunrise Beach,	Andy?
	(Did you ever go/Have you ever been)	indy.
Andy:	Yes, (I did/I have) It's beautiful.	
	(Did you go/Have you gone) there on the weekend?	
Isahal.	Yeah, I I	
isabei.	(did/have) (went/have gone)	
	on Sunday.	
	(I got up/I've gotten up)	
	at 4:00 A.M.	
Andy:	Wow!	
	(I never woke up/I've never woken up)	
	that early!	
Isabel:	Oh, it wasn't so bad. I	The second secon
	(got/have gotten)	The second secon
	to the beach early to see the sun rise.	
	а	
	(Did you ever see/Have you ever seen)	Suntile Commonwe
	sunrise, Andy? (1 see and T.8 risq use stold	LOS OF THE STATE O
Andy:	No, I prefer sunsets to sunrises.	
	(I didn't/I haven't)	Save you ever had go
Isabel:	Really? Then I swimming (went/have gone)	
	around 6:00, but there were some strange dark shadow	_
	in the water(Did you ever hear/Have you ever heard)	of sharks at Sunrise Beach?
Andy:	Yes, a news re	mort about abarks last summer
	(I did/I have) (heard/have heard)	sport about sharks last summer.
Isabel:	Gee! Maybe I a lucky escape on S (had/have had)	unday morning! Why don't you
	come with me next time?	
Andy:	Are you kidding?	

Have you ever . . . ? Ban đã từng...?

A Look at this list and check (✓) five things you have done. Add your own ideas if necessary.



3.25	PRITING 1
J. 1	at raw fish
	have green tea ice cream
	☐ try Indian food
	cook for over ten people
	go horseback riding
	read a novel in English
	go to a rock concert
	☐ travel abroad
	☐ take a cruise
	☐ ride a motorcycle
	Day Tour State of the Control of the
	00.3-1
	(I mever woke up/I've ne n

- B Write questions about the things you checked in part A. Use Have you ever . . . ?
- 1. Have you ever had green tea ice cream?

- C Answer the questions you wrote in part B. Then use the past tense to give more information.
- 1. Yes, I have. I had some in a Japanese restaurant. It was delicious.
- 2. The proper proofs and 100 % houses
- sabel: Geel Mayhe I ________. 4 a lucky escape on Sunday merning! Why dor. 4 on

Do I have a food allergy? Tôi có di ứng với một loại thức ăn nào không?

A If a kind of food always makes you feel sick in some way, it may mean you have a food allergy. Do you have any food allergies? If so, what shouldn't you eat? What happens if you eat it?

B Read about these people with food allergies.





Luis always had headaches and stomachaches. First, Luis's doctor gave him some medicine, but it didn't work. Then his doctor asked him about his favorite foods. Luis said he loved cakes and ice cream. His doctor said, "Stop eating sweets." Luis stopped, but he still got headaches and stomachaches. Next, his doctor asked more questions about his diet. Luis said he ate a lot of fish. His doctor said to stop eating fish. When Luis stopped eating fish, he felt much better.

Sharon often had a very sore mouth after eating. First, she stopped drinking milk and eating cheese, but this made no difference. Then, in the summer, the problem became really bad, and it was difficult for Sharon to eat. Her doctor asked about her diet. She said she had a tomato garden, and she ate about ten tomatoes a day. Sharon's doctor told her not to eat tomatoes. When she stopped eating tomatoes. Sharon's mouth got better.





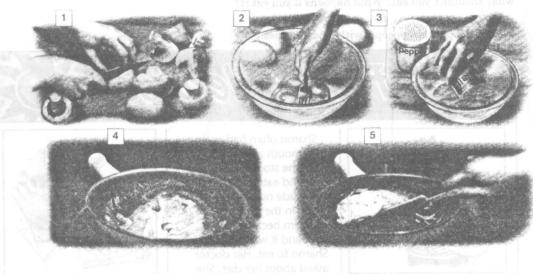
Fred is a mechanic, but he was not able to hold his tools. His hands were swollen. First, he went to his doctor, and she gave him some medicine. The medicine didn't work. He still couldn't hold his tools. After that, his doctor asked him about his diet. Fred told her he ate a lot of bread. She told him not to eat bread or pasta. After ten days, Fred could hold his tools again.

C Complete the chart.

Pi	roblem	What didn't work	What worked
uis			
sharon			\ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \
red			

Eggs, anyone? Có ai dùng trứng không?

A Here's a recipe for a mushroom omelet. Look at the pictures and and a book to bank a H. A number the sentences from 1 to 5. Table book was even boy of ware



- After that, pour the eggs into a frying pan. Add the mushrooms and cook.
- Then beat the eggs in a bowl.
- First, slice the mushrooms.
- Next, add salt and pepper to the egg mixture.
- Finally, fold the omelet in half. And enjoy! Your omelet is ready!
- B Describe your favorite way to cook eggs. Use sequence adverbs.

him about his diet. Fred		
eat bread or pustar After ten days, Fred could hold his tools again.	M BAR	to petag lish When Luis to ped cating lish, he felt nuch better.
		Complete the chart.

Complete the conversation. Use the past tense or the present perfect of the words given. Hoàn chỉnh bài đàm thoại. Dùng thì quá khứ hoặc hiện tại hoàn thành của các từ được cho sẵn

5



	Sylvia:	1 (go) to	o a Thai restaurant last night.	
	Jason:	Really? I	(not eat) Thai food.	
	Sylvia:	Oh, you should try it. It'	's delicious.	
	Jason:	What sensi leag adia	you (order)?
	Sylvia:	First, I	(have) soup with green curry and	
		rice. Then I	(try) Pad Thai. It's noodles,	
		shrimp, and vegetables	in a spicy sauce.	
	Jason:		(not taste) Pad Thai.	
		it very hot?		
	Sylvia:	No. It	(be) just spicy enough. And after	
		that, I	(eat) bananas in coconut milk	
		for dessert.		
	Jason:	Yum. That sounds good.	eat a huge dinner last night?	
	Sylvia:	It was.		
	E E		a birthday sift to ny	
1000	Choos	se the correct word.	Chọn từ thích hợp	
	1. We	had delicious guacamole	dip and chips on Saturday night. It was a	
			dinner/snack/marinade).	
			(ordered/skipped/tried) dinner.	
	3. Wha	oreakfast. ta	(appetizers/ingredients/skewers) do	
		need to cook crispy fried		
	4. Firs	t, fry the beef in oil and	curry powder and then	
	(por	ur/put/spread) the coconu	at milk over the beef.	
	5. We	need to leave the restaur	rant soon. Could we have the	
	Geviche'		nenu), please?	
			LODE OF THE PROPERTY OF THE PR	

Choose the correct responses. Chọn c	các câu đáp thích hợp
☐ Yuck! That sounds awful. ☐ That so	ounds strange.
A: Have you ever tried barbecued fish? You sauce and garlic for about an hour and t B:	ı marinate the fish in soy then barbecue it.
2. A: Here's a recipe called Baked Eggplant D an hour, but this says you bake the eggr B:	
3. A: Look at this dish – frog's legs with bana a menu before. B:	
Use these verbs to complete the crosswo or the present perfect. Dùng các động từ sau để hoàn chính bảng đ be bring decide driv break buy do eat	lố chữ. Dùng thì quá khứ hoặc hiện tại hoàn
Across 1 We have never to a	'b e e n
Chinese restaurant,	3
3 I all the ingredients with me.7 you eat a huge dinner last night?	
	6 7
8 We my mother to the new Chilean restaurant.	0
	8 10 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 11 11
Chilean restaurant. 11 I haven't a birthday gift to my	6 10
Chilean restaurant. 11 I haven't a birthday gift to my father yet. 12 Have you ever a horse?	12 13 13 14
Chilean restaurant. 11 I haven't a birthday gift to my father yet. 12 Have you ever a horse? It's great! 13 I have never snails. What are	12
Chilean restaurant. 11 I haven't a birthday gift to my father yet. 12 Have you ever a horse? It's great! 13 I have never snails. What are they like? 14 Have you what kind of pizza	5 I wasn't hungry this morning, so I breakfast. 6 Oh, no! I to buy vice. 7 Have you ever a sports car?
Chilean restaurant. 11 I haven't a birthday gift to my father yet. 12 Have you ever a horse? It's great! 13 I have never snails. What are they like? 14 Have you what kind of pizza you would like?	5 I wasn't hungry this morning, so I breakfast. 6 Oh, no! I to buy rice.



Going places of going set not accorded to the contract of the

e chart. Use each wo	rases often go with wh ord or phrase only once	you going to go?	7.47
a camper camping a car my studying a condominium	 ✓ long walks ☐ lots of hiking ☐ my reading ☐ sailing lessons ☐ my homework 	□ some fishing □ something exciting □ swimming □ a vacation □ on vacation	
	aths, How about you?	bayen't been hiking in mo	avely welt
take	rent	ing to $\frac{1}{00}$ anything else, on y	
long walks	. I baye a lot		18
- minimum		do before school starts.	
			ar That doesn
catch up on	do		
——————————————————————————————————————	Lloya to awim		
	I love to awin	Ke hoa ch d u hành	ensty te
D Write four things	aniwa ol svol 1	r next vacation. Use going t	ensty te
D Write four things	s you plan to do on you art A or your own info	r next vacation. Use going to	to and to soo
B Write four things the information in p	you plan to do on you art A or your own info	r next vacation. Use going to remation.	ook et obne o
B Write four things the information in p	you plan to do on you art A or your own info	r next vacation. Use going to	ook et obne o
B Write four things the information in p Vacation plans 1	you plan to do on you art A or your own info	r next vacation. Use going to rmation.	to and /2 Joe
B Write four things the information in p Vacation plans 1	you plan to do on you art A or your own info	r next vacation. Use going to remation.	to and /2 Joe
B Write four things the information in p Vacation plans 1 2 3 4	s you plan to do on you art A or your own info	r next vacation. Use going to react vacation. Sog of parcy use and parce of the solution and the solution a	to and ye soo
B Write four things the information in p Vacation plans 1	s you plan to do on you art A or your own info	r next vacation. Use going to reaction.	to and
Write four things the information in p Vacation plans 1	art A or your own info	r next vacation. Use going to rmation.	to and was a second of the sec

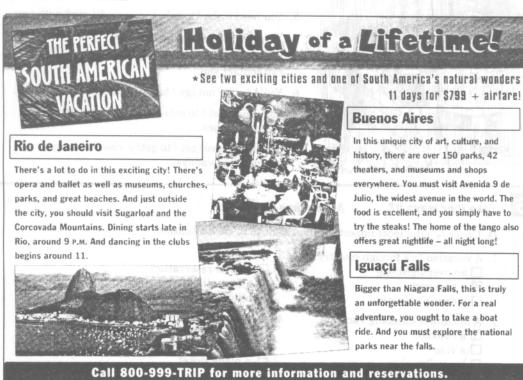
Complete the				
Complete the conversation. Use going to or will and the information on the notepads.				
Hoàn chỉnh bài đàm thoại. Dùng going to hoặc will và thông tin ở các tập ghi				
Dave: So, Stella, do you have any vacation plans?	tin ở các tập ghi			
Stella: Well, I'm going to paint my apartment . The walls	Stella's			
are a really ugly color. What about you? Are you going	paint my apartm			
to do anything special? Dave: and take a long drive.	studying - pr			
Stella: Where are you going to go?	relax on the			
Dave: I'm not sure	relax on the beach			
I haven't seen her in a long time.				
Stella: That sounds nice. I always like to visit my family.	Dave			
Dave: Yes, and for a	DAVE'S			
few days. I haven't been hiking in months. How about you?	fent a car			
Are you going to do anything else on your vacation?	Jog my si			
Stella: I have a lot	go to the mount he			
of work to do before school starts.	mountains			
Dave: That doesn't sound like much fun.	mountains ma			
Stella: Oh, I am planning to have some fun.				
. I love to swim.				
Travel plans Kế hoạch du hành				
A Look at these answers. Write questions using going to.				
1. A: Where are you going to go?				
B: I'm going to go someplace nice and quiet.	scale n plans			
2. A:				
B: I'm going to drive.				

Travel plans Ké hoạch du hành A Look at these answers. Write questions using going to. 1. A: Where are you going to go? B: I'm going to go someplace nice and quiet. 2. A: B: I'm going to drive. 3. A: B: I'm going to stay in a condominium. My friend has one near the beach. 4. A: B: No, I'm going to travel by myself. B Use the cues to write other answers to the questions in part A. 1. I'm not going to go to a busy place. (not go/busy place) 2. (maybe/take the train) 3. (not stay/hotel) 4. (I think/ask a friend)

Travel ads Quảng cáo du lịch that a solving a shrow no brow to arrost sittle

A Do you ever read travel ads? Have you ever taken a vacation after reading an ad? If so, how was the vacation?

B Read this travel ad.



C Check (✓) True or False. For the statements that are false, write the true information.

		True	False
1.	People have dinner late in Rio de Janeiro.		
	ming on a vacation to a foreign country.		
2.	Niagara Falls is bigger than Iguaçú Falls.		
	Staven are going on a mountain-climbing variation.		
3.	Both Rio de Janeiro and Buenos Aires have an exciting nightlife.		
	qiat gailles e gairaele ève giiri), b		
4.	Rio de Janeiro, Iguaçú Falls, and Buenos Aires have unforgettable parks and beaches.		
	oing to visit a temple.		

Unit 5 Circle the correct word or words to give advice to travelers. And you have leven Khoanh tròn từ hoặc các từ thích hợp để đưa ra lời khuyên cho các du khách 1. You ought (check / to check) the weather. hotel room.



- 2. You should never (leave / to leave) cash in your
- 3. You need (take / to take) your credit card with you.
- 4. You have (pay / to pay) an airport tax.
- 5. You should (let / to let) your family know where they can contact you.
- 6. You'd better not (go / to go) out alone late at night.
- 7. You must (get / to get) a vaccination if you go to some countries.
- 8. You don't have (get / to get) a visa for many countries nowadays.

Take it or leave it? A Check (✓) the most i		
A vacation to a foreig □ an overnight bag ☑ a passport □ a driver's license	m country 3. A	sailing trip a hotel reservation a first-aid kit hiking boots
2. A mountain-climbing a suitcase a visa a windbreaker	g vacation 4. A	visit to a temple a credit card suitable clothes a plane ticket
- onepure on -	need to	
should I	iad better (a better)	priesel also alla interest some and also
1. Norma is going on a She'd better take a	vacation to a foreign	cola bave dinner late in File de Joneiro country. gera Folis is bigger than guaga Folis.
Norma is going on a	vacation to a foreign passport. e going on a mountain	country. - slic3 üşnuşı nadı rengid sı slic3 prog

You don't need to take that!

Your friends are planning to drive across North America and camp along the way. What advice can you give them? Write eight sentences using the expressions in the box and some of the cues below.

You have to . . .
You must . . .
You need to . . .
You don't have to . . .
You'd better . . .
You should . . .
You shouldn't . . .
You ought to . . .

take your driver's license buy good quality camping equipment take cooking equipment forget your passport or identification take a credit card pack a lot of luggage

1. You have to take your driver's license.



remember to bring a jacket forget a first-aid kit take a lot of cash take maps and travel guides remember to bring insect spray

		tuaal on luly 6th.	alishon Par	a šeirota s		
	or burde uni	source ou law our.	TO 1 HOUSE I			
		c I'll ao shopoina	d. Then may t	NOT LON	<u>n san Xo</u> ri	
					<u> </u>	
iết lại các	câu sau. Tìm c	ind another way to ách khác để nói n	nỗi câu dùng	entence g các từ d	using the lược cho	words sẵn
iết lại các	câu sau. Tìm c	ách khác để nói n tion on my own. (alc	nỗi câu dùng one)	g các từ c	łược cho	sẵn
i <i>ết lại các</i> I'm not go	câu sau. Tìm c	ách khác để nói n	nỗi câu dùng one)	g các từ d	łược cho	sẵn
i <i>ết lại các</i> I'm not go ————————————————————————————————————	câu sau. Tìm c	ách khác để nói n cion on my own. (alc anyone. (by myself)	nỗi câu dùng one)	g các từ d	łược cho	săn

I'm going on vacation!

Tôi sắp đi nghỉ

A Read these notes for a vacation you are going to take to Portugal and Spain. Then write a description of your vacation. Use *going to* for the plans that you have decided on. Use *will* with *maybe*, *probably*, *I guess*, or *I think* for the plans you are not sure about.



Trip to Portugal & Spain

- ✓ arrive in Lisbon, Portugal, on July 6
- ✓ check in at the Tivoli Hotel
- ✓ go shopping (not sure)
- ✓ spend three days in Lisbon sightseeing
- ✓ take a tour bus across the border to Seville in Spain
- ✓ visit the cathedral (not sure)
- √ see some flamenco dancing in the evening
- ✓ rent a car and drive to Malaga on the Costa del Sol
- ✓ visit the old city center (not sure)
- ✓ spend time on the beach (not sure)
- ✓ fly to Madrid on July 19
- ✓ visit some museums (not sure)
- ✓ take a tour of the city and see the sights
- ✓ go home on July 22

First, I'm going to arrive in Lisbon, Portugal, on July 6th. I'm going to	
check in at the Tivoli Hotel. Then maybe I'll go shopping	
The state of the s	
esc sentences. Find another way to say each sentence using the nords gl	
The second secon	
ie cân san. Tom cach khác ar noi mói cán dùng các từ được cho sin	
joing is go on vacation on my own. (alone)	
B Write five things you need to remember before you go on vacation.	
1. I have to pick up my plane ticket.	
2	
ht, to travel with a friend. (should)	
4	
4(lsum)_sedials many extent of a	
5	

1. Please take out the trash.

OK, I'll take it out.

- 2. Please put the dishes away.
- 3. Hang up the towels.
- 4. Turn off the lights, please.
- 5. Turn on the radio.



2 Two-part verbs Các động từ hai thành phần

A Use words from the list to make two-part verbs. (You will use words more than once.)

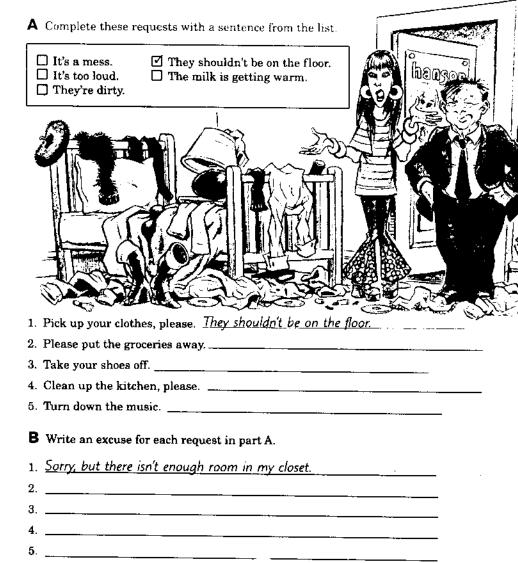
		1/2883		18614 8	11/1/13/18		
away	down	off	on	out	up		
1. clean _	ир	6.	take _		-9		
2. clean _		7.	take _	7 30 30	roulda't		
3. hang _		8.	pick -				
4. put		9.	turn _		_		
5. put		10.	turn -		_		

- **B** Make requests with two-part verbs in part A. Then give a reason for making the request.
- 1. Please clean up your room. It's dirty do you at moon dought day said and who d
- 2.
- 3.
- 5

3	Choose the correc	t words.	Chọn các từ thích hợp
	1. Hang up your	pants	. (books/pants/trash)

- 2. Take out the _____(oven/trash/yard)
- 3. Turn down the _______. (cigarette/heat/toys)
- 4. Pick up your _____ (light/things/TV)
- 5. Put away your _____ (clothes/faucet/yard)
- 6. Turn on the _____ (cat/mess/radio)

4 What's your excuse?



5

The power of persuasion Sức thuyết phục

A How do you make a request? What do you do when someone says "no"?

B Read this article.



In many situations, people try to persuade others to do things; however, most people are not aware of how they persuade. Three different strategies are often used by couples and by people in business: a "hard" strategy, a "soft" strategy, and a "fair" strategy.

Strategy	Couples	Managers
	•1 get angry and make the other person give in.	I just order the person to do what I ask.
Hard	Well, first, I try to make the other person feel stupid.	 I say that I won't give the person a good repor on his or her work.
	• 1 say l'il feave if my spouse does not agree.	1 get others to support my request.
	l act warm and charming before	Lact very humble while i'm making my reques
	t bring up the subject.	• I make the person feel important by saying the
Soft	I am so nice that the other person cannot refuse.	she or he has the brains and experience to do what I want.
<u></u>	• I say I'll give up a little if the other	I offer to exchange favors: You do this for me and I'll do something for you.
Fair	person gives up a little. • We discuss our views without arguing.	1 explain the reason for my request.

C Look at what these people say. Are they examples of hard, soft, or fair strategies?

1.	Wife to husband: Hey, honey. You know, you make the very best coffee. Could I have a cup of that terrific coffee?
	Strategy:
2.	Father to daughter: Pick up that mess in your room, right now. Can't you do anything right?
	Strategy:
3	Boss to secretary: I need you to stay late tonight to finish a report. But you can leave work early tomorrow. Is that OK?
	Strategy:

D Which strategy do you use most often? Which strategy do you think is the most effective? Rewrite these sentences. Find another way to say each sentence using the words given. Viết lại các câu sau. Tìm cách khác để nói mỗi câu. Dùng các từ được cho sẵn



- 2. Take this form to the office. (Would you mind)
- 3. Please turn the CD player down. (Could)
- 4. Don't leave the door open. (Would you mind)
- 5. Let me share your book. (Would)
- 6. Pass me that book, please. (Can)

Choose the correct responses. Chọn các câu đáp thích hợp

- 1. A: Could you lend me some money?
 - B: Oh. sure.
 - Oh, sure.
 - Oh, sorry. No, thanks.

- Sorry, I can't right now.
- I forget.
- 3. A: By the way, you're sitting in my seat.

B: _

- I'll close it.
- Not right now.
- Excuse me. I didn't realize. Savitasita taom I'll make sure. D vijetlinta daidW

4. A: Would you like to come in?

- That's no excuse.
- Sorry, I forgot.
- All right. Thanks.
- 2. A: Would you mind helping me? Subject to A: Would you mind not taking all the coffee?

- OK, thanks.
- No, thanks. Trought a defined of degree of stores at a l'm sorry, I'll make some more.
 - Excuse me. I'll drink it all.
 - 6. A: Can you turn the radio up?

B: Vypatsyl2

- No problem.
- You could, too. wallest dainy C

Sure. No problem! For each complaint, apologize and either make an offer, give an excuse, admit a mistake, or make a promise. Với mối lời than phiền, xin lỗi hoặc đưa ra mót để nghị, cho một lý do, nhân lỗi, hoặc đưa ra một lời hứa 1. Customer: This steak is very tough. I can't eat it. Waiter: Oh, I'm sorry. I'll get you another one. 2. Steven: You're late. I've been waiting for you for half an hour. 3. Roommate 1: Could you turn the television down? I'm trying to study and the noise is bothering me. Roommate 2: _ 4. Father: You didn't mail the letters this morning. 5. Customer: I brought this Walkman in for repair last week, but it's still not working right. Salesperson: 6. Neighbor 1: Could you do something about your dog? It barks all night and keeps me awake. Neighbor 2: . Apartment resident: Would you mind moving your car? You're parked in my parking space. 8. Teacher: Please put away your papers. You left them on your desk yesterday. Student: ___ Choose the correct words. Chon các từ đúng 1. Throw those empty bottles away. Put them in the _____ (recycling bin/toy/refrigerator). 2. Would you mind picking up some _____ (dry cleaning/groceries/towels)? We need coffee, milk, and rice.

3. Turn the _____ (faucet/oven/stereo) off. Water

He said, "I'll be sure to stop my dog from barking."

4. My neighbor made a ______ (mistake/offer/promise).

costs money!

10 Requests Yêu cầu

A Match the phrases in columns A and B.

Α	B	
	-	
🗹 pick up	your bedroom	1. pick up some milk
not criticize	some milk	2
□ mail	☐ the videotapes	3
not talk	your sunglasses	4
put away	☐ these letters	5
☐ take off	☐ the oven	6
turn down	so loud	7
Clean up	my friends	8
·		e milk?
	<u> </u>	

Write five complaints you have about a friend or relative.
Then write a wish for each complaint.

Viết năm lời than phiền của bạn về một người bạn hoặc một người thân. Rồi viết một mong ước cho lời than phiền

	,
1,	My roommate Linda is always using my hair dryer.
	I wish she would buy her own hair dryer.
2.	
3.	
4.	
5.	





5.

the World Wide Web

What's this for?

do boring jobs write reports	☐ talk to friends ☐ send document		dio and TV program	ns
1	2 3	4	5	
	'ntake/have) budgets			H
			A I	elepho
computer	fax machine	robot	satellite	Cicpilo
1. A computer is used	d for writing reports.			
2.				
3.		1003		
4.				
		The second second		
5.	between two of these	e words. Check (/) the technology a	and
5	between two of these	ence using used to	n chính các cán	
Find the connection check (/) what it do Tim mỗi liên hệ giữo	es. Then write a sente a hai từ trong số các t	ence using used to từ dưới đây. Đánh	o. dấu (v) thiết bị c	
Find the connection check (/) what it do Tim mỗi liên hệ giữo	es. Then write a sente a hai từ trong số các t lụng của nó. Khi đó v	ence using used to từ dưới đây. Đánh iết một câu dùng	o. dấu (v) thiết bị c	
5	es. Then write a sente a hai từ trong số các t	ence using used to từ dưới đây. Đánh iết một câu dùng	o. dấu (v) thiết bị c used to	ông n
5	oes. Then write a sente a hai từ trong số các t lụng của nó. Khi đó v hone line	ence using used to từ dưới đây. Đánh iết một câu dùng	o. dấu (v) thiết bị c	ông n

obots

information

Choose the correct words to complete each sentence.

Use the correct form of the word.

	Use the correct form of the word.
	Chọn các từ đúng để hoàn chỉnh mỗi câu. Dùng dạng đúng của từ
	1. Robots are used to <u>perform</u> (make/perform/study) many
	2. CD-ROM is used for (connect/perform/store)
	information on many subjects.
	3. Police use DNA fingerprinting to (identify/ Manual)
	read/transmit) criminals. 4. Computers are used to (access/do/send) the Internet. 5. Satellites are used for (make/
	transmit/write) radio programs.
	6. Home computers are used to (do/make/have) budgets.
A SULP	

4 Complete the sentences with used to, is used to, or are used to.

Hoàn chỉnh các câu với used to, is used to hoặc are used to

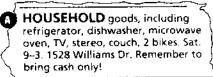
1.	My sisteruse	
2.	People always	mail letters, but nowadays they
	often fax them.	
3.	A cellular phone	make phone calls from cars or
	from the street.	CU-ROM
4.	I	have an electric typewriter, but now I have
	a computer.	
5.	We just bought a grea	t new CD player. We have have
	a cassette player, but	
6.	Modems	access the Internet.

Garage sales

Chỗ bán đồ cũ

A Have you ever been to a garage sale? What did you buy? Do you have garage sales in your country?

B Read these advertisements for garage sales.



MOVING! Typewriter, books, shelves, desk and office chair, and lots of old CDs! Sat. 8-3. 32 Harbor Rd.

VALUABLE Mexican paintings, antique chairs, oriental rugs, collection of old Japanese kimonos and other clothes from around the world, old maps, gold coins. Sun. 11-5. 2039

E. 8th St. Try not to be late.

COLLECTOR GOES BROKE!

Everything must go! Collection of shells, stamps, and coins from around the world. old postcards, photos. Sun. noon to 7. 9734 Date St. Make sure to tell your friends.

retiring. Laptop computer, modem, laser printer, fax machine, software for word processing and making budgets, even a few video games. 9-5 Sat. & Sun. 2561 Canada Dr.



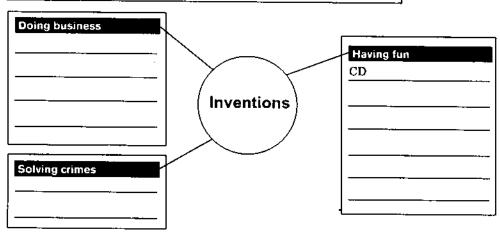
C Which garage sale should these people attend? (More than one answer is sometimes possible.)

- Linda has just started her own business. She likes to play music while she works.
- 2. ____ Edmund and Tom decorate homes. They always use old and unusual items to make the houses they decorate more interesting.
- 3. _____ Don needs some furniture for his new apartment.
- 4. _____ Betty wants to have an office in her home.
- 5. Sam likes collecting interesting and unusual things from different countries.

6 What are they usually used for? Chúng thường được dùng để làm gì

A Complete the word map with inventions from the list. (Some of the inventions can be used in more than one category.)

CD Internet chat groups fax machine camcorder computer video games cellular phone DNA fingerprinting the World Wide Web



- **B** Do you use any of these inventions? What do you use them for? Write sentences.
- 1. I use a cellular phone to call my office.
- 2.
- 4. _____

Put these instructions in order. Number them from 1 to 5. Xếp các chỉ dẫn sau theo dúng trật tự. Đánh số từ 1 đến 5

 Installing Your Stereo System Be sure not to plug your stereo into an electrical outlet until you read these instructions.
 Next, put it in a suitable place. Try not to expose it to direct sunlight. First of all, make sure to open the box carefully. Don't drop it. It's fragile. After that, remember to attach the wires from the speakers to the main unit. Finally, plug it into an electrical outlet. Turn it on and enjoy your music! Then take the stereo out of the box. Don't forget to remove the plastic bags around the speakers.

☐ Don't forget to ☐ Remember to	✓ Make sure to	DOCUMENT		
. Make sure to conne	ct the printer	PRINT		
to the computer.	()	irlo		ā
			The second second	
	(p.)	ton Ja	5 Don Well	
2),			in the second
			The same of the sa	-
		-		
		elai	····· }	
		elo Na holan chanh ba	Nem cuc man	
the correct response lot dup dung	te this conversation. Choos if dam thout saw. Chen ede soven didn't work.	ole W hoian chank he way	MINIM SUD INST	
	te this conversation. Chaos if deim thout sate. Chart rece so <u>ven élde</u> it work.	way	50 60 70 50 20 11 11 11 11 10 10 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 2	.1.5
	te this conversation. Chaos il deim thout satt. Chair cac so <u>ven didn't mak</u>	ela ad altualo tubori y vavi	90 60 70 90 20 70 90 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20	1.5
	te this conversation. Choose it dam thou sate. Chan edic soven didn't wask.	etal nd Amato mboil in Puet	20 50 70 90 20 3	1 5
	te this conversation. Choose it dam thout sate. Choose over didn't make	ela nd Artizio Iliaoni il Vevi Puel Puel Puel Puel Puel Puel Puel Puel	00 50 70 00 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20	1.5
	te this conversation. Choose it dam thou sate ("heat che e ocea did") and k	Puel Solution of the Solution	20 50 70 90 20 50 11 11 190 20 50 60 60 60 00 50 60 60 00 50 60 60 60 00 50 60 60 60 00 50 60 60 60 00 50 60 60 60 60 00 50 60 70 90 00 50 70 90 00	1100
	te this conversation. Choose it dam thou sate Charles over 25th town k.	FUEL POLICE OF THE PROPERTY OF	20 50 70 80 90 90 90 90 90 90 90 90 90 90 90 90 90	(1.)
	te this conversation. Choose it dam thou sate	PUEL PUEL PUEL PUEL PUEL PUEL PUEL PUEL	20 50 70 90 20 50 11 11 190 20 50 60 60 60 00 50 60 60 00 50 60 60 60 00 50 60 60 60 00 50 60 60 60 00 50 60 60 60 60 00 50 60 70 90 00 50 70 90 00	1.7
	te this conversation. Choose it dam thout sate Choose over didn't make	PUEL STORY OF THE	20 50 70 90 20 50 11 11 190 20 50 60 60 60 00 50 60 60 00 50 60 60 60 00 50 60 60 60 00 50 60 60 60 00 50 60 60 60 60 00 50 60 70 90 00 50 70 90 00	VID

has battery, so he can use it without electricity for up to eight hours. It also has modem inside. If he wants to send fax, he can send it electronically. And he can connect to the Internet. My brother joined "chat group" on mountain climbing. He plans to take his laptop on airplane when he takes vacation mountain climbing. It's very small

computer, so he takes it everywhere with him.

E	
8	L C
ш.	

Rewrite these sentences. Find another way to say each sentence using the words given.

Viết lại các câu sau. Tìm cách khác để nói mỗi câu. Dùng các từ được cho sẵn

1.	I use my computer for organizing my money. (budget) I use my computer for making my budget.
2.	It breaks very easily. (fragile)
3.	Take it out of the outlet. (unplug)
4.	Remember to keep it dry. (spill)
5.	Don't drop the package. (try not to)



Look at the pictures and complete this conversation. Choose the correct responses.

Xem các hình và hoàn chính bài đàm thoại sau. Chon các lời đáp đúng

A:	What a day! First, my microwave oven didn't work.	
В:	What happened?	
A:	It burned my lunch.	

- It didn't cook my lunch.
- It burned my lunch.

Then I tried to use my computer,

but that didn't work either.

B: Why not?

It didn't connect to the Internet.

It didn't connect to the Internet
I couldn't turn it on.

After that I tried to use the vacuum cleaner.

B: Let me guess. It didn't pick up the dirt.

A: Worse! _____

It made a terrible noise.

It spread dirt around the room.

B: Did you have your robot help?

A: Well, I tried to get it to clean the outside windows.

- But it refused.
- It did a great job.
- B: I don't blame it! You live on the 50th floor!



Let's celebrate!

B		bus sad		~
Chún	q ta	hãy	mừng	lê

Families celebrate with barbecues or Thanksgiving Day is celebrated in the, on the fourth Thursday in November. It is a day when people give thanks for the Most have a large dinner with turkey. Both Thanksgiving and Independence Day are national Complete the sentences. Choose clauses from the list. Hoàn chỉnh các câu. Chọn các mệnh đề từ bảng kê when I feel sad and depressed when school starts when people pay taxes when students in the United States take exams 1. I hate April 15th! In the United States, it's the day I owe the government money every year. 2. I don't like September. It's the month I always miss summer vacation. 3. June is my least favorite month. It's the month	The second secon	fireworks harvest	☐ holidays ☐ independence	✓ July □ picnics	□ roast
Thanksgiving Day. Independence Day, the Fourth ofluly, marks the United States' declaration of from Britain. Most towns, big and small, celebrate the Fourth of July with parades and Families celebrate with barbecues or Thanksgiving Day is celebrated in the, on the fourth Thursday in November. It is a day when people give thanks for the Most have a large dinner with turkey. Both Thanksgiving and Independence Day are national Complete the sentences. Choose clauses from the list. Hoàn chỉnh các câu. Chọn các mệnh để từ bảng kế when I feel sad and depressed when school starts when people pay taxes when students in the United States take exams 1. I hate April 15th! In the United States, it's the day I owe the government money every year. 2. I don't like September. It's the month is my least favorite month. It's the month 3. June is my least favorite month. It's the month	Two of the most imp	portant holid	ays in the		
Fourth ofluly, marks the United States' declaration of from Britain. Most towns, big and small, celebrate the Fourth of July with parades and Families celebrate with barbecues or Thanksgiving Day is celebrated in the, on the fourth Thursday in November. It is a day when people give thanks for the Most have a large dinner with turkey. Both Thanksgiving and Independence Day are national Complete the sentences. Choose clauses from the list. Hoàn chỉnh các câu. Chọn các mệnh để từ bảng kê when I feel sad and depressed when school starts when sudents in the United States take exams 1. I hate April 15th! In the United States, it's the day I owe the government money every year. 2. I don't like September. It's the month I always miss summer vacation. 3. June is my least favorite month. It's the month	United States are In	ndependence	Day and		
from Britain. Most towns, big and small, celebrate the Fourth of July with parades and Families celebrate with barbecues or Thanksgiving Day is celebrated in the, on the fourth Thursday in November. It is a day when people give thanks for the Most have a large dinner with turkey. Both Thanksgiving and Independence Day are national **Complete the sentences. Choose clauses from the list.** *Hoàn chỉnh các câu. Chọn các mệnh để từ bảng kê* when I feel sad and depressed when school starts when people pay taxes when students in the United States take exams I hate April 15th! In the United States, it's the day I owe the government money every year. 2. I don't like September. It's the month I always miss summer vacation. 3. June is my least favorite month. It's the month	Thanksgiving Day.	Independenc	e Day, the	o o	
from Britain. Most towns, big and small, celebrate the Fourth of July with parades and Families celebrate with barbecues or Thanksgiving Day is celebrated in the, on the fourth Thursday in November. It is a day when people give thanks for the Most have a large dinner with turkey. Both Thanksgiving and Independence Day are national Complete the sentences. Choose clauses from the list. Hoàn chỉnh các câu. Chọn các mệnh để từ bảng kế when I feel sad and depressed when school starts when people pay taxes when students in the United States take exams 1. I hate April 15th! In the United States, it's the day I owe the government money every year. 2. I don't like September. It's the month I always miss summer vacation. 3. June is my least favorite month. It's the month	Fourth of	, marks the	e United States'	/ 00	Tin .
celebrate the Fourth of July with parades and	declaration of				
Families celebrate with barbecues or Thanksgiving Day is celebrated in the, on the fourth Thursday in November. It is a day when people give thanks for the Most have a large dinner with turkey. Both Thanksgiving and Independence Day are national Complete the sentences. Choose clauses from the list. Hoàn chỉnh các câu. Chọn các mệnh đề từ bảng kê when I feel sad and depressed when school starts when people pay taxes when students in the United States take exams I owe the government money every year. 1. I hate April 15th! In the United States, it's the day I owe the government money every year. 2. I don't like September. It's the month I always miss summer vacation. 3. June is my least favorite month. It's the month	from Britain. Most	towns, big an	nd small,	10 CH 14	
Families celebrate with barbecues or Thanksgiving Day is celebrated in the, on the fourth Thursday in November. It is a day when people give thanks for the Most have a large dinner with turkey. Both Thanksgiving and Independence Day are national Complete the sentences. Choose clauses from the list. Hoàn chỉnh các câu. Chọn các mệnh để từ bảng kê when I feel sad and depressed when school starts when people pay taxes when students in the United States take exams 1. I hate April 15th! In the United States, it's the day I owe the government money every year. 2. I don't like September. It's the month I always miss summer vacation. 3. June is my least favorite month. It's the month	celebrate the Fourt	h of July with	n parades and		
fourth Thursday in November. It is a day when people give thanks for the Most have a large dinner with turkey. Both Thanksgiving and Independence Day are national Complete the sentences. Choose clauses from the list. Hoàn chỉnh các câu. Chọn các mệnh đề từ bảng kê when I feel sad and depressed when school starts when people pay taxes when students in the United States take exams 1. I hate April 15th! In the United States, it's the day I owe the government money every year. 2. I don't like September. It's the month I always miss summer vacation. 3. June is my least favorite month. It's the month		Familie	es celebrate with	1119	Independence Day pa
fourth Thursday in November. It is a day when people give thanks for the Most have a large dinner with turkey. Both Thanksgiving and Independence Day are national Complete the sentences. Choose clauses from the list. Hoàn chỉnh các câu. Chọn các mệnh đề từ bảng kê when I feel sad and depressed when school starts when people pay taxes when students in the United States take exams 1. I hate April 15th! In the United States, it's the day I owe the government money every year. 2. I don't like September. It's the month I always miss summer vacation. 3. June is my least favorite month. It's the month	barbecues or		. Thanksgiving Day i	s celebrated in	the, on the
Most have a large dinner with turkey. Both Thanksgiving and Independence Day are national Complete the sentences. Choose clauses from the list. Hoàn chỉnh các câu. Chọn các mệnh để từ bảng kê when I feel sad and depressed when school starts when people pay taxes when students in the United States take exams 1. I hate April 15th! In the United States, it's the day I owe the government money every year. 2. I don't like September. It's the month I always miss summer vacation. 3. June is my least favorite month. It's the month					
Complete the sentences. Choose clauses from the list. Hoàn chỉnh các câu. Chọn các mệnh đề từ bảng kê when I feel sad and depressed when school starts when people pay taxes when students in the United States take exams I. I hate April 15th! In the United States, it's the day I owe the government money every year. 2. I don't like September. It's the month I always miss summer vacation. 3. June is my least favorite month. It's the month	Most	——— have	a large dinner with		turkey. Both
Complete the sentences. Choose clauses from the list. Hoàn chỉnh các câu. Chọn các mệnh đề từ bảng kê when I feel sad and depressed when school starts when people pay taxes when students in the United States take exams 1. I hate April 15th! In the United States, it's the day I owe the government money every year. 2. I don't like September. It's the month I always miss summer vacation. 3. June is my least favorite month. It's the month	Thanksgiving and I	ndependence	Day are national _		
I don't like September. It's the month I always miss summer vacation. June is my least favorite month. It's the month	Hoàn chỉnh các d when I feel sad when school st when people p	câu. Chọn c d and depress arts ay taxes	các mệnh đề từ bản	g kê	- 24
3. June is my least favorite month. It's the month		I	owe the government	money every y	ear. di
	2. I don't like Septe		h celebrate their		
	2. I don't like Septe I always miss su	mmer vacati	on.		THE W
	2. I don't like Septe	mmer vacati favorite mor	on. ath. It's the month I never	w orla si	

Complete the crossword puzzle. Hoàn chỉnh bảng đố chữ

Across4 People in the United h States and Canada celebrate the at Thanksgiving. 7 Children say "trick or treat" on Halloween, and people give them _____. 8 ____ is the season when there are a lot of flowers in my country. 10 My parents' twentyfifth wedding __ is tomorrow. 13 ____ is a time of the year when it is very cold and dark. 14 During Carnival, people wear lots of interesting _____. 15 My wife loves _____, so I gave her a diamond ring on Valentine's Day. 16 My family always has a ____ in the park on Independence Day. 17 We have a summer festival when everyone goes _____ in the streets. It's fun, and the music is great, too. Down 1 People like to play _____ on each other on April Fool's Day. 2 Everybody wore a _____ on Halloween, so no one knew who was really . at the party. 3 Janice and Nick are getting married soon. They plan to have a small — with just a few family members. 5 In my country, most people have roast _____ on Christmas Day. 6 August 1st is the day when Indonesians celebrate their ____ from the Netherlands. 9 On July 14th each year, the French celebrate their ____ with fireworks. 11 In Europe, summer is the ____ when most people go on vacation. 12 We always have a _____ on New Year's Eve. 14 The Chinese eat special _____ for the moon festival. These are sweet

and are made with lots of eggs.

4 A lot to celebrate! Nhiều ngày lễ đón mừng

A Do you know about any special days in the United States? Which days do you know about?

B Read about these special days in the United States.

	Event	Day	How people celebrate it
4	Easter	a Sunday in March or April	For Christians, this is a religious holiday. It is also a day when many people buy chocolate eggs and bunnies and have Easter egg hunts outdoors.
\	Secretaries' Day	April .	When secretaries come to work, their bosses give them cards and flowers.
4	Earth Day	April 22	This is a day when people think about protecting the earth. People give speeches about saving the environment.
	Mother's Day	2nd Sunday in May	People honor their mothers by giving cards and gifts and having a family gathering.
1	Father's Day	3rd Sunday in June	People honor their fathers by giving them presents and cards.
15th + 21th	Labor Bay	1st Monday in September	People honor workers and have picnics with family and friends.
4	Hanukkah	usually in December	During this religious festival, Jewish families light candles and give each other gifts.
	Christmas	December 25	For Christians, this is a religious holiday. It is also a day when friends and families exchange gifts around a Christmas tree.

, ${\bf C}$ Complete the chart. Check $({\bf \checkmark})$ the correct answers.

People give gifts on:	The religious holidays are:	I celebrate:
	gifts on:	gifts on: holidays are:

	<i>in chỉnh các cáu</i> Before a man and woman get married, <u>they</u>		
	usually date each other.		
	When someone has a birthday,	12.00	
3. B	Before some people eat a meal,		TI
4. A	After a student graduates,		
5. W	When a woman gets engaged,		
6. W	When a couple has their first child,	33.	
7 W	When a person retires,	19-13-5	
Comj	plete the paragraph with information from the a comma where necessary.		
Comj Add a Hoàr	plete the paragraph with information from the a comma where necessary. n chỉnh đoạn với thông tin trong bảng kẻ. Th		nêu cân
Comj Add a Hoàr Gra	plete the paragraph with information from the a comma where necessary. n chỉnh đoạn với thông tin trong bảng kẻ. Th ammar note: Adverbial clauses of time	êm dấu phẩy i	nêu cân
Comj Add a Hoàr Gra The Befo	plete the paragraph with information from the a comma where necessary. In chỉnh đoạn với thông tin trong bảng kê. The ammar note: Adverbial clauses of time adverbial clause can come before or after the main clause are the main clause, add a comma.	êm dấu phẩy i	nêu cân
Comp Add a Hoàr Gra The Befo W	plete the paragraph with information from the a comma where necessary. n chỉnh đoạn với thông tin trong bảng kê. Th ammar note: Adverbial clauses of time adverbial clause can come before or after the main clause	êm dấu phẩy i	nêu cân
Grand Add a de	plete the paragraph with information from the a comma where necessary. In chinh doan với thông tin trong bảng kẻ. The ammar note: Adverbial clauses of time adverbial clause can come before or after the main clause. Ore the main clause, add a comma. Then a couple gets married, they often receive gifts. The main clause, do not add a comma.	êm dấu phẩy i	nêu cân
Grzen	plete the paragraph with information from the a comma where necessary. In chinh down với thông tin trong bảng kê. The ammar note: Adverbial clauses of time adverbial clause can come before or after the main clause ore the main clause, add a comma. Then a couple gets married, they often receive gifts. In the main clause, do not add a comma. Couple often receives gifts when they get married. Then any newlyweds have to live with relatives before the wedding reception ends they like to be alone	êm dấu phẩy i	nêu cân

OWR_____

1.	In the United States, when a man and woman decide to get engaged
	In the United States, when a man and woman decide to get engaged,
	they send <u>announcements</u> (announcements/gifts/receptions)
	to their friends.
4	The woman's female friends often give her (a bridal shower/
	an engagement period/newlyweds).
٦.	The man's male friends often give him a (bachelor party/
	bridegroom/wedding dress). The wedding (commissions (commissions (commissions (commissions)))
⋆.	The wedding (anniversary/celebrations/ceremony) is often held in a church.
5	After the wedding reception, the couple usually goes on their
٠,	(engagement/honeymoon/vacation).
	(a)BaBanian nanay nanay nanay nanay na
Т	u sau lễ cưới
_	
- -	
- - -	
- - -	
-	
<u>-</u>	

1	
	~

Rewrite these sentences. Find another way to say these sentences using the words given.

Viết lại các câu sau. Dùng cách khác để nói các câu sau. Dùng các từ được cho sẵn

- 1. Everyone in the family comes to my parents' home on Thanksgiving. (gets together)

 Everyone in the family gets together at my parents' home on Thanksgiving.
- 2. Many people have parties on New Year's Eve. (New Year's Eve/when)
- 3. Everyone gives and receives presents on Christmas. (exchange)
- 4. After they leave the reception, many couples put on everyday clothes. (change into)
- 5. The couple usually leaves the reception before the guests do. (bride and groom)

10

Imagine you are in a foreign country and someone has invited you to a New Year's Eve party. Ask questions about the party using the words given in the list or your own ideas.

Tưởng tượng bạn đang ở nước ngoài và có người mời bạn dự tiệc mừng năm mới. Hỏi cá câu hỏi về buổi tiệc mừng. Dùng các từ được cho sẵn trong bảng kê hoặc các ý của riêng bạ



	☑ present ☐ sp ☐ flowers ☐ sin			
1.	Should I bring a Ne	w Year's present?		
2.				
3.				
4.			·	
5.				
6.				

9

Back to the future

Trở lại tương lai

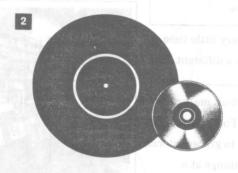
Complete this passage with verbs from the list. Use the past, present, or future tense. Hoàn chỉnh đoạn sau bằng các động từ từ bảng kê. Dùng thì quá khứ, hiện tại hoặc tương lai

Complete the sentences. Use the words given and ideas from the pictures.

Hoàn chỉnh các câu dùng các từ được cho
sẵn và các ý từ các hình

1. These days, people go to the beach on vacation. (beach)

In the future, they might go to Mars on vacation. (Mars)

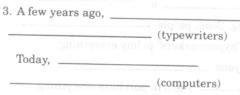




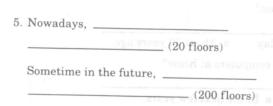
2. In the past, _____ (collect records)

Nowadays, ____

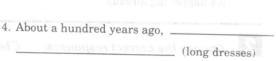
(collect CDs)











These days, and slaged bit many (short skirts)

Apartments for rent

in new 20-floor building. Call 555-6724 for information

Apartments for rent

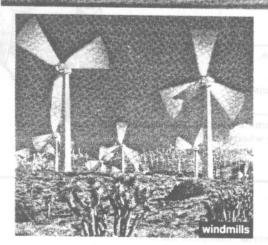
in new 200-floor building. Call 555-0925 for information.

New forms of energy Các dạng năng lượng mới enengam tomaco sực stoạch

A What forms of energy do you use in your home? Do you think this will change in the next twenty years?

B Read the article.

THE FUTURE OF ENERGY



nergy is very important in modern life. People use energy to run machines, heat and cool their homes, cook, give light, and transport people and products from place to place. Most energy nowadays comes from fossil fuels - petroleum, coal, and natural gas. However, burning fossil fuels causes pollution. Also, if we don't find new kinds of energy, we will use up all the fossil fuels in the twenty-first century. Scientists are working to find other kinds of energy for the future. What might these sources of energy be?

Energy from the wind All over the world, people use the power of the wind. It turns windmills and moves sailboats. It is a clean source of energy, and there is lots of it. Unfortunately, if the wind does not blow, there is no wind energy.

Energy from water When water moves from a high place to a lower place, it makes energy. This energy is used to create electricity. In Brittany, France, for example, waterpower produces enough energy to light a town of 40,000 people. Waterpower gives energy without pollution. However, people have to build dams to use this energy. Dams cost a lot of money, so water energy is expensive.

Energy from the earth There is heat in rocks under the earth. Scientists use this heat to make geothermal energy. San Francisco gets half of the energy it needs from geothermal power. This kind of energy is cheap, but it is possible only in a few places in the world.

Energy from the sun Solar panels on the roofs of houses can turn energy from the sun into electricity. These panels can create enough energy to heat an entire house. Solar power is clean and there is a lot of it in sunny places. But when the weather is bad. there is no sunlight for energy.

C What is one advantage and one disadvantage of each type of energy? Complete the chart.

	Advantage	Disadvantage
wind power .		
waterpower .		
geothermal power		
solar power		
		.0

B: You might be able to come rock climbing with me. You won't be able to come rock climbing with me. You won't be able to come rock climbing with me. A: What will happen if I stop smoking? B: Well, you won't gain weight. Well, you might gain weight. You'll be able to buy new clothes. You'll be able to buy new clothes. You'll be able to buy new clothes. You'll happen if I don't get a summer job? B: You may be able to live with a roommate when school starts. You'll have to live with a roommate when school starts. You'll have to live with a roommate when school starts. You'll have to live with a roommate when school starts. You'll have to live with a roommate when school starts. You'll have to live with a roommate when school starts. You'll have to live with a roommate when school starts. You'll have to live with a roommate when school starts. You'll have to live with a roommate when school starts. You'll have to live with a roommate when school starts. You'll have to live with a roommate when school starts. You'll have to live with a roommate when school starts.	Choose the	T	a ahasa t	hie eum	nmer?				
■ You might be able to come rock climbing with me. ■ You won't be able to come rock climbing with me. 2. A: What will happen if I stop smoking? B: ■ Well, you won't gain weight. ■ Well, you might gain weight. 3. A: What if I get a new job? B: ■ You won't be able to buy new clothes. ■ You'll be able to buy new clothes. ■ You'll be able to buy new clothes. ■ You'll happen if I don't get a summer job? B: ■ You may be able to live with a roommate when school starts. ■ You'll have to live with a roommate when school starts. Collocations Ket hop tit A Which words or phrases go with which verbs? Complete the chart. □ a cold □ relaxed □ dieting □ smoking □ energetic □ touch □ married □ weight teel get lose quit									
B: Well, you won't gain weight. Well, you might gain weight. You won't be able to buy new clothes. You'll be able to buy new clothes. You'll be able to buy new clothes. You may be able to live with a roommate when school starts. You'll have to live with a roommate when school starts. You'll have to live with a roommate when school starts. You'll have to live with a roommate when school starts. Which words or phrases go with which verbs? Complete the chart. Golfocations Kêt hop tùt A Which words or phrases go with which verbs? Complete the chart.	■ You	night b	e able to	come ro	ock climbin	ng with m	ie. e.	_	
B:	2. A: What	ill hap	pen if I s	top smo	oking?				
■ Well, you won't gain weight. ■ Well, you might gain weight. 3. A: What if I get a new job? B: ■ You won't be able to buy new clothes. ■ You'll be able to buy new clothes. 4. A: What will happen if I don't get a summer job? B: ■ You may be able to live with a roommate when school starts. ■ You'll have to live with a roommate when school starts. Collocations Ket hop tit A Which words or phrases go with which verbs? Complete the chart. □ a cold □ relaxed □ dieting □ smoking □ energetic □ touch □ married □ weight feet get lose quit									
B: Nou won't be able to buy new clothes. You'll be able to buy new clothes. A: What will happen if I don't get a summer job? B: You may be able to live with a roommate when school starts. You'll have to live with a roommate when school starts. Collocations Kêt hop tit A Which words or phrases go with which verbs? Complete the chart. a cold	■ Well	you w	on't gain						
 You won't be able to buy new clothes. You'll be able to buy new clothes. 4. A: What will happen if I don't get a summer job? B: You may be able to live with a roommate when school starts. You'll have to live with a roommate when school starts. Collocations Ket hop tù A Which words or phrases go with which verbs? Complete the chart. □ a cold □ relaxed □ dieting □ smoking □ energetic □ touch □ married □ weight feel get lose quit 	3. A: What	f I get a	a new job	?					1
■ You'll be able to buy new clothes. 4. A: What will happen if I don't get a summer job? B: ■ You may be able to live with a roommate when school starts. ■ You'll have to live with a roommate when school starts. Collocations Két hop tit A Which words or phrases go with which verbs? Complete the chart. □ a cold □ relaxed □ dieting □ smoking □ energetic □ touch □ married □ weight feel get lose quit	В:							<u>يون</u>	3667
Pour may be able to live with a roommate when school starts. ■ You'll have to live with a roommate when school starts. Collocations Ket hop tit A Which words or phrases go with which verbs? Complete the chart. □ a cold □ relaxed □ dieting □ smoking □ energetic □ touch □ married □ weight feet get lose quit	■ You'	l be ab	le to buy	new clo	othes.				
■ You may be able to live with a roommate when school starts. ■ You'll have to live with a roommate when school starts. Collocations Kêt hop tit A Which words or phrases go with which verbs? Complete the chart. □ a cold □ relaxed □ dieting □ smoking □ energetic □ touch □ married □ weight feel get lose quit	4. A: What	vill har	ppen if I o	don't ge	et a summe	er job?			
■ You'll have to live with a roommate when school starts. Collocations Ket hop tit A Which words or phrases go with which verbs? Complete the chart. □ a cold □ relaxed □ dieting □ smoking □ energetic □ touch □ married □ weight feet get lose quit	В:							<u> </u>	
A Which words or phrases go with which verbs? Complete the chart. □ a cold □ relaxed □ dieting □ smoking □ energetic □ touch □ married □ weight feel get lose quit	■ You	ıı have	to live w	ntn a ro	жинате м	men scho	O. SCHIES.	-	-
iect go.							_		
energetic	▲ Which w	ords or	phrases relaxes smok	go with ed ing	n which ve	rbs? Com	plete the o	chart.	
energetic	▲ Which v □ a cold □ dieting □ energe □ marrie	ords or	phrases relaxe smok touch weigh	go with ed ing i	n which ve			chart.	quit
	A Which was a cold of dieting of energy marries	ords or	phrases relaxe smok touch weigh	go with ed ing i	n which ve			chart.	quit
	A Which was a cold of dieting of energe of marries	ords or	phrases relaxe smok touch weigh	go with ed ing i	n which ve			chart.	quit
	■ a cold □ dieting □ energe □ marrie	ords or	phrases relaxe smok touch weigh	go with		los	se	chart.	quit
B Write sentences with <i>if</i> . Use some of the words in part A.	A Which was a cold of dieting of energe of the energetics	ords or	phrases relaxe smok touch weigh	go with		los	se	chart.	quit
B Write sentences with if. Use some of the words in part A. 1. If I feel energetic, I might go to the gym.	A Which w a cold dieting energe marrie feel energetic	ords or	phrases relaxe smok touch weigh	go with ed ing nt Use so	ome of the	los words in p	part A.		
1. If I feel energetic, I might go to the gym.	■ Which w □ a cold □ dieting □ energe □ marrie feel energetic B Write se 1. If I feel	tic d	phrases relaxe smok touch weigh	go with ed ing nt Use so	ome of the	los words in p	part A.		
1. If I feel energetic, I might go to the gym. 2.	■ Which w □ a cold □ dieting □ energe □ marrie feel energeting B Write so 1. If I feel 2	tic d	phrases relaxe smok touch weigh	go with ed ing nt Use so	ome of the to the gyr	words in m	oart A.		, e ²
1. If I feel energetic, I might go to the gym.	■ Which w □ a cold □ dieting ☑ energe □ marrie feel energeting B Write see 1. If I feel 2 3	tic d	phrases relaxe smok touch weigh	go with ed ing nt Use so	ome of the to the gyr	words in p	part A.		, e ²

7

Complete these sentences with your own information. Add commas where necessary.

Hoàn chỉnh các câu bằng thông tin của riêng bạn. Thêm dấu phẩy nếu cần

Grammar note:	1	 _1
CTP: 192142121 distantia	LEADULD HEAD	

The if clause can come before or after the main clause.

Before the main clause, add a comma:

If I move to a cheaper apartment, I'll be able to buy a car.

After the main clause, do not add a comma:

I'll be able to buy a car if I move to a cheaper apartment.

ı.	If I go shopping on Saturday, I might spend too much money.
2.	I'll feel healthier
3.	If I get more exercise
4.	If I don't get good grades in school
5.	I might get more sleep
6.	I'll be happy



Q

Nouns and adjectives

Danh từ và tính từ

A Complete this chart.

Adjective	Noun	Adjective
		medical
environmental	success	
.		

В	Complete the sentences. Use words from part A.
1.	There have been lots of advances in the
	past half century, but there is still no cure for the common cold.
2.	There are many problems in my
	country. There's a lot of air pollution and the oceans are dirty.
3.	My is not as good as it used to be. So
	I've decided to eat better food and go swimming every day.
4.	My vacation was a great I feel much
	healthier and more relaxed.
5.	If I start exercising more often, I might feel more

	sing the words given. iết lại các câu sau. Tìm cách khác để nói mồi câu, dùng các từ được cho	ว เพื่อง
۱.	If I stop eating rich food, I may be able to lose weight. (diet)	san
	If I go on a diet, I may be able to lose weight.	
2.	In the future, not many people will use cash to buy things. (few)	2
3.	Today, people use bicycles less than before. (used to)	
4.	If I get a better job, I can buy an apartment. (be able to)	
Wi ab	There's going to be a big new shopping center downtown. (mall) rite about yourself. In the first paragraph, describe something your your past. In the second paragraph, write about your life now. the third paragraph, write about your future.	-
Wi ab In Vi	rite about yourself. In the first paragraph, describe something pout your past. In the second paragraph, write about your life now.	ng doa
Wi ab In Vi vë	rite about yourself. In the first paragraph, describe something pout your past. In the second paragraph, write about your life now. the third paragraph, write about your future. Et ve ban than. Trong doan dâu, miêu tâ gì đó ve quá khứ của bạn. Tro cuộc sống hiện tại của bạn. Trong doạn cuối, viết ve tương lại của bạn tample:	ng doo
Wi ab In Vi vë	rite about yourself. In the first paragraph, describe something pout your past. In the second paragraph, write about your life now. the third paragraph, write about your future. If ve ban thân. Trong đoạn dầu, miêu tả gì đó về quá khứ của bạn. Tro cuộc sống hiện tại của bạn. Trong đoạn cuối, viết về tương lai của bạn tample:	ng doạ
Wi ab In Vi vë	rite about yourself. In the first paragraph, describe something pout your past. In the second paragraph, write about your life now. the third paragraph, write about your future. If you ban thân. Trong doan dâu, miêu tả gì đó về quá khứ của bạn. Tro cuộc sống hiện tại của bạn. Trong doạn cuối, viết về tương lại của bạn tample: used to live in a very quiet place used to live in a very quiet place Now. live in a big city. My job is	ng doa
Wi ab In Vi vë	rite about yourself. In the first paragraph, describe something pout your past. In the second paragraph, write about your life now. the third paragraph, write about your future. If ve ban thân. Trong đoạn dầu, miêu tả gì đó về quá khứ của bạn. Tro cuộc sống hiện tại của bạn. Trong đoạn cuối, viết về tương lai của bạn tample:	ng doo

I don't like working on weekends!

Tôi không thích làm việc vào ngày nghỉ cuối tuần

Choose the correct responses. Chọn các cáu thích h	ор
1. A: I enjoy working in sales.	
B: Well, I can. Neither do I. So do I.	
2. A: I like working night shifts.	
B: Gee, I don't. Neither do I. Neither am I.	
3. A: I can't stand getting to work late.	
B: ■ I can't. ■ Neither can I. ■ Well, I do.	
4. A: I'm interested in using my language skills.	
B: So am I. Oh, I don't. Oh, I don't mind.	
Hoàn chỉnh các câu bằng các từ và cụm từ từ bảng kê. commute learn languages work on a computer meet deadlines work with a team	Dung dann dong tu
1. Teresa enjoys being a journalist. She has to write a news story by 4:00 P.M. every day, but she doesn't mind meeting deadlines	9 3 8 4 76.53
2. Ichiro is a word processor, but he hates	
4. Ellen works for a large company, but she's interested in	
5. Carl has to use Portuguese and Japanese at work, but he not very good at	e's Do
6. Cinda has to drive to work every day, but she doesn't like	e Assert

1. I'm happy to answer the phone. (mind) don't mind answering the phone.		using the words given.
don't mind answering the phone. 2. I can't make decisions quickly. (not good at) 3. I hate having to meet deadlines. (stand) 4. I don't enjoy working alone. (with a team) Complete these sentences about yourself. Use gerunds. Add other information if appropriate. On the job or at school 1. I like meeting people, but I'm a little shy. 2. I can't stand 3. I don't mind In my free time 4. I'm interested in 5. I'm not interested in At parties or in social situations 6. I'm good at 7. I'm not very good at Choose the correct words. 1. Sam doesn't smile or laugh a lot. He often looks worried about things. He is a very person. (serious/strange/strict) 2. You can trust Rose. If she says she's going to do something, she'll do it. She's very (hard-working/level-headed/reliable) 3. Joe isn't good at remembering things. Last week he missed an important business meeting again. He is so		1. I'm happy to answer the phone. (mind)
2. I can't make decisions quickly. (not good at) 3. I hate having to meet deadlines. (stand) 4. I don't enjoy working alone. (with a team) Complete these sentences about yourself. Use gerunds. Add other information if appropriate. On the job or at school 1. I like meeting people, but i'm a little shy. 2. I can't stand 3. I don't mind In my free time 4. I'm interested in 5. I'm not interested in At parties or in social situations 6. I'm good at 7. I'm not very good at Choose the correct words. 1. Sam doesn't smile or laugh a lot. He often looks worried about things. He is a very person. (serious/strange/strict) 2. You can trust Rose. If she says she's going to do something, she'll do it. She's very (hard-working/level-headed/reliable) 3. Joe isn't good at remembering things. Last week he missed an important business meeting again. He is so		I don't mind answering the phone
4. I don't enjoy working alone. (with a team) Complete these sentences about yourself. Use gerunds. Add other information if appropriate. On the job or at school 1. I like meeting people, but I'm a little shy. 2. I can't stand 3. I don't mind In my free time 4. I'm interested in 5. I'm not interested in At parties or in social situations 6. I'm good at 7. I'm not very good at Choose the correct words. 1. Sam doesn't smile or laugh a lot. He often looks worried about things. He is a very person. (serious/strange/strict) 2. You can trust Rose. If she says she's going to do something, she'll do it. She's very (hard-working/level-headed/reliable) 3. Joe isn't good at remembering things. Last week he missed an important business meeting again. He is so		2. I can't make decisions quickly. (not good at)
Complete these sentences about yourself. Use gerunds. Add other information if appropriate. On the job or at school 1. I like meeting people, but I'm a little shy 2. I can't stand 3. I don't mind In my free time 4. I'm interested in At parties or in social situations 6. I'm good at 7. I'm not very good at Choose the correct words. 1. Sam doesn't smile or laugh a lot. He often looks worried about things. He is a very person. (serious/strange/strict) 2. You can trust Rose. If she says she's going to do something, she'll do it. She's very (hard-working/level-headed/reliable) 3. Joe isn't good at remembering things. Last week he missed an important business meeting again. He is so		
Add other information if appropriate. On the job or at school 1. I like meeting people, but I'm a little shy. 2. I can't stand 3. I don't mind In my free time 4. I'm interested in 5. I'm not interested in At parties or in social situations 6. I'm good at 7. I'm not very good at Choose the correct words. 1. Sam doesn't smile or laugh a lot. He often looks worried about things. He is a very person. (serious/strange/strict) 2. You can trust Rose. If she says she's going to do something, she'll do it. She's very (hard-working/level-headed/reliable) 3. Joe isn't good at remembering things. Last week he missed an important business meeting again. He is so		
1. I like meeting people, but I'm a little shy. 2. I can't stand 3. I don't mind In my free time 4. I'm interested in 5. I'm not interested in At parties or in social situations 6. I'm good at 7. I'm not very good at Choose the correct words. 1. Sam doesn't smile or laugh a lot. He often looks worried about things. He is a very person. (serious/strange/strict) 2. You can trust Rose. If she says she's going to do something, she'll do it. She's very (hard-working/level-headed/reliable) 3. Joe isn't good at remembering things. Last week he missed an important business meeting again. He is so]	Complete these sentences about yourself, Use gerunds. Add other information if appropriate.
2. I can't stand 3. I don't mind In my free time 4. I'm interested in 5. I'm not interested in At parties or in social situations 6. I'm good at 7. I'm not very good at Choose the correct words. 1. Sam doesn't smile or laugh a lot. He often looks worried about things. He is a very person. (serious/strange/strict) 2. You can trust Rose. If she says she's going to do something, she'll do it. She's very (hard-working/level-headed/reliable) 3. Joe isn't good at remembering things. Last week he missed an important business meeting again. He is so		On the job or at school
2. I can't stand 3. I don't mind In my free time 4. I'm interested in 5. I'm not interested in At parties or in social situations 6. I'm good at 7. I'm not very good at Choose the correct words. 1. Sam doesn't smile or laugh a lot. He often looks worried about things. He is a very person. (serious/strange/strict) 2. You can trust Rose. If she says she's going to do something, she'll do it. She's very (hard-working/level-headed/reliable) 3. Joe isn't good at remembering things. Last week he missed an important business meeting again. He is so	İ	1. I like meeting people, but I'm a little shy
3. I don't mind In my free time 4. I'm interested in 5. I'm not interested in At parties or in social situations 6. I'm good at 7. I'm not very good at Choose the correct words. 1. Sam doesn't smile or laugh a lot. He often looks worried about things. He is a very person. (serious/strange/strict) 2. You can trust Rose. If she says she's going to do something, she'll do it. She's very (hard-working/level-headed/reliable) 3. Joe isn't good at remembering things. Last week he missed an important business meeting again. He is so		2. I can't stand
In my free time 4. I'm interested in 5. I'm not interested in At parties or in social situations 6. I'm good at 7. I'm not very good at Choose the correct words. 1. Sam doesn't smile or laugh a lot. He often looks worried about things. He is a very person. (serious/strange/strict) 2. You can trust Rose. If she says she's going to do something, she'll do it. She's very (hard-working/level-headed/reliable) 3. Joe isn't good at remembering things. Last week he missed an important business meeting again. He is so		3. I don't mind
4. I'm interested in 5. I'm not interested in At parties or in social situations 6. I'm good at 7. I'm not very good at 1. Sam doesn't smile or laugh a lot. He often looks worried about things. He is a very person. (serious/strange/strict) 2. You can trust Rose. If she says she's going to do something, she'll do it. She's very (hard-working/level-headed/reliable) 3. Joe isn't good at remembering things. Last week he missed an important business meeting again. He is so		
5. I'm not interested in At parties or in social situations 6. I'm good at 7. I'm not very good at Choose the correct words. 1. Sam doesn't smile or laugh a lot. He often looks worried about things. He is a very person. (serious/strange/strict) 2. You can trust Rose. If she says she's going to do something, she'll do it. She's very (hard-working/level-headed/reliable) 3. Joe isn't good at remembering things. Last week he missed an important business meeting again. He is so	İ	
At parties or in social situations 6. I'm good at 7. I'm not very good at Choose the correct words. 1. Sam doesn't smile or laugh a lot. He often looks worried about things. He is a very person. (serious/strange/strict) 2. You can trust Rose. If she says she's going to do something, she'll do it. She's very (hard-working/level-headed/reliable) 3. Joe isn't good at remembering things. Last week he missed an important business meeting again. He is so		5. I'm not interested in
6. I'm good at 7. I'm not very good at Choose the correct words. 1. Sam doesn't smile or laugh a lot. He often looks worried about things. He is a very person. (serious/strange/strict) 2. You can trust Rose. If she says she's going to do something, she'll do it. She's very (hard-working/level-headed/reliable) 3. Joe isn't good at remembering things. Last week he missed an important business meeting again. He is so		
7. I'm not very good at		
Choose the correct words. 1. Sam doesn't smile or laugh a lot. He often looks worried about things. He is a very person. (serious/strange/strict) 2. You can trust Rose. If she says she's going to do something, she'll do it. She's very (hard-working/level-headed/reliable) 3. Joe isn't good at remembering things. Last week he missed an important business meeting again. He is so		
Choose the correct words. 1. Sam doesn't smile or laugh a lot. He often looks worried about things. He is a very person. (serious/strange/strict) 2. You can trust Rose. If she says she's going to do something, she'll do it. She's very (hard-working/level-headed/reliable) 3. Joe isn't good at remembering things. Last week he missed an important business meeting again. He is so	ļ	. This not very good at
Choose the correct words. 1. Sam doesn't smile or laugh a lot. He often looks worried about things. He is a very person. (serious/strange/strict) 2. You can trust Rose. If she says she's going to do something, she'll do it. She's very (hard-working/level-headed/reliable) 3. Joe isn't good at remembering things. Last week he missed an important business meeting again. He is so	٦	
about things. He is a very person. (serious/strange/strict) 2. You can trust Rose. If she says she's going to do something, she'll do it. She's very (hard-working/level-headed/reliable) 3. Joe isn't good at remembering things. Last week he missed an important business meeting again. He is so		
about things. He is a very person. (serious/strange/strict) 2. You can trust Rose. If she says she's going to do something, she'll do it. She's very (hard-working/level-headed/reliable) 3. Joe isn't good at remembering things. Last week he missed an important business meeting again. He is so		1. Sam doesn't smile or laugh a lot. He often looks worried
(serious/strange/strict) 2. You can trust Rose. If she says she's going to do something, she'll do it. She's very (hard-working/level-headed/reliable) 3. Joe isn't good at remembering things. Last week he missed an important business meeting again. He is so		
she'll do it. She's very		(serious/strange/strict)
(hard-working/level-headed/reliable) 3. Joe isn't good at remembering things. Last week he missed an important business meeting again. He is so	:	2. You can trust Rose. If she says she's going to do something,
3. Joe isn't good at remembering things. Last week he missed an important business meeting again. He is so		she'll do it. She's very
business meeting again. He is so		
business meeting again. He is so	;	
		business meeting again. He is so

	on the Internet Việc làm trên Internet		
	e you ever looked for a job on the Internet? Wh vertised?	nat jobs have you	
Reac	I these job ads. Choose a job title from the box	for each ad.	
⊟ քեն	ght attendant	nalist	
1	INTERNET POSTE	ORRD	
	internet 18	thoard	
	and the second s		
n	•		
	Are you hard-working? Do you enjoy writing? Do you like learning about world news? This job is for you. Must be good at meeting deadlines. Some evening and weekend work.	No previous experience necessary, but applicant must have a driver's ficense. Successful applicant will also be punctual and reliable. Excellent position for someone who enjoys traveling.	
0	Must be well organized, energetic, able to make decisions quickly, and good with computers. Applicants must be level-headed and able to take responsibility for handling other people's money. No weekend work, but some evening work required.	Are you good at communicating with people and solving problems? Can you speak at least two foreign languages? Do you enjoy traveling abroad? Then this job might be for you.	

7

Read what these people say about themselves. Which job should they do? Which job should they avoid? Write two sentences, giving reasons for your answers. Use the phrases given and because.

Đọc những điều các người này nói về-bản thân. Họ nên làm công việc nào? Công việc nào họ nên tránh? Viết hai câu, nêu các lý do trong các câu trả lời của bạn. Dùng các cụm từ cho sẵn và becaus



I enjoy helping people, but I can't stand working nights and weekends. I want to be a nurse or a social worker.

1. (make a good/could never) Jim would make a good social worker because he enjoys helping people. He could never be a nurse because he can't stand working nights and weekends.

I really like doing things with my hands. I also enjoy working with wood. I don't enjoy working in the same place every day, and I hate being in noisy places. I think I'd like to be a factory worker or a carpenter.



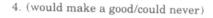




I'm good at explaining things and I really like children. I can't stand working long hours. I think I'd like to be a doctor or a teacher.

3. (make a good/would make a bad) -

I'm really interested in meeting people, and I enjoy wearing different clothes every day. I'm not so good at organizing my time, and I can't stand computers. I might become a model or an accountant.





I'm really good at selling things. I also love helping people. But I'm not so good at solving problems. I think I'd like to be a salesperson or a detective.

Must be well organized, energetic, able to

5. (could be/wouldn't make a good)

Larry

8 Add a or an in the correct places.

when I talk to him.

Thèm a hoặc an vào vị trí thích họp

- Jerry could never be nurse or teacher
 because he is very bad-tempered and
 impatient with people. On the other hand,
 he's efficient and reliable person. So he
 would make good bookkeeper or accountant.
- Christine would make terrible lawyer or executive.
 She isn't good at making decisions. On the other hand, she'd make excellent actress or artist because she's very creative and funny.



□ boring ☑ disorganized			
efficient/ <u>disorgal</u>	nized	5. le	vel-headed/
friendly/		6. ра	tient/
hard-working/		7. qu	det '
. interesting/		8. reliable/	
Gomplete the ser			erson. She really
enjoys meeting no			
			people. 1 lik
having reliable co			
8. Becky is very 🔔	·	On	e day she's happy an
the next day she's	s sad.		

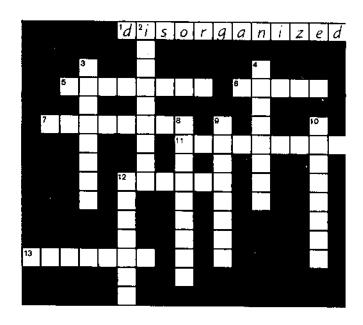
10

Use these words to complete the crossword puzzle.

Dùng các từ sau để hoàn chỉnh bảng đố chữ

Across

- Amy should not be an accountant because she's very ______. She can never find the information she needs.
- 5 I always do good work and meet my deadlines. My boss never has to worry because I'm ______
- 6 Ed would make a great nurse because he's so —— headed. He never gets anxious when things go wrong.
- 7 Jack writes great children's stories. He's very ____ and always thinks of new ideas.
- 11 A good lawyer has to remember facts. Jerry is a terrible lawyer because he's very _____.



- 12 My favorite teacher at school was Mrs. Matthews. She was pretty _____but we had a lot of fun, too.
- 13 Laura is very hard-____. She works ten hours a day, six days a week.

Down

- 2 Dawn is a terrible social worker because she's very _____. She can't stand waiting for other people.
- 3 My mother was very _____ . She gave me \$500 for my birthday.
- 4 Sam is very bad- ___ and moody. He gets angry at unimportant things.
- 8 June's secretary is very _____. She types twice as fast as most secretaries, and she never wastes time.
- 9 I can't stand my boss. She complains about everything I do. She's so _____ .
- 10 Larry arrives on time every day, even when there's a terrible traffic jam. He's always ______.
- 12 Martha is very _____ . She does odd things. She often gets up in the middle of the night and does her chores.



compose design

It's really worth seeing!

Nơi đó thật đáng tham quan

Complete these sentences. Use the passive form of the verbs in the list.

discover

Hoàn chỉnh các câu sau. Dùng dạng bị động của các động từ trong bảng kế

paint

☐ write

was designed by the architect	
I. M. Pei in the 1980s.	
2. The play Romeo and Juliet —————	
by William Shakespeare in the 1590s.	
3. The telephone by Alexander	
Graham Bell in 1876.	- N N
4. The picture Sunflowers by	
Vincent van Gogh in 1888.	
5. Penicillin by	
Sir Alexander Fleming in 1929.	
6. The music for the film West Side Story	· (\)
by Leonard Bernstein in 1957.	china building
	66
Of the state of the same into the same into	
Change these active sentences into the passive. Đổi các câu chủ động sau thành dang bị động	
1. Agatha Christie wrote many famous mysteries.	
Many famous mysteries were written by Agatha Christie.	
ITIMITY IMITIONS ITTYSCETICS THEIR THIRDER DI FINGUETO STITISCIE.	
2. Mary Shelley wrote the novel Frankenstein. ———————————————————————————————————	hostU mat tendle
2. Mary Shelley wrote the novel Frankenstein.	naziU mat nangia.
	ty.
Mary Shelley wrote the novel Frankenstein. Frank Lloyd Wright designed the Guggenheim Museum in New York Ci	ty.
2. Mary Shelley wrote the novel Frankenstein.	ty.

Write sentences about each landmark. Use the passive.
Viết các câu về mỗi công trình nổi tiếng sau. Dùng dạng bị động

	JU 110.			
Big Ben	Noi e 1 Ve	3 the pyramids		
	orm of		Van	
			offi	n en
	các dông	ing for all supply	ndi Marianon	. E Juselum
	2 the Eiffel Tower	CONTRACTOR OF THE PERSON NAMED IN CONTRA	e discover	Compos
				e 🖾 design
The state of the s		e in House S	c of China/buildin	
		and statistics of	s designed - C	
	6	builders	the ancient 5	is it in it.
+		date: ab	: the ancient Egypt out 2500 B.C.	tians
		A vd	m Shakespeare in	3. The telep
builder: Sir Benjamin Hall		5 Brasília		DI THE COLOR
date: 1859				
	The state of the s	mi i		
the Sydney Opera House			111	
The state of t	designer: Gustave E date: 1889	iffel		
		TO States And States		
		15 Table 10	wiii/	
al-le				
	account with the same			
Annual Control of Cont				(MA)
		Diangere		
designer: Jorn Utzon	date: 1973	date: the late 19	Costa and Oscar N 050s	liemeyer
o o kiila	n, Museum in New York	med the Guggephey	love Wright desig	2 Frank I

Big	Ben was built by Sir Benjamin Hall in 1859.
_	
	The Soviet Union taunched the first space sateflite in 1957.
	Dr. Christiaan Barnard performed the first human heart transplant in 1967.

London, England Mexico City, Mexico	☐ Madrid, Spain ☐ Manila, the Philippin☐ Ottawa, Canada ☐ Rome, Italy	egoni a bas Jasw
he name may come from	According to many historians, this city was omulus and was named after him. However, a Ruma, the old name for the Tiber River. This city was founded by the Spanish on the country and the city are named after by, Metz-xih-co, which means "in the center" in."	100 ph 110 ph 100
'timber." Good supplies	This city was made the capital in 1561. In the Arabic name Medshrid, meaning of timber were found in the area at the time. The Romans founded this city in the first	Ottawa, Canada Andreas Boundary
century B.C. In Roman t	imes, it was known as Londinium, which may	
where the plant indigo	Founded in 1571, this city takes its name ge that is widely spoken there. It means "a place is found" (may = "there is"; nila = "indigo"). This city became the capital of the country	
in the middle of the nin word <i>Adawa</i> in the Algo means "to trade."	eteenth century. Its name is taken from the onquin Indian language, which probably	shours consult of
Check (✓) True or Fal	se. For statements that are false, write the true info	ormation.
		True Fal
		DIOS 3

3. Ottawa was named after the activities of the Indians in that region.

4. London and Mexico City were given names about their location.

Which capital city? Thành phố thủ đô nào?

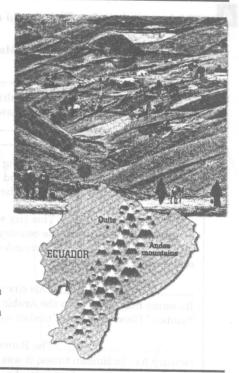
Add is or are where necessary.

Thêm is hoặc are vào chỗ cần thiết

Ecuador, situated on the equator in the northwest of South America. It made up of a coastal plain in the west and a tropical rain forest in the east. These two areas separated by the Andes mountains in the center of the country.

The economy based on oil and agricultural products. More oil produced in Ecuador than any other South American country except Venezuela. Bananas, coffee, and cocoa grown there. Many of these products exported. Hardwood also produced and exported.

The people are mostly of Indian origin. Several Indian languages spoken there, for example, Quechua. Spanish spoken in Ecuador, too. The currency called the sucre.



Complete the sentences. Use words from the list. Hoàn chỉnh các câu. Dùng các từ từ bảng kê

	☐ agricultural ☐ electronics ☐ p	eso wheat ourism
1.	France exportsagricultural p and cheese.	roducts such as milk, butter,
2.	2. The is the curren	cy that is used in Chile.
3.	3is a very important	nt industry in Italy.
	Millions of people visit every year.	
4.	4. Gold is an import	ant industry in
	South Africa.	
5.	5. Much of the world's	is grown in the
	Canadian prairies. It's used to make foods li	ke bread and pasta.
	6. A lot of meat, especially	, is exported from
7.	7. The industry was	developed in many Asian
	countries in the 1980s. Now, a lot of compute	ers and televisions are
	exported from countries like South Vorce	

	Complete this paragraph with is or are and the past participle of the verbs in the list.
E3-658	You will use some of the verbs more than once.
	Hoàn chỉnh đoạn sau với is hoặc are và phân từ quá khứ của các đồng từ trong bả

produce surround

call

divide

fill

find

know

locate

Hoàn chỉnh đoạn sau với is hoặc are và phân từ quá khứ của các động từ trong báng. Bạn sẽ dùng một số động từ hơn một lần

visit

<u>is known</u> for its beau excellent food. There are twen	rists visit California. California tiful scenery, warm climate, and ity national parks in California. They over thirty million people every year.	
Many world-famous museums	s there,	The second second
including the Getty Museum	in Malibu and the San Francisco	A STATE OF THE STA
Museum of Modern Art.		HOLLVIVOOR
The state	into two parts, called Northern	HÖTTA,400 D
California and Southern Cali	fornia. San Francisco and Yosemite	
National Park	in Northern California.	
	by water on three sid	es
and is a city with a beautiful	bay and several bridges. Its streets	always
	. On the north end of the bay is Napa	
	. South of San Francis	
that is famous for its comput	er industries; it	Silicon Valley. Many
computer industries	there. Los Angeles,	Hollywood, and
Disneyland	in Southern California. Sout	hern California
	ert areas, which are sometimes next to	

Rewrite these sentences. Find another way to say each sentence using the words given.

Viết lại các câu sau. Tìm cách khác để nói mỗi câu, dùng các từ được cho sẵn

1. Sir Paul McCartney wrote the song Mull of Kintyre. (written)

mountains. Southern California is one of the few places in the world where you can

- 2. I. M. Pei designed the new entrance to the Louvre in Paris. (by)
- 3. They speak German, French, and Italian in Switzerland. (spoken)
- 4. Malaysia has a prime minister. (governed)

ski in the morning and surf in the afternoon.

hỏi wh- và câu hỏi gián tiếp

1. Who The Color Purple was written by Alice Walker. 2. What Rice is produced in Thailand. 3. Where Acapulco is located in Mexico. 4. When Santiago, Chile, was founded in 1541. B Look at the answers. Write indirect questions. 1. Do you know The Golden Gate Bridge was completed in 1937. 2. Can you tell me Don Quivote was written by Miguel de Cervantes. 3. Do you know Antibiotics were first used in 1941. 4. Could you tell me The tea bag was invented by Joseph Kreiger in 1920. Complete the sentences. Use the passive of the words given. Hoàn chinh các câu. Dùng dang bị động của các từ được cho sắn 1804 The first steam locomotive was built (build) in Britain.	A I	Look at the answers. Write Wh-questions.	
The Color Purple was written by Alice Walker. 2. What Rice is produced in Thailand. 3. Where Acapulco is located in Mexico. 4. When Santiago, Chile, was founded in 1541. B Look at the answers. Write indirect questions. 1. Do you know The Golden Gate Bridge was completed in 1937. 2. Can you tell me Don Quixote was written by Miguel de Cervantes. 3. Do you know Antibiotics were first used in 1941. 4. Could you tell me The tea bag was invented by Joseph Kreiger in 1920. Complete the sentences. Use the passive of the words given. Hoàn chinh các câu. Dùng dang bị động của các từ được cho sắn early steam [ocomotive was built (build) in Britain. 1829 A speed record of 35 mph (48 kph) (establish) by a train in Britain (establish) by a train in Britain (establish) by a train in Britain (open) in London. 1869 The world's first underground railway (open) in London. 1869 The air brake (develop) by the (open) in Boston. 1868 The first U.S. subway system (open) in Boston. 1869 "Bullet train" service (introduce) in Japan. 1890 A speed of 320 mph (512 kph) (reach) by the (reach) by the (reach) by the (reach) by the	1. V	Vho	
Rice is produced in Thailand. 3. Where	T	he Color Purple was written by Alice Walker.	
3. Where			-
Acapulco is located in Mexico. 4. When		-	
Santiago, Chile, was founded in 1541. B Look at the answers. Write indirect questions. 1. Do you know			_
Santiago, Chile, was founded in 1541. B Look at the answers. Write indirect questions. 1. Do you know	4. V	When	
The Golden Gate Bridge was completed in 1937. 2. Can you tell me	S	antiago, Chile, was founded in 1541.	_
The Golden Gate Bridge was completed in 1937. 2. Can you tell me	В	Look at the answers. Write indirect questions.	
The Golden Gate Bridge was completed in 1937. 2. Can you tell me			
Don Quixote was written by Miguel de Ccrvantes. 3. Do you know		he Golden Gate Bridge was completed in 1937.	
3. Do you know Antibiotics were first used in 1941. 4. Could you tell me The toa bag was invented by Joseph Kreiger in 1920. Complete the sentences. Use the passive of the words given. Hoàn chính các câu. Dùng dang bi dóng của các từ được cho sắn 1804 The first steam locomotive was built (build) in Britain. 1829 A speed record of 35 mph (48 kph) (establish) by a train in Britain. 1857 Steel rails (use) for the first time in Britain. 1863 The world's first underground railway (open) in London. 1869 The air brake (develop) by the U.S. inventor George Westinghouse. This made high-speed train travel possible. 1898 The first U.S. subway system (open) in Boston. 1964 "Bullet train" service (introduce) in Japan. 1990 A speed of 320 mph (512 kph) (reach) by the French high-speed train (called "TGV").	2. C	an you tell me	_
Antibiotics were first used in 1941. 4. Could you tell me		_	
4. Could you tell me The tea bag was invented by Joseph Kreiger in 1920. Complete the sentences. Use the passive of the words given. Hoàn chính các câu. Dùng dang bị động của các từ được cho sắn 1804 The first steam locomotive was built (build) in Britain. 1829 A speed record of 35 mph (48 kph) (establish) by a train in Britain. 1857 Steel rails (use) for the first time in Britain. 1863 The world's first underground railway (open) in London. 1869 The air brake (develop) by the U.S. inventor George Westinghouse. This made high-speed train travel possible. 1898 The first U.S. subway system (open) in Boston. 1964 "Bullet train" service (introduce) in Japan. 1990 A speed of 320 mph (512 kph) (reach) by the French high-speed train (called "TGV").			-
Complete the sentences. Use the passive of the words given. Hoàn chính các câu. Dùng dang bị động của các từ được cho xắn 1804 The first steam locomotivewas built (build) in Britain. 1829 A speed record of 35 mph (48 kph)			
Hoàn chính các câu. Dùng dạng bị động của các từ được cho sắn 1804 The first steam locomotive			
The first steam locomotive	Т	ne tea bag was invented by Joseph Kreiger in 1920.	
A speed record of 35 mph (48 kph) (establish) by a train in Britain. Steel rails	Con	nplete the sentences. Use the passive of the words given.	
(establish) by a train in Britain. Steel rails	Con Hoe	nplete the sentences. Use the passive of the words given. àn chỉnh các câu. Dùng dạng bị động của các từ được cho sắn	
Steel rails	Con Hot 1804	nplete the sentences. Use the passive of the words given. àn chỉnh các câu. Dùng dạng bị động của các từ được cho sắn The first steam locomotive <u>was built</u> (build) in Britain.	
The world's first underground railway (open) in London. The air brake	Con Hot 1804	an chỉnh các câu. Dùng dạng bị động của các từ được cho sắn The first steam locomotive <u>was built</u> (build) in Britain. A speed record of 35 mph (48 kph)	
(open) in London. The air brake	Con Hoo 1804	inplete the sentences. Use the passive of the words given. an chinh các câu. Dùng dạng bị động của các từ được cho sắn The first steam locomotivewas built (build) in Britain. A speed record of 35 mph (48 kph) (establish) by a train in Britain.	
The air brake	Con Hotel 1804 1829	inplete the sentences. Use the passive of the words given. àn chỉnh các câu. Dùng dạng bị động của các từ được cho sắn The first steam locomotive <u>was built</u> (build) in Britain. A speed record of 35 mph (48 kph)	
U.S. inventor George Westinghouse. This made high-speed train travel possible. 1898 The first U.S. subway system	Con Hotel 1804 1829	A speed record of 35 mph (48 kph) (establish) by a train in Britain. Steel rails (use) for the first time in Britain.	
travel possible. 1898 The first U.S. subway system	T Con Hoo 1804 1829 1857 1863	A speed record of 35 mph (48 kph) (establish) by a train in Britain. Steel rails	
The first U.S. subway system	T Con Hoo 1804 1829 1857 1863	A speed record of 35 mph (48 kph) (establish) by a train in Britain. The world's first underground railway (open) in London. The passive of the words given. (develop) by the	
"Bullet train" service	T Con Hoo 1804 1829 1857 1863	inplete the sentences. Use the passive of the words given. An chinh các câu. Dùng dạng bị động của các từ được cho sắn The first steam locomotivewas built (build) in Britain. A speed record of 35 mph (48 kph) (establish) by a train in Britain. Steel rails (use) for the first time in Britain. The world's first underground railway (open) in London. The air brake (develop) by the U.S. inventor George Westinghouse. This made high-speed train	
1990 A speed of 320 mph (512 kph) (reach) by the French high-speed train (called "TGV").	T Con Hotel 1804 1829 1857 1863	inplete the sentences. Use the passive of the words given. an chinh các câu. Dùng dạng bị động của các từ được cho sắn The first steam locomotivewas built (build) in Britain. A speed record of 35 mph (48 kph) (establish) by a train in Britain. Steel rails (use) for the first time in Britain. The world's first underground railway (open) in London. The air brake (develop) by the U.S. inventor George Westinghouse. This made high-speed train travel possible.	locomotive
French high-speed train (called "TGV").	T Con Hoo 1804 1829 1857 1863 1869	inplete the sentences. Use the passive of the words given. An chinh các câu. Dùng dạng bị động của các từ được cho sắn The first steam locomotive was built (build) in Britain. A speed record of 35 mph (48 kph) (establish) by a train in Britain. Steel rails (use) for the first time in Britain. The world's first underground railway (open) in London. The air brake (develop) by the U.S. inventor George Westinghouse. This made high-speed train travel possible. The first U.S. subway system (open) in Boston	locomotive
	T Con Hotel 1804 1829 1857 1863 1869 1898 1964	inplete the sentences. Use the passive of the words given. An chinh các câu. Dùng dạng bị động của các từ được cho sắn The first steam locomotive	iocomotive
(COSI) IN Several countries. These trains	T Con Hotel 1804 1829 1857 1863 1869 1898 1964	inplete the sentences. Use the passive of the words given. An chinh các câu. Dùng dạng bị động của các từ được cho sắn The first steam locomotive was built (build) in Britain. A speed record of 35 mph (48 kph) (establish) by a train in Britain. Steel rails (use) for the first time in Britain. The world's first underground railway (open) in London. The air brake (develop) by the U.S. inventor George Westinghouse. This made high-speed train travel possible. The first U.S. subway system (open) in Boston "Bullet train" service (introduce) in Jaja A speed of 320 mph (512 kph) (reach) by the	iocomotive
use magnets to lift them above the ground.	T Con Hoo 1804 1829 1857 1863 1869 1990	inplete the sentences. Use the passive of the words given. An chinh các câu. Dùng dạng bị động của các từ được cho sắn The first steam locomotive	n. pan.



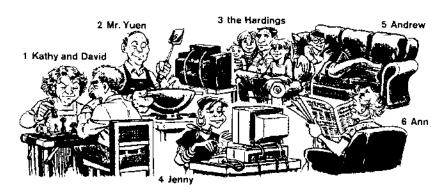
6. At this time yesterday,

12 It's been a long time!

Đã lâu lắm rồi!

A fire alarm went off in an apartment building last night. Describe what these people were doing then. Use the past continuous.

Tối hôm qua chương báo hỏa hoạn reo vang trong một tòa nhà chung cư. Miêu tả lúc đó những người này đang làm gì. Dùng thì quá khứ tiếp diễn.



1. Natny <u>ana Davia weri</u>	<u>e playing chess </u>
2	
	s yesterday. Where were you, and what were you doing?
	của bạn ngày hóm qua. Bạn đã ở đầu và bạn đã đang làm gì?
	th friends. We were having breakfast at
a coffee shop before cl	lass.
2. At 11:00 in the morning	g,
<u> </u>	
3. At noon,	
4. In the afternoon,	
	
o. At 10:00 last night,	
a coffee shop before cl 2. At 11:00 in the morning 3. At noon, 4. In the afternoon,	g.

Complete the conversation with the correct words or phrases. Hoàn chỉnh bài đàm thoại bằng các từ hoặc cum từ thích hợp

Carl: How did you get your first job, Anita? Anita: Well, I _____ got a summer job in a department store (got/was getting) _____ at the university. (studied/was studying) Carl: No, I mean your first full-time job. ---- during the Anita: But that is how I got my first full-time job. I ______ (worked/was working) _____ me a job (offered/was offering) summer when the manager _ after graduation. Carl: Wow. That's lucky. Did you like the job? Anita: Well, I did at first, but then things changed. I -(did/was doing) --- me any responsibility. thing every day, but they -(didn't give/weren't giving) _____ really bored when another company (got/was getting)

4

Look at the pictures and complete these sentences.

_____ me to work for them.

Xem các tranh và hoàn chỉnh các câu sau

(asked/was asking)



1. I was having lots of problems with my boyfriend when he asked me to marry him.



3. My car was giving me a lot of trouble, so



2. I met a really nice guy last week while



4. Dinner arrived while

Work hard, play hard Làm đến cùng, chơi đến cùng

A What do you know about Bill Gates?

B Read the article.

ill Gates III is a very important person in the computer industry. He has been chief executive officer of Microsoft Corporation for several years. He is also the richest person in the United States. How did he do it?

He learned a lot from his parents. While Bill was going to school, his father went to college, got a degree, and became a successful lawyer. From this, Bill learned that you have to work hard if you want something. His mother was a very busy teacher, but she also enjoyed going to parties. From this, he learned something else: If you want to work hard and play hard, you have to make a schedule.

When Bill was young, he spent a lot of time alone. While most of his friends were playing,



Bill read all of the World Book Encyclopedia and finished it when he was 8 years old.

Bill's childhood was not all work, however. He used to play a lot of sports – swimming, water-skiing, tennis. He was very serious about sports. He loved winning and he hated losing. When Bill got older, he spent more and more time working – and playing – on a computer.

Before he was 20, Bill developed the world's first computer language for the personal computer. Once when he was thinking about the future, he

realized something important. He thought that every home was going to have a computer, and every computer would need software – his software. He said, "I'm going to make my first million dollars on software by the time I'm 25." And he did!

 ${f C}$ Check $({\mbox{\checkmark}})$ True or False. For statements that are false, write the true information.

		True .	False
1.	Bill Gates learned that you have to play hard for what you want.	blide a saw 1	
2.	He used to read a lot when he was young.		
3.	He was happy to lose a game of tennis.	stat was Day	
4.	He enjoyed playing games on the computer.		
5.	He wasn't making much money when he was 25 years old.		ē o

How long has it been? Đã bao lâu rồi?

A Write sentences. Use the present perfect continuous and for or since.

Grammar note: for and since

Use for to describe a period of time in the past.

Linda has been living in Seattle for three months.

I haven't been working there for very long.

Use since to describe a point of time in the past.

Linda has been living in Seattle since she changed jobs.

I haven't been working there since last summer.



going to carties. I com

to make a sched

- Jessica/work/model/3 years
 Jessica has been working as a model for three years.
- 2. Ruth and Peter/go/graduate school/August
- 3. Jim/study/Chinese/a year
- 4. Maria/not teach/she had a baby
- 5. Cindy/not live/Los Angeles/very long
- 6. Felix and Anna/travel/South America/six weeks
- **B** Write sentences about yourself. Use the phrases and clauses in the list or phrases and clauses of your own, and *for* or *since*.

I was a child
eighteen months
a few weeks

I was in high school
1996
ages

- 1. I've been interested in movies since I was a child. Stone to smog a seal of young sow set .
- 3.
- 5. He wasn't making thuch money when he was 25 years aid.
- 6. _____

Look at the answers. Write the questions. Xem câu trả lời, Viết các câu hỏi

Chris: What have you been doing lately? Alex: I've been working a lot and trying to stay in shape. Chris: _____ Alex: No, I haven't been jogging. I've been playing tennis in the evenings with friends. Chris: Really? Alex: No, I've been losing most of the games. But it's fun. How about you? Chris: No, I haven't been getting any exercise. I've been working long hours. Alex: ----Chris: Yes, I've been working weekends. I've been working Saturday mornings. Alex: Well, why don't we play a game of tennis on Saturday afternoon? It's great exercise!

Choose the correct responses. Chon các câu đáp thích hợp

- 1. A: When I was a kid, I lived in New Zealand. 3. A: I was a teenager when I got my first job.
 - Wow! Tell me more.
 - Oh, have you?
 - So have I.
- 2. A: I haven't been ice-skating for ages.

- Why were you?
- Wow! I have, too.
- Neither have I.

- Really? Where do you work?
- Really? That's interesting.
- For five years.
- 4. A: I haven't seen you for a long time.

- In five years.
- Not since we graduated.
- Gee. I have no idea.

p	m	۹	в
۲.		П	2
L	۳,		
•	ч	ч	

Complete the answers to the questions. Use the past continuous or the present perfect continuous of the verbs given.

Hoàn chỉnh các câu trả lời cho thích hợp với các câu hỏi. Dùng thì quá khứ tiếp diễn hoặc hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn của các động từ được cho sẵn

- 1. A: Have you been working here for long?
 - B: No, I <u>haven't been working</u> (work) here for very long only since January.
- 2. A: Were you living in Europe before you moved here?
 - B: No, I _____ (live) in Korea.
- 3. A: How long have you been studying English?
 - B: I _____ (study) it for about a year.
- 4. A: What were you doing before you went back to school?
 - B: I (sell) real estate. Study and greater
- 5. A: What have you been doing since I last saw you?
 - B: I (travel) around Europe.

10

Rewrite these sentences. Find another way to say each sentence using the words given. Viết lại những câu này. Tìm cách khác để nối mỗi câu, dùng các động từ được cho sẵn



 I was getting dressed when my date arrived. (while)

While I was getting dressed, my date arrived.

- 2. He was about 15 when he started saving up for a world trip. (adolescent)
- 3. I was commuting to work when I lived out of town. (suburbs)
- 4. I've had a part-time job since last year. (a year)
- I've been spending too much money lately. (not save enough)
- 6. I haven't seen you for a long time. (ages)



A terrific book, but a terrible movie!

Một cuốn sách tuyệt vời, nhưng một bô phim quá dở!

Choose the correct words to complete these movie reviews, Chon các từ thích hợp để hoàn chỉnh các bài điểm phim sau

The President The Patient Nathan Kane's movie The President is based on a You will be at how good The (surprised/surprising) true story about the life of a president. But don't Patient is. It is one of the most watch this movie if you're ____interested in (fascinated/fascinating) (interested/interesting) films I've ever seen. It's a romantic story about four history. It isn't all true. However, Kane makes the film

people during the Second World War. All the actors , and the editing is outstanding. (excited/exciting) are fantastic. You won't be . (bored/boring) I was also by the photography,

(amazed/amazing) one second. A must-see which certainly deserves to win an Oscar.

Choose the correct words.

fantastic) things.

Chon các từ thích hợp

- 1. Independence Day was a marvelous (absurd/disgusting/marvelous) movie, and I'd love to see it a second time.
- 2. I think Spielberg's movie The Lost World is as good as Jurassic Park. In fact, it's really

(terrible/terrific/boring). 3. The dogs were really great in 101 Dalmations.

I don't know how they made them do such -- (dreadful/dumb/

4. Uma Thurman is (horrible/ridiculous/wonderful) in Pulp Fiction. I think she's a really great actress.

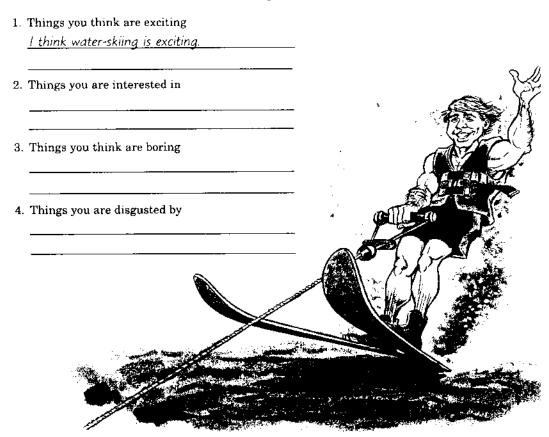


3 Choose the correct responses. Chon các câu đáp thích hợp

- 1. A: I think that Tom Cruise is very good-looking.
 - B: Oh, 1 do, too.
 - Oh, I do, too.
 - I don't like him, either.
- 2. A: His new movie is the dumbest movie I've ever seen.
 - B: _
 - Yeah, I liked it, too.
 - I didn't like it, either.
- 3. A: It's weird that they don't show movie classics on TV. I really like them.
 - B: _
 - I know. It's really wonderful.
 - I know. It's strange.

- 4. A: I think Glenn Close is an outstanding actress.
 - Yeah, she's horrible.
 - Yeah, she's excellent.
- 5. A: The movie we saw last night was ridiculous.
 - B: _
 - Yes, I agree. It was exciting.
 - Well, I thought it was pretty good.

4 Write two sentences for each of these categories. Viết hai câu cho mỗi loại sau



Classics on video

Các tác phẩm kinh điển qua băng hình video

A What are your two favorite classic movies? Why do you like them?

B Read about these videos for rent. Match the kind of movie with the correct video description.

a horror film _____ a romance _____ a musical

a science fiction film



a scene from the movie 2001: A Space Odysse

Dr. Jekyll and Mr. Hyde (1841)

This is a movie that keeps you glued to your seat! Spencer Tracy stars in this terrifying story about a scientist who has a split personality. This 1941 classic also stars Lana Turner and Ingrid Bergman.

The Wizard of Oz (1839)

For the child in all of us. Watch the magic of Dorothy's adventures in the Land of Oz. Meet the Scarecrow, the Tin Man, and the Cowardly Lion. The film stars Judy Garland. She sings some of the greatest songs in movie history. This is a movie that's out of this world.

2001: A Space Udyssey (1968)

Directed by Stanley Kubrick, this is a story about two astronauts who are on a fatal mission in outer space. But the ship's computer, HAL, steals the show.

The African Queen (1951)

One of the greatest love stories of all time stars Katherine Hepburn and Humphrey Bogart, Hepburn is very cool with Bogart through most of the film, but she finally falls in love with him at the end.

C Write the name of the movie described.

1. a story about two people who fall in love:

2. a good movie for children to see: _____

3. so interesting you can't stop watching it:

4. has a fascinating character who is loved by the audience:

6	Tell me more!	Cho tôi biết nhiều hơn	
---	---------------	------------------------	--

A Rewrite these sentences. Use who or which.

1. Star Wars is a movie that has been very successful for a long time.

Star Wars is a movie which has been very successful for a long time.

2. Shine is a movie that is based on a true story about an Australian pianist.

3. Geoffrey Rush is the actor that won an award for his role in the movie Shine.

4. Mae West is an actress that was known for her roles in silent films.

5. The Last Emperor is a great movie that won a lot of awards.

6. Ginger Rogers was an actress and dancer that made a lot of films about fifty years ago.

B Write two sentences like those in part A about movies or entertainers. Use who or which.

Complete the sentences. Use that for things and who for people.

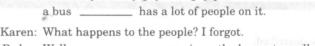
Hoàn chỉnh các câu. Dùng thát đối với vật và who đối với người

Karen: Which one is Keanu Reeves?

Pedro: Oh, you know him. He's the one who starred in Speed.

Karen: Yeah, I remember. That's one movie ______ was really exciting. We were glued to our seats.

Pedro: Right. Reeves is a detective ______ is hunted by a crazy guy. The guy puts a bomb on a bus ______ has a lot of people on it.



Pedro: Well, a woman _____ is on the bus gets really frightened and . . .

Karen: Oh, now I remember: there's the bus _____ can't stop, the _____ girl ____ gets hurt, the man _____ gets caught, and the couple _____ fall in love.

Pedro: Yeah! What a great movie! bus skt ad bevol si odw astasada gnits want a sad &



Different kinds of movies Co	ác loại phim ảnh khác nhau 🌊	
A Write definitions for these di Use relative clauses and the phi		
☐ has cowboys in it ☐ is scary ☐ has lots of excitement ☐ has songs ☐ makes you laugh ☐ tells you about animals or plants ☐ has a love story		
1. An action movie is a movie	that has lots of excitement.	
2. A romance		
3. A comedy		
6. A musical	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
7. A nature film		- MI & CO
Write about each one and give	A is your favorite? your least favorite' reasons for your opinions. vorite Kind of Movie	
•	novies. They are movies that make	
me forget about all	•	
· ·	Favorite Kind of Movie novies because I think they are	
	lly, the story has characters who	
are not very scary.	y,	
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	

THE OWNER OF THE OWNER,	

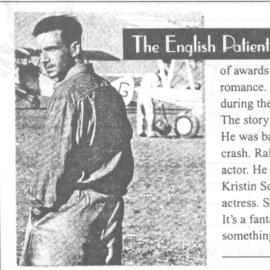
Complete these sentences. Use words in the box. Hoàn chỉnh các câu sau. Dùng các từ trong khung

☐ character ☐ special effects ☐ composer ☐ photography	
1. I thought the	in Star Wars were terrific.
They were well made and exciting to wat	ch. Shas lots of excitement
2. I think the	in Dances with Wolves is marvelous.
There are lots of scenes with wild animal	s in the beautiful American West.
3. Harrison Ford plays the main	in plants in
Raiders of the Lost Ark.	
4. I've forgotten the name of the	who
wrote the music for the film Ransom.	

10

Rewrite this movie review. Where possible, join sentences with who, that, or which.

Viết lai bài điểm phim này. Nếu có thể, nối các câu với who, that hoặc which



is a fascinating

of awards at the Oscars. It's a romance. It takes place in Italy during the Second World War.
The story is about a patient.
He was badly burned in a plane crash. Ralph Fiennes is the actor. He plays the patient.
Kristin Scott Thomas is the actress. She plays his girlfriend.
It's a fantastic movie. It has something for everyone.

The English Patient is a fascinating movie that won lots of awards at the Oscars. . . .



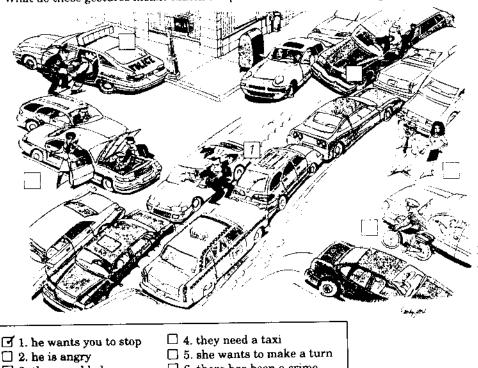
So that's what it means!

Thì ra nghĩa là vậy!

What does that mean?

Điều bộ đó có nghĩa gì?

A What do these gestures mean? Match the phrases in the box with the gestures.



	₫	1.	hе	wants	you	to	stop
--	---	----	----	-------	-----	----	------

- 3. they need help
- 6. there has been a crime

B Write a sentence about each situation in part A using these phrases:

It could mean Maybe it means	It might mean Perhaps it means	It must mean It probably means
1. It probably means h	he wants you to stop.	
2		
3		
Į	<u> </u>	<u> </u>
5,		
6		

Emotions Câm xúc			
A Do these words describe power of the Por N next to each words		tive emotions?	
annoyed <u>N</u> disgusted		excited	interested
confused embarras			
B Complete the sentences. C	hoose the corre	ect form of the wor	ds in the box.
☐ amazed/amazing ☐ disgusted/disgusting	embarras	sed/embarrassing confusing	frightened/frighteni
1. I couldn't get into the park	ing space and e	everyone was	- E)
looking at me. I was so	embarrasse	<u>ed</u> .	
2. That sign is really	<u>.</u>	 .	
What does it mean? It's no	t clear at all.	å	
3. I'm	I passed		
my test, and I didn't even	study for it.		GA LETTER V
4. The food in that restauran	t on the highwa	ay is	THE WAY
	I'll never eat t	here again!	
5. The new horror movie is p	retty scary. Son	ne of the	
scenes are really		_:	
	,		
			C. J. Alexander
What would you say in eac			
Bạn sẽ nói gì trong mỗi tì.	nn nuong? D	ung cac cau troi	ng khung
☐ I'm scared. ☐ That	sounds crazy.	☑ I give up.	Pay attention.
You're losing a game of che <u>I give up.</u>	ess.		_
2. You want to show your kid	s how to build	a tree house.	
3. A friend asks you to go to a	horror movie	hut vou don't like	horror films
		but jou don't like	ilottor mino,

Proverbs

Tuc ngữ

A Match the proverbs with their meanings.

	Prover	BS	
 Don't look a gift horse in the A bird in the hand is worth An apple a day keeps the distriction 	two in the bush. 5.	There are plenty of fish in the sea. If at first you don't succeed, try, try, The proof of the pudding is in the ear	_
	Meanin	IGS	
If you eat the right fo be healthy.	od, you will	You can't be sure about somethi until you try it.	nģ
If someone gives you you should enjoy it a questions about it.	-	 Practice makes perfect, so you sh stop trying. The harder you try, the you'll be able to get what you want 	nore
Don't worry if you lo who doesn't return y You can always find	our love.	 If you have something, keep it. I take the chance of losing it in or get something better. 	

- B What would you say? Choose a proverb for each situation.
- 1. A: Oh, yuck. Those fried brains look disgusting.
 - B: Try them. They're delicious.
 - A: Really? Oh, they are good. I'm shocked.
 - B: See. ____
- 2. A: Hey, what happened? You look so sad.
 - B: I am. You know that guy I was dating. Well, last night he said he didn't want to see me anymore.
 - A: Well, don't be too worried. You'll find someone else.
 - B: Thanks a lot. That really helps!
- 3. A: You know, the person who sits next to me in class gave me these flowers for my birthday. I'm amazed. I don't even know his name. What does that mean?
 - B: ______

That was really nice. Just say thank you and don't worry.

- C What do you think these proverbs mean?
- 1. Don't cry over spilled milk.

It could mean _____

2. Don't judge a book by its cover.

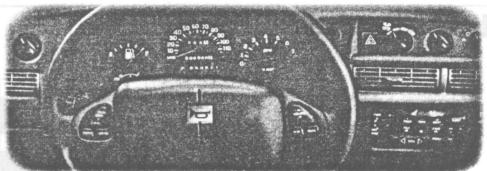
Maybe it means _____

Complete the sentences. Use the words and phrases in the box. Use each word or phrase only once.

Hoàn chỉnh các câu. Dùng các từ và cụm từ trong khung. Dùng mỗi từ hoặc cụm từ chỉ một lần

1.	Father:	Well, first you have to
		start the car.
	Son:	Oh, yeah. I almost forgot.
2.	Father:	OK. Now remember,
		go above the speed limit.
	Son:	I know.
3	. Son:	What does that sign mean?
		That means you turn left.
	Son:	OK.
	D 43	
4	. Father:	See that sign? It means you turn left or
		you go straight.
		Let's turn left, but be careful.
	Son:	OK. This is great, Dad. It's easy.
_		
J	. ramer.	Hey, stop! Didn't you see that sign? It means you come to a complete stop.
	Son	What sign? I don't see any sign.
		That's a problem!
	5	
		The state of the s

- Rewrite these sentences. Find another way to say each sentence using the words given. Viết lại các câu sau. Tìm cách khác để nói mỗi câu dùng các từ được cho sẵn
 - 1. Maybe it means you're not allowed to fish here. (may)
 - 2. You can't light a fire here. (allowed)
 - 3. Perhaps that sign means you're not allowed to swim here. (might)
 - 4. I think that sign means you can get food here. (probably)
 - 7 Complete the conversation. Use each phrase from the list only once. Hoàn chỉnh bài đàm thoại, dùng mỗi cụm từ từ bảng kê chỉ một lần



	So, tell me what all these signs mean, Kanya. Well, this one is the fan. You can use it heat or cool your car.
Tony:	And what about this one?
Kanya:	That's your horn. You know, in the city,
	use it after midnight.
Tony:	OK. I'll try to remember that. And what does this one mean?
Kanya:	I'm not sure the hazard light.
	When your car breaks down, you turn it on.
Tony:	What's this mean? omos bad off solody nonlesseed and yillast asset I
Kanya:	Oh, that's your fuel light. A think of sms forces subset add sometimes with the light of the same of the light of the ligh
	gas when the light is on? I see all gangal see we elicated the Land factor if it
Tony:	So, how do you like my new car?
Kanya:	Like it? I love it! let me drive it.
Tony:	Uh, I don't think so.

amazing	annoying	embarrassing	shocking	
	p during class thi er woke me up.		: Everyone in my office was just f	
			You speak English very well.	
2. A: I went to t	he movies last nig		: Thank you. I learned it three	
	sat behind me ta		months ago.	
_	entire movie.		: That's	
Crossword puz	zie: Adjectives	Bảng đố ch	ıữ: Tính từ	
Use these words	to complete the c	rossword puzzle.		
annoyed bored confused	disgusted excited fascinated	☐ frightened ☐ interested ☐ worried	'fr'ightene	d
Across	····			
1 Someone know	eked loudly on my , but I think g silly.		6	
4 I'm going to E wait to go. I'n	urope for my vac 1 so about		7	
	about the tes and I know I'm g	t tomorrow. I haven't soing to fail.		
	oy all the food in t wful that I didn't	the college cafeteria. have any lunch.	8	
8 I'm wi	th this program. (Can I turn the TV off	?	
Down				
		cation photos. He had mountains in South		
	_ in the clothes h er clothes store.	e was trying to sell n	ne, so I	
3 I was pretty party three h		when she arrived at	my birthday	

5 What does that sign mean? I'm completely ____ by it.



What would you do?

A What would you do? Check (/) your answers. If you would do something else, write your suggestion next to "other." 1. A bank truck overturns and millions of dollar bills fall out. collect the money and keep it collect the money and return it other: 2. Someone climbs through your neighbor's window. call the police ring the doorbell other: 3. Your boss makes things difficult for you at work. talk to your boss look for another job other: 4. A friend sounds unhappy on the phone. ask your friend if he or she has a problem tell lots of jokes to make your friend laugh other: B Write about what you would do in the situations in part A. Use phrases from the box. I'd I might I guess I'd probably I think I'd		Bạn sẽ làm g
something else, write your suggestion next to "other." 1. A bank truck overturns and millions of dollar bills fall out. collect the money and keep it collect the money and return it other: 2. Someone climbs through your neighbor's window. call the police ring the doorbell other: 3. Your boss makes things difficult for you at work. talk to your boss look for another job other: 4. A friend sounds unhappy on the phone. ask your friend if he or she has a problem tell lots of jokes to make your friend laugh other: Write about what you would do in the situations in part A. Use phrases from the box. I might I guess	think l'd Tôi nghĩ tới sẽ	-
 collect the money and keep it collect the money and return it other: 2. Someone climbs through your neighbor's window. call the police ring the doorbell other: 3. Your boss makes things difficult for you at work. talk to your boss look for another job other: 4. A friend sounds unhappy on the phone. ask your friend if he or she has a problem tell lots of jokes to make your friend laugh other: B Write about what you would do in the situations in part A. Use phrases from the box. I might I guess 		
□ call the police □ ring the doorbell □ other: 3. Your boss makes things difficult for you at work. □ talk to your boss □ look for another job □ other: 4. A friend sounds unhappy on the phone. □ ask your friend if he or she has a problem □ tell lots of jokes to make your friend laugh □ other: B Write about what you would do in the situations in part A. Use phrases from the box. I'd I might I guess	collect the money and keep itcollect the money and return it	a fall out.
□ talk to your boss □ look for another job □ other: 4. A friend sounds unhappy on the phone. □ ask your friend if he or she has a problem □ tell lots of jokes to make your friend laugh □ other: □ Write about what you would do in the situations in part A. Use phrases from the box. I'd I might I guess	☐ call the police ☐ ring the doorbell	
□ ask your friend if he or she has a problem □ tell lots of jokes to make your friend laugh □ other: ■ B Write about what you would do in the situations in part A. Use phrases from the box. I'd I might I guess	□ talk to your boss □ look for another job	
Use phrases from the box. I'd I might I guess	 □ ask your friend if he or she has a problem □ tell lots of jokes to make your friend laugh 	
I'd I might I guess I'd probably I think I'd		in part A.
1		

2	Complete these sentences with information about yourself.
	Hoàn chỉnh các câu sau bằng thông tin ở bản thân
	If a relative asked to borrow some money, I'd
	2. If I had three wishes,
	3. If I could have any job I wanted,
	4. If I had a month to live,
	5. If I could change one thing about myself,
3	Choose the correct words. Chọn các từ thích hợp
	1. When I went back to the parking lot, I tried to get into someone else's car by mistake (by/in/with)
	2. If I saw a friend cheating on an exam, I know exactly what I'd do. I'd go to the teacher. (actually/probably/straight)
	3. I'm in a difficult at work. I don't (divorce/predicament/problem)
	know whether to talk to my boss about it or just quit.
	4. If I saw someone in a store, (disagreeing/shopping)
	I'd tell the store detective immediately.
	5. I just won \$20,000 in the lottery. I think I'll it. (invest/return/sell)
	6. I've just read a great novel. Would you like toit?it?
	7. Tom has a drinking problem, but he it it
	He says there is nothing wrong. 8. My aunt
	she thinks I'm a terrible driver.

4,

Can you advise me? Ban có thể cho tôi ý kiến không?

A If you have a problem, do you usually try to solve it yourself, or do you ask your friends for advice?

B Match these problems with the advice below.

PROBLEMS ----1. You sat on a park bench that had wet paint on it. You rained your clothes. There was no "Wet Paint" sign. 2. You checked your bank statement and noticed that there was a deposit of \$3,000. You didn't make the deposit. You're sure it was a bank error. 3. You bought a camera on sale at a store, but it didn't work right. The store manager said, "We cannot do anything about it." 4. You were not happy with the grade you got in a university course. 5. Your next-door neighbors borrowed your vacuum cleaner. When they returned it. it was damaged. 6. A friend gave you an expensive vase for your birthday, but you didn't really like it. • Advice ---I guess I'd take it back to the store and exchange it for something else. I guess I'd write a letter of complaint to the manufacturer. Maybe I'd ask them to repair it. . I think I'd make an appointment to see the instructor to talk about it. I'd probably wait until next month to see if they corrected their mistake. I'd write a letter to the city council and ask them to pay for the damage.

C Would you give the same advice or different advice for the problems above? Write **S** (same) or **D** (different). If you would give different advice, write what your advice would be.

Problem	Advice	
1		
2		_
3. ——		_
4	<u> </u>	_
5		_
6. —		_

. I	Diana had dinner in a restaurant and then realized she lidn't have any money. She offered to wash the dishes.		
	I wouldn't have washed the dishes. I would have called	135	
	a friend to bring me money.	ARK.	
1	John doesn't smoke. He was on a bus when the woman next to him started smoking. He asked her to stop smoking.		
	Bill invited two friends to dinner on Friday, but they came on Thursday by mistake. He told them to come back the next day.		
4.	Bob's neighbors had their TV on very loud late at night. Bob called the police.		
5.	Ellen had a houseguest who was supposed to stay for three days, but she was still there three weeks later. Ellen gave her a bill for her room and board.		
6.	Susan accidentally broke a vase at a friend's house. She decided not to say anything about it.	. J.	Coll
li	Write two things you should have done or shouldn't have a		
	/iết hai việc bạn lẽ ra đã nên hoặc không nên làm tuần t		
1	. Last week: I should have called my sister last week		

3. Last year:

borrow disagree	☑ marry □ save				
this really nic In fact, we plane, but he ne none left. I w when we get:	e guy. He's ve an to have out mone ver ant to married. How	ery sweet to re reveding ne by like crazy!	me, and I really xt summer. But Sometimes he it. When I ask funded money becauthim he has a property too much	he has a pro or my money se I want us roblem with a. You never	olem. I'm going out with marry him. blem with money. He money from y back, he says he has to buy an apartment money, he says: want to go out and his problem.
accept 🗹	agree [] fin	nd 🗆 admit	t 🗆 forget 🗈	refuse	
get married. I	f you both _ _ an answer, uldn't always	. He should	that there is a	problem, yo your idea of	our money before you ould probably saving some money.
		M.? Write he	er a letter.		

8	To accept or to refuse?	Chấp nhàn hay từ chối?
	.,	~ " · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·

	: Guess what, Tina! The University of Auckland in New Zealand has
	offered me a scholarship.
Tina	: Great! When are you going?
Judy	: That's just it. I may not go. What <u>would</u> you <u>do</u> (do) if
	your boyfriend asked you not to go?
Tina	: Well, I (invite) him to come with me.
	: I've tried that. He said he won't go. And he might break up with me.
Tina	: That's ridiculous! If I were you, I(warn)
	him not to try and control you. I missed a big opportunity once.
Judy	: What happened?
Tina	: I was offered a job in Thailand, but my husband disliked the idea, so we didn't
	go. I (take) the job. I've always regrett
	my decision. In my situation, whatyou(do)
Judy	: Oh, I (accept) the offer.
Tina	: Well, there's the answer to your predicament. Accept your scholarship!
BW	hat would you do if you were Judy? Why?
Wha	vere Judy, It would you do if you found a magic lamp on a beach? Complete these se làm gì nếu bạn tìm được một cây đèn thần trên bờ biển?
Wha un sẽ vàn c	were Judy, It would you do if you found a magic lamp on a beach? Complete these se làm gì nếu bạn tìm được một cây đền thần trên bờ biển? hỉnh các câu sau
Wha un sẽ oàn c I wou	nt would you do if you found a magic lamp on a beach? Complete these se làm gì nếu bạn tìm được một cây đền thần trên bờ biển? hỉnh các câu sau lid hide it and come back at sunset.
Wha un sẽ vàn c I wou I wou	nt would you do if you found a magic lamp on a beach? Complete these se làm gì nếu bạn tìm được một cây đèn thần trên bờ biển? hỉnh các câu sau lid hide it and come back at sunset.
What wou I wou I coul	nt would you do if you found a magic lamp on a beach? Complete these se làm gì nếu bạn tìm được một cây đèn thần trên bờ biển? hình các câu sau ald hide it and come back at sunset.
What in se oàn co I wou I wou I coul I mig	nt would you do if you found a magic lamp on a beach? Complete these se làm gì nếu bạn tìm được một cây đèn thần trên bờ biển? hỉnh các câu sau lid hide it and come back at sunset.

Mhat's your excuse?

Bạn viện cớ gì?

People are making a lot of requests of James. Write the requests. Use ask, tell, or say and reported speech.

Người ta đang đưa nhiều yêu cầu đối với james viết các yêu cầu này. Dùng ask, tell hoặc say và lời dẫn gián tiếp



- 1. William: "James, take my phone calls."
- 2. Jenny: "Can you type some letters, James?"
- 3. Dave: "Could you make copies of these disks?"
- 4. Anita: "James, file these documents."
- 5. Linda: "Don't forget to add paper to the copier, James."
- 6. Ricky: "Fax this report to New York."
- 7. Chuck: "Make some coffee for me, James."
- 8. Katie: "Make five copies and don't give me any excuses."
- 9. Pete: "Could you give me a ride home?"
- 10. Olive: "Don't be late to work again."

William asked Jam	 '	·-	
<u> </u>	 		

2 Nouns and verbs Danh từ và động từ

A Complete this chart.

Noun	Verb	Noun	Verb 🖟
acceptance elegio		ng a lot of requests of Je say and reported speech	
ou nay. Dung use, wi	apologize complain	in ullien sen can dol voir)	excuse invite
10.5	compliment	1 M	sympathize

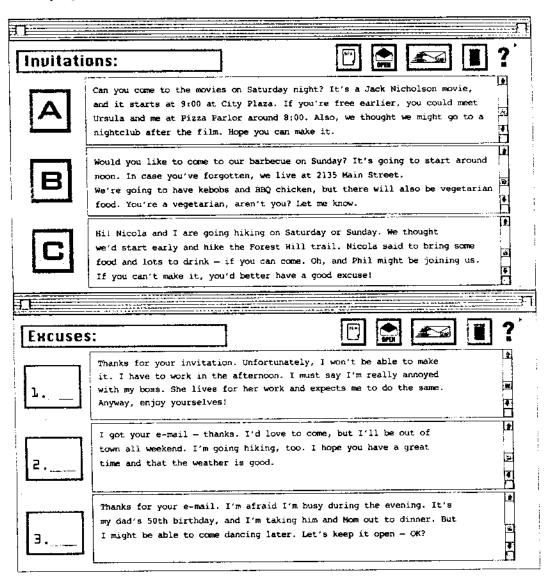
B Complete these form of the verb wh	sentences. Use words from part A and the correct ere necessary.
1. This coffee tastes	s awful. I'll <u>complain</u> to the waiter about it.
2. I	an invitation to Terry and Anna's house for dinner.
3. I didn't want to g	go to Cindy's party, so I made up an
4. I was rude to my	teacher. I must give him an
5. My English teach	her me on my homework.
She said it was e	excellent. I was really surprised.
6. My parents	everything I do. I wish they
weren't so negat	we. Williem: "James, take my phone calls."
7. I'm sorry you ha	ve the flu. I had it last week, so I really governous may med a worsely s
	3. Dave "Could you make copies of these disks" nov diw
8. I received an _	to Janet's party. I can't wait to go.

Choose the correct verb. Use the past tense. The bank and the Chon động từ thích hợp. Dùng thì quá khứ and the bank and the correct verb.

	rugge since	6130 (8)	1588 B / Trans
	express give make offer t	ell	
1.	I <u>made</u> a complaint to the police because our		
	neighbors' party was too noisy.	P. W.	
2.	Larry me an apology. He asked	me to	
	forgive him because he forgot about the party.		
3.	I couldn't go to the meeting, so I	my regrets.	
4.	Wendy told me she was graduating from college, so	THE STATE OF THE	
	I her my congratulations.		TOVO
5.	Jill was very funny at the class party. As usual,	Soar M	
	lata afialas	Sept 3	21

4 What a great excuse! Thát là một cơ tuyệt vời

A Match the invitations to the excuses. Underline the words and phrases that helped you.



B Read the excuses again. Who is going to do these things? Write 1, 2, or 3.

be o	outdoors	all	weekend
------	----------	-----	---------

____ go out on the weekend

____ work on the weekend

Sorry, but . . . Xin lỗi, nhưng thực thựch bọ thin thi thất thiết the the beauth a tad W

A Look at these excuses that students gave to the teacher. Change them into reported speech. Use say.



- 1. John: "I'm getting my hair cut."

 John said he was getting his hair cut.
- Maria: "My sister is having a baby."
- 3. Jim: "I may have some houseguests on Saturday."
- 4. Keiko and Kenji: "We're going camping this weekend."
- 5. Carlos: "I'm sorry, but I'll be busy on Saturday afternoon."
- **B** Report these excuses that students gave to the teacher. Use *tell*.
- Mary: "I signed up for a scuba diving class."
 Mary told her she had signed up for a scuba diving class.
- 2. Tom and Nancy: "We'll be moving to our new apartment that day."
- 3. Franco: "I watch the football game on TV every Sunday." and add add a state at
- 4. Juliet: "I've already made plans to do something else."
- C Write excuses for two more students. Use your own ideas.
- go out on the weekend
- work on the weekend

18 Set

6 What did they say? Họ nói gì?

A Match the reports of what people said in column A with the descriptions in column B.

A	his company was a second of the second of the	В	
1.	Tina said she was really worried about Charlie. He seemed very depressed. \underline{c}		giving an apology
2.	William told me he was sorry he would be a little late to the party.	b.	offering sympathy
3.	Robert told me he couldn't come for dinner on Friday. He said he had to work late.	C.	expressing a concern
4.	Janice and Keith said they were really sorry we had the flu. They hoped we would feel better soon.	d.	offering an invitation
5.	Ben said he was going to ask Sarah to the party.	е.	making an excuse

B Write each person's original words.

1. Tina: "I'm really worried about Charlie. He seems very depressed."

2. William: _____

3. Robert: _____

4. Janice and Keith: ____

5. Ben: _



	L			1	
۰		r	4		
в			а		
	,				

Choose the correct responses.

Chon các câu đáp thích hop

- 1. A: We're going to go horseback riding: Do you want to join us?
 - B: ____
 - Sorry, I won't be able to. What's up?
- 2. A: I'm really sorry. We'll be out of town this weekend.
 - I've made other plans.
 - No problem.
- 3. A: Meet us at 7:00. OK?
 - B: ____
 - Oh, that's all right. Sounds like fun.
- 4. A: I'm sorry. I won't be able to make it.
- - Well, never mind.
 - Great.



8 Yes or no? Đồng ý hay không đồng ý?

A Which expressions would you use to accept an invitation? refuse an invitation? Check (✓) the correct answer.

and the second	Accepting	Refusing		Accepting	Refusing
I'm really sorry.		ď	5. I won't be able to make it.		
2. Great.			6. I'm busy.		
Sounds like fun.			7. Thanks a lot.		
4. I've made other plans.			8. I'd love to.		

- **B** Use the expressions in part A to accept or refuse these invitations. Offer an excuse if you refuse.
- A: Would you like to come to a photography class with me tomorrow?

2. A: Someone told me there was a good Australian movie at the Plaza. Do you want to see it with me this weekend?

You:

3. A: A friend asked me to go shopping after class. Do you want to join us?

You:

HNIT 1

A time to remember

2 CONVERSATION

B Audio script

TED: Hey, that was fun. Thanks for the lesson. ANA: No problem. So, tell me a little about yourself.

What do you do?

TED: I work in a travel agency.

ANA: Really! What do you do there?

TED: I'm in charge of their computers.

ANA: Oh, so you're computer specialist.

TED: Well, sort of Yeah, I guess so.

ANA That's great. Then maybe you can give me some help with a computer course I'm taking.

TED: Oh, sure... but only if you promise to give me some more Rollerblading lessons.

ANA: It's a deal!

Answer

Ted works in a travel agency. He's a computer specialist.

3 GRAMMAR FOCUS

- 1. A: Could you tell me a little about yourself? Where were you born?
 - B: I was born in South Korea.
 - A: Did you grow up there?
 - B. No, I didn't I grew up in Canada.
- 2. A: Where did you go to high school?
 - 8: I went to high school in Ecuador.
- 3. A: Did you study English when you were a child? B: Yes. I did.
 - A: How old were you when you began to study English?
 - B: I was eleven years old:

4 LISTENING

Audio script

Yu Hong

INTERVIEWER: Where are you from originally, Yu

Hong? YU HONG: I'm from China ... from near Shanghai. INTERVIEWER: And when did you move here? YU HONG: I came here after I graduated from

college. That was in 1992. INTERVIEWER: And what do you do now?

YU HONG: I'm a transportation engineer. INTERVIEWER: I see. So you're an immigrant to the

United States. YU HONG: Yes, that's right.

INTERVIEWER: What are some of the difficulties being an immigrant in the U.S.?

YU HONG: Oh, that's not an easy question to answer. There are so many things, really, I guess one of the biggest difficulties is that I don't have any relatives here. I mean, I have a lot of friends, but that's not the same thing. In China, on holidays or the weekend, we visit relatives. It isn't the same here.

INTERVIEWER: And what do you miss the most from home?

YU HONG: Oh, that's easy: my mom's soup! She

makes great soup. I really miss my mother's cooking.

INTERVIEWER: Where are you from, Ajay?

AJAY: I'm from India.

INTERVIEWER: And when did you move to the U.S.?

AJAY: It was in 1991.

INTERVIEWER: Are you studying here at the

AJAY: Not now, I came here as a student and

graduated two years ago. I'm working as a computer

INTERVIEWER: Uh-huh. And what was it like when you first came here? Was it difficult?

AJAY: Yeah, it was at times. The main difficulty I had was with the educational system. Things are very different here. Teaching methods, everything is very different from what I was used to in India.

INTERVIEWER: And what do you iss the most from India?

AJAY: To tell you the truth, after you're here for awhile, you don't miss anything very much. Himmin, but I guess the weather and my family are the things I miss. And the quality of life. The quality of life is much nicer back home, frankly speaking.

Answers

Yu Hong 1. China 2. in 1992 3. transportation engineer 4. no relatives in the United States	Ajay India in 1991 computer technician U.S. educational system
	system Weather, family, quality of life

6 WORD POWER

Answers (extra examples in boldface)

Places Hobbies beach collect comics summer camp play chess tree house paint amusement park play computer games **Possessions** Pets bicycle cat scrapbook dog soccer ball rabbit teddy bear bird

7 CONVERSATION

B Audio script

JEFF: You know what I remember most about growing up?

KIM: What?

JEFF: Visiting my grandparents' house ... you know, on holidays and stuff. They lived way out in the country, and my granddad had a horse named Blackie. He taught me how to ride. I just loved that horse - and she loved me, too! I used to really enjoy spending time at my grandparents' house. And every time I came back, Blackie remembered me. KIM: Ah, memories!

Answer

Jeff's favorite childhood memory is visiting his grandparents, especially riding his grandfather's horse (Blackie).

12 READING

Answers

- 1, was born in China in 1961
- left school and studied at a film studio
- 3. won the Golden Rooster
- 4. moved to the United States
- 5. studied film in college
- 6. got her first part in a TV show
- 7. appeared in Tai-Pan
- 8. started in The Last Emperor

UNIT 2

Caught in the rush

1 WORD POWER

A Possible answers

subway: subway entrance, subway stop, subway station, subway sign

traffic: traffic light, traffic sign, traffic lane, traffic jam

bus: bus stop, bus station, bus lane bicycle: bicycle lane, bicycle stand

stop: stoplight, stop sign

parking: parking entrance, parking sign, parking space street: streetlight, street sign

news: newsstand

taxi: taxi sign, taxi lane, taxi stand

B Possible answers

police: policeman, policewoman, police officer, police station, police car, police dog, police force telephone: telephone call, telephone book/directory, telephone answering machine, telephone message, telephone booth, telephone receiver, telephone pole fire: fire alarm, firearm, firefighter, fire extinguisher, firecracker, fire station, fire engine/truck, firefly, fire escape, fire hydrant, fireman, fireplace, fireworks, fire department, fire drill

train:drain station, train stop, train whistle, train tracks, train schedule

2 CONVERSATION

B Audio script

SAM: So, are you really going to write a letter to the paper?

LYNN: Sure, I'm going to say something about the buses, usually costs about forty dollars. They're too old. We need more modern buses ... nice airconditioned ones.

ERICA: Forty dollars? I guess I'll mans I have almost on bour till.

SAM: And they need to put more buses on the road. LYNN: Right. And there are too many cars downtown, and there isn't enough parking.

SAM: That's for sure. It's unpossible to find a parking space downtown these days.

LYNN: I think they should ban private cars downtown between nine and five.

SAM: Oh, you mean they shouldn't allow any cars except taxis and buses during the regular workday. Hmmn ... that sounds like a really good idea.

Answer

The buses are too old; they need more modern buses. There are too many cars downtown, and there isn't enough parking.

3 GRAMMAR FOCUS

A Answers

- 1. There aren't enough police officers./There are too few police officers.
- 2. There should be fewer cars in the city.
- 3. There isn't enough public transportation, /There is too little public transportation.
- The government needs to build more highways.
- 5. There should be less noise.
- 6. We should have more public parking garages.
- 7. There is too, much air pollution in the city.
- 8. There are too many cars parked on the streets.

4 LISTENING

A Audio script

ENGINEER: Quite a number of things have been done to help solve traffic problems in Singapore, For example, motorists must buy a special pass if they want to drive into the downtown business district. They can go into the business district only if they have the pass displayed on their windshield.

Another thing Singapore has done is to make it more difficult to buy cars. People have to apply for a certificate if they want to buy a car. And the number of certificates is limited. Not everyone can get one. There is also a high tax on cars, so it costs three or four times as much to buy a car in Singapore as it

does in, say, the United States or Canada.
The other thing Singapore has done is to build an excellent public transportation system. Their subway system is one of the best in the world. And there is also a very good taxi and bus system.

Answers

1. False 2. True 3. True 4. False

B Possible answers

- Motorists are allowed to drive into the business district with a special pass.
- Public transportation is excellent.

8. CONVERSATION

B Audio script

ERICA: Excuse me. It's me again. I'm sorry. I need some more information - if you don't mind.

MAN: Not at all.

ERICA: Thanks. Do you know how much a taxi costs to the city?

MAN: Well, it depends on the traffic, of course. But it usually costs about forty dollars.

ERICA: Forty dollars? I guess I'll take the bus. That means I have almost an hour till the next one. Where could I find an inexpensive restaurant in the airport? Maybe a fast-food place?

MAN: Go upstairs and turn right. You'll see the snack bar on your left.

ERICA: Thanks very much. Have a nice day.

MAN: You, too.

Answers

the cost of a taxi to the city; the location of a restaurant

9 GRAMMAR FOCUS

A Answers

- Could/Can you tell me/Do you know how much a newspaper costs?
- 2. Could/ Can you tell me/Do you know where the nearest cash machine is?

- 3. Could/Can you tell me/Do you know what time the banks open?
- 4. Could/Can you tell me/Do you know how often the buses come?
- 5. Could/Can you tell me/Do you know where you can get a good hamburger?
- 6. Could/Can you tell me/Do you know how late the nightclubs stay open?

12 READING

A Answers

1.e 2.d 3.f 4.b 5.a 6.c

UNIT 3

Time for a change!

1 WORD POWER

A Answers

bright P cramped N dangerous N comfortable P convenient P dark N private P dingy N expensive N quiet P safe P huge P shabby N inconvenient N small N modern P spacious P noisy N

2 CONVERSATION

B Audio script

MR DEAN; Well, how do you like this place, then? JENNY: Oh, it's much better than that other one. The thing I like bese is the bedrooms. They are huge! MR DEAN; Yes, they are nice and big.

JENNY: And there are two bathrooms! I could have my own bathroom!

MR DEAN: Yes, I guess you could.

JENNY: The only problem is the color of the living room. I really don't like those dark green walls.

MR DEAN: Oh, I'm sure we can change the color if we want to.

Answers

The bedrooms are huge, and there are two bathrooms. She doesn't like the color of the living room walls.

3 GRAMMAR FOCUS

A Answers

- 1. There aren't enough windows.
- 2. it's too dark.
- It doesn't have enough bathrooms./There aren't enough bathrooms.
- it's too inconvenient. It's too small./It's too cramped.
- It's too cramped
- 6. It's not modern enough./It's not new enough.
- 7. It's too noisy.
- There aren't enough parking spaces./There isn't enough parking.

B Answers

Apartment 1 isn't as bright as Apartment 2.

Apartment 1 has as many bedrooms as Apartment 2.

Apartment 1 doesn't have as many bathrooms as Apartment 2.

Apartment 2 isn't as big as Apartment 1.

Apartment 2 is as expensive as Apartment 1. Apartment 2 isn't as modern as Apartment 1.

5 LISTENING

A Audio script

MAN 1: Creative Rentals. Good morning.

WOMAN 1: Hello. I'm calling about the apartment you have for rent.

MAN I: Yes, What can I tell you about it?

WOMAN 1: Where is it, exactly?

MAN I: It's on King Street, just off the freeway. WOMAN 1: Oh, near the freeway. Can you hear the traffic?

MAN 1: Yes, I'm afraid you do hear some. But the apartment has lots of space. It has three bedrooms and a very large living room.

WOMAN I; I see, And is it in a new building? MAN 1; Well, the building is about fifty years old. WOMAN 1; Uh-huh, Well, I'll think about it.

MAN 1: OK. Thanks for calling.

WOMAN 1: Thank you. Bye.

2.

WOMAN 2: Hello?

MAN 2: Hello, is the apartment you're advertising still available?

WOMAN 2: Yes, it is:

MAN 2: Can you tell me a little about it?
WOMAN 2: Well, it's a perfect apartment for one person. It's one room with a kitchen at one end.
MAN 2:1 see. And is it far away from the subway?
WOMAN 2: There's a subway station just down the street. Actually, the apartment is located right downtown, so you step out of the building and there are stores and restaurants everywhere. But it's on a high floor, so you don't hear any street or traffic noise.
MAN 2: It sounds like just the kind of place I'm looking for. I'd like to come see it,

WOMAN 2: Sure, Let me give you the address.

3

MAN 3: Town and City Rentals. How can I help you? WOMAN 3: Hi, Umm... Is that apartment you advertised still available?

MAN 3: Yes, it is.

WOMAN 3: Oh, good, Umm ... listen, I, I can't pay too much, so the low price you're asking is really good for me.

MAN 3: Great.

WOMAN 3: How big is it?

MAN 3: It's two rooms, plus the kitchen and bathroom. WOMAN 3: Well, is it a safe place to live?

MAN 3: Well, 1 can tell you I've lived here for five years and I never heard about anybody having a problem.

WOMAN 3: Oh, that's good. Uh ... let's see. Oh, yeah. Does the apartment have a lot of windows?

MAN 3: Windows? Yes, there are plenty of windows.

But unfortunately, there isn't much light, really. See, there's another building right next to ours.

WOMAN 3: Oh, that's OK, I'm never around in the day anyway. Do you think it's all right if I come and look at it?

MAN 3: Anytime. When do you want to see it?

Answers

- 1, noisy, spacious, old
- small, convenient, quiet
- 3. reasonable, safe, dark

B Possible answers

- The woman isn't going to rent the apartment because she is worried about too much traffic noise and she prefers a more modern/newer building.
- The man is going to rent the apartment because he said it sounds like the kind of place he's looking for.
- 3. The woman is going to rent the apartment because the low rent is perfect for her, it's in a safe area, and she doesn't mind that there isn't much light because she's never around during the day.

7 CONVERSATION

B Audio script

BRIAN: So how are things going with you and Susie, Terry?

TERRY: Oh, you didn't know? She and I broke up a couple of months ago. We decided we needed a break from each other for awhile. But I miss her a lot, I wish we could get back together again.

BRIAN: I'm sure you will.

TERRY: I really hope so. So what kind of job would you like to look for?

BR(AN: I'm not sure, but I'd love something that would involve travel. And I'd really like to move to another city. I'm sick of this place. I need to live somewhere more exciting.

TERRY: I know what you mean. It sure can get boring around here at times.

8 GRAMMAR FOCUS

- I wish my class were more interesting./I wish that i could take another class.
- 2. I wish I didn't have to take the bus to work every day./I wish that I had a car so I could drive to work.
- I wish our apartment were bigger./I wish that our apartment weren't so small./I wish we could move.
- I wish I didn't have so much homework./I wish I had less homework.
- I wish I were in good/better shape.
- I wish I weren't single./I wish that I were married.
- 7. I wish I had more money./I wish I were rich.
- 6. I wish I had some free time.

9 LISTENING A Audio script

•

MAN 1: Yeah, I really need a change. I've been doing the same things for over five years now, and I'm just not learning anything new. It's the same routine every day, and I am really sick of sitting in front of a computer. I think I need to try something totally different. I want to be in a profession that involves meeting people.

2

WOMAN 1: I really need to join a club or sports team to give me something to do on weekends, I get really bored on the weekends, and if I joined a club, I'd probably get to meet people and make new friends.

MAN 2: I should take a typing course this summer. I really need it for my school work. And people say that if you can type really well, it something youll find useful later in life.

4.

WOMAN 2: Gosh, I really have to go on a diet. I've

gained ten pounds since last year, and everyone tells me I look fat. And if I don't lose weight now, I won't be able to get into any of my summer clothes.

Answers

1. job 2. leisure 3. skills 4

kills 4. appearance

Answers

- He'd like to find a totally different job because he's sick of his job.
- She'd like to join a club or sports team because she gets bored on the weekends.
- He'd like to take a typing course this summer because he needs it for his school work and he'll find it useful later in life.
- 4. She'd like to lose ten pounds because she looks fat and if she doesn't lose weight, she won't be able to get into her summer clothes.

12 READING

Answers

	What they do now	Difficulty	Reward
Bloch	is a teacher	learning to control the students	helping students./ hearing students say he's their favorite teacher/ spending more time with
			family
	live on a	not much	overcoming
Neales	boat at sea	money/ storms	dangers as a family/seeing starfish at the bottom of the sea in the moonlight
	his the	do now Tom is a teacher Bloch	Tom is a teacher learning to control the students his the live on a not much Neales boat at sea money/

Unit 4

I've never heard of that!

2 CONVERSATION

B Audio script

KATHY: Oh, good! Here comes the waitress now! WAITRESS: Here are your snails, madam. And for you, sir ... the fried brains.

JOHN: Thank you.

KATHY: Mmmm, these snails are delicious! How are the brains?

JOHN: Well, I think they're ... yuck! Oh, sorry, I guess brains are pretty strange after all. Um, I think I'm going to order something else, if you don't mind.

KATHY: Oh, sure. Go ahead.

JOHN: Miss! Excuse me, miss!

WAITRESS: Yes?

JOHN: Uh, I really don't care for this appetizer. Could you bring me something else?

WAITRESS: Yes, of course. What would you like instead?

KATHY: Try the snails.

JOHN: No, I don't think so. I'll tell you what. Just forget an appetizer for me, and bring me a nice, juicy hamburger ... medium rare ... with french fries and a large soda.

Answers

John didn't like the fried brains (at all). He ordered a (nice, juicy) hamburger (medium rare), french fries, and a large soda.

4 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Answers

- 1. A: Have you ever been to a picnic at the beach?
- B: Yes, I have, It was fun!
- 2. A: Did you have dinner at home last night?
- B: No. I didn't. I went out for dinner.
- 3. At Have you tried sushi?
- B: No. I haven't, but I'd like to.
- 4. A: Did you have breakfast this morning?
- B: Yes, i did, I ate a huge breakfast.
- 5. A; Have you ever eaten at a Mexican restaurant?
- B: Yes, I have. The food was deficious!

5 LISTENING

Audio script

- WOMAN 1: Have you finished with this?
 MAN 1: No, I'm still drinking it. Thanks.
- MAN 2: Did you order this?
 WOMAN 2: Yes, that's mine. Mmm, it looks great and smells delicious!
- 3, MAN 3: Don't you like it?

WOMAN 3: I haven't tasted it yet. I'm waiting for the waitress to bring me a fork.

- MAN 1: Did you enjoy it?
 WOMAN 2: Well, it was a little tough. I think is was cooked for too long.
- 5. WOMAN 3: How is it?
 MAN 3: Great. Just the way I like it: black and
- 6. MAN 3: Your turn or mine?

MAN 1: It's my treat this time. You paid last time. Remember?

Answers

1 water

3. pasta 5 coffee

2, the meal 4, the meat

the check

7 WORD POWER

Possible answers (The answers given here

generally reflect North American cooking techniques.)

fish: bake, fry, barbecue, steam shrimp; fry, boil, barbecue, steam

eggs: fry, boil

chicken; bake, try, roast, boil, barbecue

beat roast, boil, barbecue

potatoes: bake, fry, roast, boil, barbecue onions: fry,

boil, steam eggplant: bake, fry bananas: fry

8 CONVERSATION

B Audio script

KATE: I'll tell you what my favorite snack is: baked apple.

JIM: Baked apple?

KATE: Un-huh. It's delicious - and healthy.

JIM: So how do you make it?

KATE:. You take out the core of the apple with an apple corer. Then you fill the center of the apple with brown sugar and some raisins. Next, put it in a pan with a little water and bake it in the oven for about 45 minutes.

JIM: Mmm. That does sound good.

Answers

Kate's favorite snack is baked apple. (Ss' answers to the second and third questions will vary.)

9 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Answers

(Answers here are for both parts of the task)

- First, put charcoal in the barbecue and light it with lighter fluid.
- Then cut up some meat and vegetables and put them in a bowl with your favorite barbecue mannade. Marinate for 20 minutes.
- 3. Next, put the meat and vegetables on the skewers.
- After that, put the kebobs on the barbecue and cook for 10 to 15 minutes, turning them over from time to time.
- Finally, take the kebobs off the barbecue and enjoy*.

10 LISTENING

A Audio script.

1.

WOMAN 1: I love to eat this at the movies. Sometimes, I even make it myself at home. It's really easy. First, you put a little oil in a pan. Then heat the oil. When the oil's hot - but not too hot - put in the kernels. Next, when you see they're starting to pop, cover the pan Shake the pan a little until the noise stops. After that, pour it into a bowl. Finally, sprinkle a little salt over it and enjoy!

2.

MAN: Let me tell you how to make my favorite snack. It takes some time, but it's worth it. First, you take an avocado and mash it. Next, you chop half a tomato and half an onion and add them to the avocado. After that, you chop a little cilantro - you know, Chinese parsley - and put that in, too. Then, squeeze a lemon or a lime on top. Finally, sprinkle the mixture with a little salt, pepper, and of course, hot sauce. Mmm, it's great with chips!

3,

WOMAN 2: A friend from New York City taught me how to make this. First, cut it in a half. Then toast it. After that, let it cool a little and then spread cream cheese on it. It's really good for breakfast, but I can eat it any time.

4.

MAN 2: Some people eat the frozen kind from the supermarket, but I like to make my own. You need dough, ofive oil, sauce, and cheese - lots of cheese. First, you roll out the dough into a circle and rub a little oil on it. Then put the dough into the oven and bake for a few minutes. Next, spoon a little sauce over the dough. After that, cover the sauce with grated cheese. Then put it back into the oven and bake for another ten minutes or until the cheese melts. Finally, cut it into slices. You'll love it!

12 READING

A Answers

- False You should eat foods that are high in complex carbohydrates because they provide the body with "fuel."
- False Fruits and vegetables are a good source of complex carbohydrates. /Milk, cheese, meat, fish, and eggs are a good source of protein.
- 3. True

101

4. True

Review of the units 1-4

3 LISTENING

Audio script

- 1. MAN 1: Excuse me. Do you know where the nearest bank is?
- WOMAN 1: Could you tell me when the airport bus leaves?
- 3. MAN 2: Can you tell me when the government offices open around here?
- 4. WOMAN 2: Do you know where the drugstore is?
- 5. MAN 1: Could you tell me where the best Chinese restaurant around here is?
- 6. WOMAN 2: What's the best way to get to your house?

Answers

- 1. It's just around the corner.
- 2. The next one is in ten minutes.
- 3. It's nine a clock in the morning.
- 4. It's in the shopping center on Kind Street.
- 5. Yes, in the Fairmont Hotel on Main Street.
- By bus.

4 CONVERSATION

Possible answers

Computer 1 isn't as new as computer 2.

Computer 1 doesn't have as much memory as computer 2

Computer 1's screen isn't as big as computer 2's. Computer 1 is as expensive as computer 2.

Computer 2 doesn't include as many software programs as computer

UNIT 5

Going places

3 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Answers

A: Have you made any vacation plans?

B: Well, I've decided on one thing-I'm going to go camping

A: That's great! For how long?

B' I'm going to be away for a week. I only have five days of vacation.

A: So, when are you leaving?

B: I'm not sure. I'll probably leave around the end of May.

A: And where are you going to go?

B: I haven't thought about that yet, I guess I'll go to one of the national parks.

A: That sounds like fun.

B: Yeah. Maybe I'll go hiking and do some fishing.

A: Are you going to rent a camper?

B: I'm not sure. Actually, I probably won't rent a camper - it's too expensive.

A: Are you going to go with anyone?

B: No. I need some time alone. I'm going to travel by myself.

5 LISTENING A Audio script

1. Judy

WOMÁN: So, what are you planning பிற for your vacation, Judy?

JUDY: Oh, I'm doing something really exotic this year. You know, I went to Hawaii last year, and just stayed on the beach for two weeks. This year, I'm going whitewater rafting!

WOMAN: Ooh, that sounds great. But what is it. exactly?

JUDY: Oh, well, you know, it's in Colorado. They have all these trips down the rapids. The water gets really rough, but I think it'll be really exciting. Oh, I'm doing some rock climbing, too.

WOMAN: And you call that a vacation?

2. Pau

WOMAN: What are your plans for the summer, Paul? PAUL Oh, I'd love to go and lie on a beach somewhere, but I need to save some money for school. I think I'll stay home and get a joh

WOMAN: That doesn't sound like much fun.

PAUL: Oh, it won't be too bad. Some of my friends are going to work this summer, too, so we'll do some partying on the weekends.

3. Brenda

MAN: Have you planned anything for the summer. Brenda?

BRENDA: Yeah. I'm going to work the first month and save some money. Then I'm going to go down to Mexico for six weeks to stay with my sister. She's working in Guadalajara. She says it's really interesting there, so I want to go and see what it's like. It will also give me a chance to practice my Spanish. I'm really

Answers

looking forward to it.

- Judy is going to do something exciting and a little dangerous.
- 2. Paul probably won't take a vacation.
- 3. Brenda is going to learn about a different culture.

B Answers

- 1. Judy wants to do something really different this year.
- Paul needs to save some money for school, so he thinks he'll stay home and get a job.
- Brenda is going to go to Mexico because her sister says it's really interesting there

6 WORD POWER Travel

Answers (extra words in boldface)

Clothing: hiking boots, shorts, windbreaker, T-shirt Money: cash, credit card, traveler's checks, ATM card Health: first-aid kit, medication, vaccination, vitamins Travel documents: passport, plane ticket, visa, drivers ficense

Luggage: backpack, overnight bag, suitcase, briefcase

8 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Answers

- 1. You must/have to/need to get a passport
- 2. You shouldn't/don't have to pack too many clothes.
- You should/ought to/d better buy a round-trip plane ticket,
- You'd better/ought to/should make hotel reservations
- You need to/have to/must get a vaccination.
- You ought to/should/d better/must/have to/need to check the weather.

- 7. You shouldn't cam lots of cash.
- You must'd better/ought to/should get traveler's checks
- 9. You don't have to/shouldn't take a lot of luggage 10. You have to/must/need to check on visas.
- 11. You shouldn't carry your wallet in your back pocket.12. You must/have to/need to take identification with

11 LISTENING

Audio script

tounsts?

INTERVIEWER: What should people do to make their visit to New York City safe and pleasant?

SPOKESPERSON: I think the biggest mistake many people make is trying to do too much in a short time. There's so much to see and do that you need to have a plan. It's best to start planning before you get here, so you have information about hotels, restaurants, sightseeing, and so on. Visitors can use our Web site to get the information they need to start planning before they come here; or they can phone or fax us. INTERVIEWER: How safe is New York City for

SPOKESPERSON: New York is a much safer place than many people think; in fact, it's the safest it's been in thirty years!

INTERVIEWER Oh, that's good to hear!

SPOKESPERSON: Yes, but that doesn't mean people don't have to be careful; tourists in New York ought to be careful, just like in any big city in the world. For students, I would say travel in groups. If you get lost, it's easier as a group to find your way. You really shouldn't go off your own if you can find someone to go with you.

Another thing to remember is: Don't be afraid to ask for directions, even if your English isn't perfect. People often stop me on the street to ask for directions, and that's not only foreign visitors. American visitors also have trouble finding their way around. And you'll find New Yorkers are really very friendly.

INTERVIEWER: Yes, I agree. We are!

SPOKESPERSON: Uh-huh.

INTERVIEWER: Is there any other advice you can give visitors to the Big Apple?

SPOKESPERSON: Well, another thing to remember is not to leave anything valuable in your car - if you have one. Don't leave suitcases on the back seat where people can see them, and it's better not to even leave them in the trunk. Most cars are very easy to get into, so it's not worth the risk,

But most people have a great time when they come to New York. And you will, too, if you use your common sense.

Answers

- 1. You should start planning before you get there.
- Tourists ought to be careful. Travel in groups and don't go off on your own.
- 3. Don't be afraid to ask for directions.
- 4. Don't leave anything valuable in your car.

12 READING

Possible answers

- Fly as a courier, You can buy your plane ticket for 25% of the normal fare.
- Not long ago, a courier bought a really cheap roundtrip plane ticket - from Los Angeles to Tokyo.

- for \$100 instead of \$1,800.
- Get a train pass in Europe. Then you can choose to travel to more than 30,000 cities by train.
- Hostels used to be only for people younger than 25.
 Now, people of any age can stay there.
- It's pretty cheap to stay at a hostel, it usually costs \$17 or less a night.

UNIT 6

Sure. No problem!

2 CONVERSATION

B Audio script

JASON: Have you noticed how forgetful Dad is getting? He's always forgetting where his car keys are. It drives me crazy

LISA: And he can never find his glasses either. JASON: I know.

LISA: You know w: rives me crazy about Mom? JASON: What?

LISA Those awful talk shows she watches but I hate on TV. She just loves them.

JASON: Yeah, 1 think she watches them for hours every day.

LISA: Oh, well, I guess they re just getting old. I hope I never get like that.

JASON: Me, too. Hey, let's go and play a video game. USA: Great idea, By the way, have you seen my glasses anywhere?

Answer

Jason complains about how forgetful his dad is getting. He's alwas forgetting where his car keys are. Lisa complains that he can never find his glasses either.

Lisa complains that her more watches talk shows on TV for hours every day.

3 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Answers

- 1. Pick up the toys, please.
- 2. Turn the radio/the TV the light off, please.
- 3. Clean the yard/the trash up, please.
- Please put the books/the toys/your coat/your boots away.
- 5. Please turn down the radio/the TV/the light.
- 6. Please take off your coat/your boots.
- 7. Hang your coat up, please.
- 8. Please take out the trash
- Please put the light/the trash/your cigarette out.
- 10. Turn on the radio/the TV/the light, please.

5 WORD POWER

Answers (extra phrases in boldface)

clean off the counter, the faucet, your desk clean up the counter, the mess, the kitchen the dry cleaning, the towels,

your coat

put away

pick up the mess, the cat, the dry clear ing, the newspapers, the towels, your room

the mess, the dry cleaning, the

newspapers, the groceries, the towels, the game

put out the cat, the garbage, the candle

take out the cat, the garbage, the

newspapers, the trash

throw out the mess, the garbage, the newspapers,

the old flowers

turn off the oven, the faucet, the light

turn on the oven, the faucet, your computer

6 LISTENING

A Audio script

MOM 1: James, please turn that down.... James!

JAMES: Yes, Mom?

MOM 1: Turn that down, It's much too loud.

JAMES: Sorry, Mom. I had it turned up because 1 wanted to hear the game.

DAD 1: Molly, put the groceries away, please. There's ice cream in one of the bags.

MOLLY: I can't right now, Dad. I'm doing my homework.

MOM 1: What's this? ... James!

JAMES: Yeah, Mom?

MOM 1: Why are there all these wet towels on the bathroom floor? Please pick them up and hang them up to dry.

JAMES: Gosh, i'm really sorry, Mom. I forgot all about them.

DAD 2: Justin, come help me. We need to wash these dishes before your mother gets home.

JUSTIN: Oh, Dad. I'd like to help, but I have to call Laurie. It's really important.

DAD 1: Aimee, I think the dog is trying to tell you something!

AIMEE: Well, I can't possibly take him out right now. I'm doing my nails.

Answers

(as the pictures should be numbered from left to right) 4, 3, 1, 2, 5

8 Answers

- James turned up the TV because he wanted to hear.
- Molly can't put the groceries away because she's doing her homework.
- James forgot all about the wet towels on the bathroom floor.
- Justin can't help wash the dishes because he has to call Laurie.
- Aimee can't take the dog out right now because she's doing her nails.

8 APOLOGIES

B Audio script

MAN 1: Helio. I'm sorry to bother you, but I think your car is parked in my space downstairs.

WOMAN 1: Really?

MAN 1: Yes. Do you drive a blue Honda?

WOMAN I: Yes, I do.

MAN 1: Well, there's a blue Honda parked in space 13 and that's my space.

WOMAN 1: Oh, I'm so sorry. My son must have put it in the wrong space. Ours is the one right next to yours. - number 12. Let me get my keys, and I'll go right down and move the car.

MAN 1: Thanks.

WOMAN 1: And I'll make sure my son doesn't do it

again.

MAN 1: Lappreciate it.

MAN 2: Gee, Bob, you're really late. You said you'd be here at six, and look at the time: It's almost six thirty! MAN 3: I'm really sorry. Tell you what: I'll pay for dinner. MAN 2: Oh, it's all right. You don't have to do that. MAN 3. No, I want to pay. You had to wait for me almost

half an hour. MAN 2: Well, hey, OK - if you insist. Thanks!

MAN 4: Hi, Saily. What happened to you on Sunday? WOMAN 2: Sunday? What do you mean?

MAN 4: You don't remember? I had a party, and I invited

WOMAN 2; Oh, gosh. Of course you did - and I completely forgot about it. I was busy all day helping my brother with his car, and I guess I just forgot. Sorry How did the party go, anyway?

MAN 4: It was great, but we missed you WOMAN 2: Gee, now I really feel bad!

Answers

Type of apology Complaint 1. Her car is parked admit a mistake, make an in his space. offer, make a promise make an offer 8ob is late.

give an excuse, admit a 3. Sally didn't go to his party. mistake

9 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Answers

3 b 1.d 3.e/f6. A 2.1 4. c

11 READING

Answers

- 1. No, it was started in 1877.
- No, they're only an hour away.
- 3. They can learn about the stars, see animals, and go hiking, fishing, and swimming. They learn responsibility by helping out with chores and from the counselors.
- No, it runs the program for host families, too.
- No. Camps are for 8 to 15 year olds.
- 7. They go with them on picnics, to the pool or beach and on trips.
- 8. Yes. (Most are invited back.)

HNIT 7

What's this for?

2 CONVERSATION

B Audio script

ANDREA: I have such a great time working and playing. on my computer. But you know the best thing about it? DANIEL: What?

ANDREA: The best thing is that I can keep in touch with my family and friends without having to pick up the phone.

DANIEL: Oh, you use e-mail, right?

ANOREA Right. At the beginning of the year, I was spending a fortune on longdistance calls to everyone back home. But now my morn and my two sisters have e-mail, so we send each other messages almost every day.

DANIEL: That sounds great.

Answer

Andrea uses her computer to keep in touch with her family and friends through e-mail.

3 GRAMMAR FOCUS

- Satellites are used to study/studying the world's weather. /Satellites are used to transmit/for transmitting telephone calls.
 Satellites are used to transmit/for transmitting television programs.
- Robots are sometimes used to perform/for performing dangerous tasks.
- You can use a fax machine to make/for making a photocopy.
- People use the Internet to read/for reading the latest weather report./People use the internet to make/for making travel reservations.
- DNA fingerprinting is used to identify/for identifying criminals.
- CD-ROM is sometimes used to store/for storing an encyclopedia.

5 WORD POWER

Answers

At home
communicate with people
pay household bills
make budgets
write letters
play games
At school
keep the attendance
research papers
make report cards
do homework
checks
send e-mail.

In a factory
pay the workers
create work schedules
run the machines
look up safety laws
write reports
in a restaurant
process credit cards
create the menu
place orders
prepare customers

pay the employees

6 LISTENING

8 Audio script

POLICE OFFICER: My name is Sandy Watson, and I'm a police officer. I analyze crime patterns, in other words, my job is to use the computer to try to guess when a crime will probably happen in a neighborhood. I can also find out the kind of crime and who the criminal might be. I start with a map of a neighborhood on the computer, which shows where crimes have happened in the past. Then I put into the computer all the information we have about criminals: their addresses, the crimes they've committed in the past ... that sort of thing. Then the computer will figure out when a criminal is likely to commit a crime - where and when. THERAPIST: My name is Alex Hunt, and I'm a psychotherapist. I help people change their behaviors. There are people who have all kinds of fears, like a fear of heights or a fear of leaving the house or even a fear of dogs. I use a computer fitted with virtual-reality equipment - a special kind of visor you wear over your eyes so that you think you're really in a different place. You see things that the computer shows you, and you

think the things are real. For example, when I treat someone who's afraid of heights, the patient puts on the virtual-reality rig and I can train them to think they're looking down from a very high balcony or riding up 49 floors in a glass-walled elevator on the side of a building. After a while they get used to the feeling, and they can deal with real heights when they go out into the real world.

PROFESSOR: My name's Janet Brown. I teach at a medical school, and I use computers to cut down on my teaching time. Instead of lecturing to students in a lecture hall, students go to a computer learning center where a lot of their courses are on CD-ROM. They can also log onto our database and review all they need to know about something, instead of having to go to the library.

Answers

Sandy Watson uses the computer to try to guess when a crime will probably happen in a neighborhood. She also uses the computer to figure out where and when a criminal is likely to commit a crime.

Alex Hunt uses a computer fitted with virtual-reality equipment to make the patient think he or she is in a different place (to help people change their behaviors. Janet Brown uses computers to cut down on her teaching time. Students go to a computer learning center.

8 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Answers (extra advice in boldface)

- 1. H
- 2. L
- 3. L
- 4. M/H/L 5. H/l
- 6. M
- ъ. М 7. М.
- 8. L

M: Set the cooking timer.

H: Don't use it too close to the hair.

L: Don't put heavy things on top of it.

9 FREE ADVICE

A Audio script

- MAN: It's best to use a stand when you're filming with this. If you hold it by hand, the picture is often not very steady. Be careful when you put in the battery: If you push too hard, you can actually do some damage.
- WOMAN: Remember to wear protective gear whenever you use them. You can easily fall and hurt yourself. And make sure to skate on a flat surface such as a parking lot, a tennis court, or a basketball court.
- MAN: Be sure to put it in correctly. Then punch in your secret code. Remember to press "enter." Don't forget to count your money before you leave the machine.

Unit 8

Let's celebrate!

2 WORD POWER Celebrations

During Hakhi, men in India promise loyalty to their women

On Chusok, people in Korea visit the graves of their ancestors.

On New Year's Eve, people in Argentina stay up all night

On February 3, people in Japan celebrate the end of winter

Review of units 5-8

6 LISTENING A Audio script

1

MAN. You know, this book about unusual marriage customs is really interesting.

WOMAN Oh, yeah?

MAN: Listen to this.... It talks about this Indian tribe in Paraguay.

WOMAN: Uh-huh.

MAN: When two women in the tribe want to marry the same man, guess what they do.

WOMAN: I have no idea, What?

MAN: They have a boxing match and fight until one of them wins.

WOMAN. And the prize is a husbamd?

MAN: Of course!

2

WOMAN: Say, do you know anything about Malaysia? MAN: Mmm, a little, I guess. Why?

WOMAN: Well, when people get married in Malaysia,

they have to eat rice during the ceremony. MAN: Yeah? What's so strange about that?

WOMAN: It's uncooked rice.

MAN: Hmm.

3.

MAN: Oh, here's another one. Don't laugh, but I think this is really romantic!

WOMAN: You think something is romantic? What is it?

MAN: In Italy, a friend or family member often brings a pair of white doves - you know, those beautiful white birds - to the wedding. After the ceremony, the cage is opened and the doves fly into the air. The birds symbolize the couple's love and happiness.

WOMAN You're right. That is romantic.

MAN: Well, here's an interesting custom from India, WOMAN: Let's hear it.

MAN: There's a special Hindu "water-pouring" ceremony during the wedding.

WOMAN, And what happens?

MAN: Well, when the Indian bride and groom are marned, someone pours lots of water over both of them at the same time.

WOMAN Why do they do that?

MAN: Uh it says here that it brings the couple closer together.

WOMAN Interesting!

Answer

1. True 2. False 3. False 9. True

B Answer

When a man and a woman get married in Malaysia, they eat uncooked rice during the ceremony. In Italy, after a man and a woman get marned, a friend or relative releases two white doves into the air.

UNIT 9

Back to the future

3 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Answers

1.d 3.g 5.b 7.e 2.a 4.f 6.c 8.h

5 LISTENING

Audio script

-auto scrip

MAN 1: How long have you been living here?

WOMAN I: Oh, for over twenty years.

MAN 1: And have you noticed a lot of changes during that time?

WOMAN 1: Oh, yes, quite a few. This is a much nicerplace to live now than it used to be. It's much greener. When I first moved here, there weren't many trees around. But over the last few years, the city has planted trees everywhere. It's made such a difference.

WOMAN 2: How do you like living here?

MAN 2: Well, it's an interesting city. But you really need a car here; otherwise, you can't go anywhere. There used to be a good bus system, but there isn't anymore. WOMAN 2: Why is that?

MAN 2: Oh, I think they expect everyone to have a car, so they don't bother to provide decent bus service. It's getting worse and worse. These days, you have to wait for ages for a bus. And when one finally shows up, it's usually full!

WOMAN 1: I can't believe how much this neighborhood has changed!

WOMAN 2: What do you mean?

WOMAN 1: Well, when Joe and I first bought this house - that was almost 20 years ago, of course - there were lots of young couples with little children living on this street.

WOMAN 2: I don't see any kids out today.

WOMAN 1: That's because they've all grown up and moved out of their parents' houses, Just about the only young children we see around here these days are the grandchildren when they come to visit. It's a shame. I miss the sounds of kids playing. It's gotten way too quiet around here.

Answers

Change	Better /	
city has planted trees	•	
used to have a good bus		,
	system but	
not anymore		
20 years ago, many children fived here;		
	city has planted trees used to have a good bus not anymore 20 years ago, many children lived here;	city has planted trees used to have a good bus system but not anymore 20 years ago, many children

Answers (extra words in boldface)

Social occasions Activities anniversary dancing party fireworks wedding parade birthday barbecue graduation singing

Special food and drink Things we give/receive

cake cards champagne flowers roast turkey presents brown rice candy meat pies jewelry

3 CONVERSATION

B Audio script

NATASHA: So are we going to wear costumes to the party?

LEO: Of course. That's half the fun. Last year I rented this great Dracula costume, and this year I'm going as

NATASHA: A clown? Yes, you would make a good clown.

LEO: Hey!

NATASHA: Oh, I'm just kidding. What about me? What kind of costume should I wear?

LEO: Why don't you go as a witch? I saw a terrific witch outfit at the costume store.

NATASHA: A witch ... yeah, that's a good idea. So after I scare people, you can make them laugh.

Answer

Lee is going to the Halloween party as a clown, and Natasha is going as a witch.

4GRAMMAR FOCUS

A Answers

1. b 2. d 3 0 4. f 5. c 6. a

B. Possible answers

- Winter is a season when it is cold and rainy.
- 2. Spring is a time of the year when roses bloom.
- 3. Mother's Day is the day when people honor their mothers.
- 4. A birthday is a day when someone gets a cake and presents from friends and family.
- 5. A wedding anniversary is a time when married couples celebrate their years together.

5 LISTENING

Audio script

MIKE: Isn't that music fantastic? It's from a samba CD that I got when I was in Rio for Carnival Wow! Carnival in Rio is really something! It's a party that lasts for four whole days, it's held in late February or early March, but you need to book your hotel way in advance because hotels fill up really quickly. There are Carnivals all over Brazil, but the most famous one is in Rio. The whole city is decorated with colored lights and streamers. It's really beautiful. Everyone is very friendly - especially to visitors from other countries. The best part about Carnival is the big parade. The costumes are unbelievable - people work on them for months, it's really fantastic to watch. Everyone cances the samba in the streets. I'd really recommend you go to Rio for Carnival if you ever have the chance.

Answers

Carnival is a party. It lasts for four (whole) days. It's in late February or early March. The best part about it is the parade. The samba is a dance.

8 CONVERSATION

B Audio script

JILL: Did you get marned in a church, Mari? MARI: No, the ceremony was held at a shrine. JILL: Oh, a shrine ...

MARI: Yes, we were married by a priest in a traditional Shinto ceremony.

JILL: Hmm. And who went to the ceremony? MARI: Wall, only the immediate family attended the ceremony ... you know, our parents, grandparents, brothers and sisters ...

JILL: And what about the reception? What was that lika?

MARI: Lots of friends and relatives came to the reception ... about a hundred people. And the first thing that happened was that the main guests gave formal speeches.

JILL: Speeches?

MARI: Yes, and then after that, all the guests were served a formal meal. While everyone was eating and drinking, lots of other guests have short speeches or sang songs. Some of the speeches were funny. JILL: Sounds like fun!

MARI: Yes, the songs and speeches are all part of the entertainment during a wedding reception. And then, at the end of the reception, each guest received a present for coming to the wedding.

JILL: A present from the brids and groom?

MARI: Yes, it's a Japanese custom.

JILL: What a nice custom!

Answers

Mari's wedding was held at a shrine.

(Note: a shrine is a place of worship; here, a Shinto shrine in Japan.)

immediate family - parents, grandparents, brothers, sisters - attender, the wedding.

Lots of friends and relatives came. The main guests gave formal speeches, and then a formal meal was served; other guests gave short (sometimes funny) speeches or sang songs. At the end, each guest received a present (from the bride and groom).

9 PRONUNCIATION

Possible answers

(stressed syllables in boldtace)

Halloween is a day when children go "trick-or treating."

On Thanksgiving Day, Americans eat turkey and cranberry sauce.

When people have birthdays, they usually get presents from friends.

June is a month when many young people like to get married.

10 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Answers

1 c 2. d 3. e 4. b 5. f 6.a

12 READING

Answers

On January 17, people in Mexico bring their animals to church.

8 CONVERSATION

B Audio script

LUIS: Well, giving up smoking isn't really as hard as you think. I managed to do it, so it can't be that difficult. You should try nicotine gum. You chew it just like regular chewing gum, and you don't feel like smoking. JODY: Well, I guess it's worth a try.

Answers

The advice Luis gives Jody is: Try nicotine gum. Jody says, I guess it's worth a try. (This means she's going to try to use nicotine gum to quit smoking.)

9 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Answers

1,**b**, 3 e 5.d

2.b/c 4 a

10 WORD POWER

buy a large dog

feel safer in your home: have to take it out for walks; have to find someone to take care of it when you go away

tall in love

feet better about yourself; feet jealous sometimes; be able to share things with someone all the time

go on a diet

feel hungry a lot; have to give up your favorite snack; start to feel thinner

inherit a lot of money

be able to buy expensive clothes; get requests for loans from friends; be able to take a cruise around the world

move to a foreign country

have to learn a new language: lose touch with old friends: learn about a new culture

quit smoking

el more energetic: gain weight: be very proud of yourself

12 READING

Answers

- 1. Falling in love 4. Falling in love
- 2. Staying in love

5. Falling in love

Staying in love

UNIT 10

I don't like working in weekends!

2 CONVERSATION

B Audio script

WOMAN: [Phone rings] Delta Education.

BRAD; Hello, I'm calling about the job you advertised

for a salesperson, is it still available?

WOMAN: Yes, it is.

BRAD: Well, can you tell me something about the job? WOMAN: Sure. Our company sells educational books for children. We're looking for part-time salespeople to promote our books to local bookstores.

BRAD: That sounds interesting. I'm a student, and I'm looking for part-time work.

WOMAN: Well, perhaps you'd like to come in for an interview.

BRAD: Yes, I would.

WOMAN: Oh, just one thing we didn't mention in the advertisement. Some of our books are in Spanish, so we'd like to hire someone who speaks Spanish. BRAD: Oh, as matter of fact, I do.

WOMAN; Good, Well, let me arrange a time for you to come in for an interview.

Answer

The job requires someone who speaks Spanish.

5 LISTENING

B Audio script

1

WOMAN 1: So what kind of job are you looking for? MAN 1: Well, I haven't made up my mind. I love working with people, and I love traveling. I don't want a job where I'm stuck in an office all day. I want to get out and see the world.

WOMAN 1: Are you interested in working in business? That's where you can sometimes make good money MAN 1: I'm not really interested in making a lot of money at this point in my life. I'll worry about that later

MAN 2: What kind of career are you planning for yourself?

WOMAN 2: I don't know. I think I'd like to have a job where I can help people. Everybody else in my family is in law or business - you know, boring stuff like that That's just not for me. I know I'd like to work overseas, though. Maybe in a children's hospital in a developing country. But that's a long way away. I have to get into medical school first, and that's not going to be easy!

MAN 3: What kind of job do I have in mind? Well, I don't want a regular nine-to-five job. Eventually, I'd like to get into acting - maybe even break into movies. But a guess that won't happen for a while.

WOMAN 3: So what are you doing in the meantime? MAN 3: Well, I work out at the gym nearly every day I need to be really fit. And I'm taking acting lessons as well so that I feel comfortable in front of the crowd. I just had some pictures taken to show to agents in the city. Would you like to see them?

WOMAN 3: Sure.

Answers

flight attendant 2. doctor

3. model

B Possible answers

1." love traveling."

2."I'd like to work overseas . . . maybe in a children's hospital."

3."I need to be really fit."

7. WORD POWER

A. Answers

,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,			
bad-tempered	N	critical	Ν
creative	₽	disorganized	N
efficient	Ρ	level-headed	Р
forgetful	Ν	moody	N
generous	Ρ	punctual	Ρ
hardworking	Ρ	reliable	Р
impatient	N	strict	N

B Audio script.

1. a boss

WOMAN 1: How do you like your new boss?

MAN I: She's OK. I just wish she'd learn to lighten up a

WOMAN 1: What do you mean?

MAN 1: Oh, she never enjoys a joke. She never laughs. It's hard to even get a smile out of her.

2. a co-worker

MAN 2: Look what Mary gave me! Isn't this a great book?

WOMAN 2: Yeah, it is! Mary's so sweet - she's always giving her friends and co-workers presents. I wish there were more people like her in this world!

3. a teacher

WOMAN 3: What do you think of the new French

MAN 3: Well, she's kind of strange. She's in a good mood one minute and in a terrible mood the next.

4. a relative

MAN 4: Hey, what's wrong?

WOMAN 4: I'm fed up with my brother! It seems as if he's always angry at me about something.

MAN 4: Really?

WOMAN 4: Yeah, He gets upset so easily, I don't know what's the matter with him.

Answers

1. Serious

3. moody

2. Generous

4. bad-tempered

B CONVERSATION

B Audio script

BRENDA: My history professor says I should think about a career in politics. But I don't think I'd make a good politician.

TIM: Why not Brenda?

BRENDA: Oh, you know me. I'm terrible at speaking in front of a lot of people - you know, like giving speeches and things. And politicians have to speak in public all the time.

TIM: That's true. You know, that reminds me of a problem I'm having.

BRENDA: What is it?

TIM: You know my parents have a really successful restaurant, right? Well, my father wants me to be the

BRENDA: And you don't want to?

TIM: No, not at all, i'd be a terrible manager. I'm much too disorganized.

Answers

The jobs are a politician and a restaurant manager. Brenda wouldn't be a good politician because she's terrible at speaking in front of a lot of people. Tim wouldn't be a good restaurant manager because he's much too disorganized.

9 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Answers

1. d 3. a 5. b

2. e 4. c

11 READING

Answers

1, computer programmer 4. model 5. reporter inventor 6. writer

painter

UNIT 11

It's really worth seeing!

2 CONVERSATION

B Audio script

GUIDE: Let me tell you a little more about the statue before you climb to the top. In case you're wondering what the statue is made of, it has a framework inside that's made of iron; the outer skin is made of copper. The copper skin is only 2.4 millimeters thick. The supporting framework inside the statue is what holds the whole thing together.

The Statue of Liberty is a major tourist attraction, and every year about two million people from all over the world come here to visit it.

Answers

The Statue of Liberty has a framework inside that's made of iron; the outer skin is made of copper - only 2.4 millimeters thick.

About 2,000,000 (two million) people visit it every year.

3 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Answers

5.c 2. d 3. b 4. a 1.8

Answers

- 1. The phonograph was invented by Thomas Edison in
- 2. Radium was discovered by Marie Curie in 1898.
- 3. One Hundred Years of Solitude was written by Gabriel Garcia Marquez in 2971.
- 4. The World Wide Web was developed by Tim. Berners-Lee in 1989
- 5. The first digital HDTV (high-definition television) was produced by Woo Paik in 1991

5 PRONUNCIATION

B. Answers

The Eiffel Tower was an important advance in engineering.

The Tai Mahal is a tomb for the wife of an Indian prince.

6 LISTENING

Audio script

1. The Pyramids. Who built them? Why were they

MAN 1: The Pyramids were built more than four thousand years ago by the Egyptians. The most famous ones are on the west bank of the river Nile, outside of Cairo. They served as burial places for the Egyptian kings, After a king's death, his body was turned into what is called; a "mummy." This preserved it. The king's mummy was placed inside the pyramid, together with measures and the king's belongings. 2. Machu Picchu. When was it begun? When was it discovered?

WOMAN: Machu Picchu is an ancient Inca city in Peru. Construction of the city started in 1450. The ruins are about 2,400 meters above sea level - that's about 7,800 feet. The city covers about 13 square kilometers. - that's about 5 square miles. For centuries, the city was buried in the jungle and wasn't discovered again. until 1911. Today, Machu Picchu is one of the most famous tourist attractions in all of South America.

3. The Great Wall of China. Why was it built. How long is it?

MAN 2: The Great Wall of China is the longest manmade structure ever built. It was built to protect one of the Chinese kingdoms. Much of what exists of the wall today was built during the Ming Dynasty in the late 1400s, although parts of the wall are much older and go back to around 200 B.C. The wall is about 35 feet high, or 11 meters, and a stone roadway runs along the top of it. The main part of the wall stretches for about 2,000 miles, that is, about 3,400 kilometers.

Answers

- The Pyramids were built by the Egyptians. They were built as burial places for kings.
- Machu Picchu was begun in 1450. It was discovered in 1911.
- The Great Wall of China was built to protect one of the Chinese kingdoms. It is about 2,000 miles long 3,400 kilometers.

7 WORD POWER

Answers

Currencies Religious groups
peso Buddhists
dollar Christians
pound Muslims

Industries Agricultural products

mining beef electronics cheese tourism wheat

9 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Answers

- 1. Both French and English are spoken in Canada.
- 2. English is taught in elementary school in Singapore
- 3. A great deal of wheat is grown in Russia.
- Both cars and computers are manufactured in South Korea.
- 5. Mexico is made up of 31 states and a federal district
- 6. Kimonos are sometimes worn in Japan,
- 7. The baht is the currency that is used in Thailand.
- A lot of beef is eaten in Argentina.

11 LISTENING

Audio script

LECTURER: Colombia is located in the north western part of South America and is the fourth largest country in South America. It has coast lines on both the Atlantic and the Pacific oceans, It has a population of around 36 million and is a very beautiful country with snow-capped mountains as well as hot lowland plains. The capital city is Bogota, which was founded by the Spaniards in 1538. Almost all Colombians speak Spanish, which is the country's official language. The religion of the majority of the population is Roman Catholic Some of the most important industries are textiles and clothing. Other industries include mining and oil. Agriculture is the most important section of the economy, and Colombia's main agricultural products are coffee, flowers, sugar, bananas, rice, corn, and cotton. Colombia produces more coffee than any other country except Brazil.

Answers

t.ccation in northwest South America with coasts on the Atlantic and Pacific

oceans

Population around 36 million

Language Spanish
Religion Roman Catholic

Industries textiles and clothing; mining and oil coffee, flowers, sugar, bananas, rice.

Products com, and cotton

13 READING

A Answers

- 1. the Golden Gate Bridge
- the Panama Canal and the Netherlands North Sea Protection Works
- 3. the Panama Canal
- 4. the Itaipu Dam and the Channel Tunnel
- 5. the Empire State Building
- 6. the Netherlands North Sea Protection Works and the Channel Tunnel

UNIT 12

It's been a long time

2 CONVERSATION

B Audio script

STACY: So, Richard, what did you do after you

graduated?

RICHARD: Well, I majored in English literarure in

college.

STACY: Uh-huh.

RICHARD: So when I graduated, I tried to make my living as a writer.

STACY: Oh, really?

RICHARD: Yeah. See, I've written a novel and I've sent it to eight different publishers, but they all, uh, rejected it. Say, would you like to read it, Stacy? I have it right here with me.

STACY: Well' I'd love to read it, Richard,... but not right

now Uh, so do you have a job or anything? RICHARD: Oh, yes. I'm in sales.

STACY: Oh! Where?

RICHARD Actually, I'm a salesclerk in a hardware store. But when my novel sells, I know I'll be a best-selling author and I'll make lots of money.

Answer

Richard tried to make a living as a writer. He's a salesclerk in a hardware store.

3 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Answers

- I was driving in England when I suddenly realized I was on the wrong side of the road.
- I was living with my grandparents when I entered high school.
- I was making dinner last night when the phone rang.
- Tracy and Eric were working in a restaurant in Vancouver when they met
- Several years ago, I was having problems with math, so I had to find a tutor.
- We were living in a tiny apartment when our first child was born.
- My brother was ice-skating when he broke his arm.
- 8. I was watching TV when the power went out.

4 LISTENING

Audio script

Celia

INTERVIEWER: So what do you do, Celia? CELIA: I have a small advertising agency. INTERVIEWER: An advertising agency? That's interesting. So how did you get started? CELIA: Well, I used to work for a big advertising agency. But I wasn't happy there. I wasn't getting very interesting work. Anyway, one of our clients came to me one day (I used to handle their account - it's a travel company), and they said they really liked my work. They told me that if I started my own agency, they would give me their account. That was a really lucky break for me. It was quite a big account, so I decided to take a chance and open my own business. I soon found I was getting plenty of work on my own. and that's how it all started. So now I have a small company, with a staff of just four, but we're really busy and I love what I'm doing.

Rodney

INTERVIEWER: What do you do, Rodney? RODNEY: I have my own language school. INTERVIEWER: Is that right? And how did:you get started?

RODNEY: Well, I was teaching in a language school here in the city a few years ago. It was just a small school, and I loved the work but the owner of the school cidn't run it very well. Then she decided to sell the school I didn't have the money to buy it, but I have an uncle who's kind of rich, so I asked him for a loan. My uncle lent me the money, and I bought the school. INTERVIEWER: And it's going well for you.

RODNEY: Very well. My uncle realty came through for me. He gave me my lucky break! In fact, I've already paid him back almost all the money he tent me.

Victor

INTERVIEWER: What do you do, Victor?

VICTOR: I'm a writer.

INTERVIEWER: What do you write?

VICTOR: I write plays and fiction - short stones mainly - as well as magazine articles.

INTERVIEWER: Have you been writing full time for long?

VICTOR: About five years.

INTERVIEWER: And how did you become a writer? VICTOR: Well, I used to work for a company I was living in Los Angeles at the time. I was writing company reports, brochures, that kind of thing. And I wrote for my own pleasure - you know, as a hobby. One day I entered a short story of mine in a magazine contest, and my story won first prize. The editor of the magazine liked my story so much that she asked me to write another one - and paid me for it!

Answers

Celia: Owner of a small advertising agency When she used to work for a big advertising agency, one of their clients (a travel company) came to her and said if she started her own agency, they would give her their account. So she decided to take a chance and open her own business, and now she has a staff of four.

Rodney: Owner of a language school He was teaching in a small language school in the city

a few years ago when the owner decided to sell it. Rodney didn't have enough money, but then his uncle lent him some and Rodney bought the school. Victor: Writer of plays, short stories, magazine articles He used to work for a company where he wrote reports, brochures, etc. Also, he wrote for pleasure as a hobby. One day he entered a short story in a magazine contest and won first prize. The editor liked his story so much that she asked him to write another one and paid him for it.

5 WORD POWER

Possible answers

kid	1-12	middle-aged person	40-55
infant	0-1	baby	0-2
child	1-12	teenager	13-19
adolescent	13-17	boy	4-20
a girl	4-20	ma	21 +
woman	21+	young adut	19 -25
young person	16-20	elderly person	75+

7 CONVERSATION

MAGGIE: cript

MAGGIE: Hey, Bob, how's it going?

BOB: Pretty good, thanks.

MAGGIE: I haven't seen you for a while. What have you been up to?

BOB: Well, I've been looking for a house to buy - I finally found one last month. I move in next week.

MAGGIE: Gee. that's terrific

BOB: Yeah. I'm really tired of dealing with landlords. So what have you been doing lately?

MAGGIE Well, I just got back from a vacation in Italy. BOB: Italy? Whereabouts in Italy?

MAGGIE: Mostly in the north, around Milan. I have a cousin up there.

BOB: I see. Did you have a good time?

MAGGIE: Yeah, It was great, in fact, I just got engaged to a guy! met there.

BOB: You're kidding! Well, that must have been some vacation!

Answer

The man has been looking for a house to buy and finally found one last month; he moves in next week. The woman just got back from a vacation in Italy; she just got engaged to a guy she met there.

8 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Answers

- A: What have you been doing these days?
 B: Well, I've been spending my free time at the beach.
- A: Have you been working part time this year?
 B Yes, I have. I've been working at a shoe store on the weekends.
- A: How have you been feeling lately?
 B: Great! I've been getting a lot of sleep, and I haven't been eating too much fat or sugar.
- A: Have you been getting enough exercise lately?
 B: No, I haven't I haven't been going to the gymotten enough.

9 PRONUNCIATION

Answers

A: Has it been a year since I last saw you? B: No, it's been two years.

A. Have you been losing weight?

B: Well, actually, I've been gaining weight.

A: Oh, and have you been going to school?

B: No, I've been teaching school.

11 READING

Answers

Sarah

On her fourth birthday, her father gave her a violin. By age 5, she was accepted at Juilliard; by 8, she was a soloist with major orchestras; she has recorded many albums.

Michael

When he was 4 months old, he could say full sentences.

By 10 months, he could read; at 5, he entered high school and finished in one year; by 10, he graduated from college with honors; at 11, he went to graduate school.

Alexandra

When she was 2, her parents gave her some crayons and coloring books.

By 7, she was working in oil paints; at 8, she had her first exhibition; her paintings have sold for as much as \$80,000, and she is often compared to Picasso and other great artists; she has been on TV, and a book of her paintings has been published.

Review of units 9-12

4 LISTENING

Audio script

MAN 1: [Music and applause] Welcome to today's show! The rules of the game are simple: I will ask a question, and the first contestant to hit the buzzer gets to answer that question. Each correct answer is worth \$100. Today's topic is "Spain." Are you ready, contestants? The first question, for \$100, is: What is the currency in Spain? [Buzzer]

WOMAN 1: The peseta.

MAN 1: That's right. The peseta. That's spelled P-E-S-E-T-A. And now for the next question: Do they drive on the right or the left in Spain? [Buzzer]

WOMAN 1: They drive on the right.

MAN 1: Correct! You're doing very well, Contestant A! Maybe the other contestants can catch up on our next question: What is the population of Spain? [Buzzer] MAN 2: Forty million people?

MAN 1: Right you are - forty million. Let's see how you do with this next question: What is the capital of Spain? [Buzzer]

MAN 1 Yes, Contestant C. WOMAN 2. Um... Lisbon?

MAN 1: No, I'm sorry. Anyone else know the answer? [Buzzer]

WOMAN 1: The capital is Madrid.

MAN 1: That's right, Well, Contestant A is clearly in the lead, and there are only two more questions left. Let's go, players! The next question is: What is one of the most popular sports in Spain? [Buzzer]

WOMAN 2: That would be builfighting.

MAN 1: Good for you! You now have one correct answer! And now for our last question of the game. This is a special bonus question tor \$200: How much

the thes are located next to Spain, and what are they [Buzzer]

MAN 2: Two countries border Spain: France and Poetugal.

MAN 1: Contestant B, by answering that question correctly you have now tied Contestant A for the lead! We'll see you both back here tomorrow for the championship playoff. Thank you all for joining us today, [Applause & music]

Answers

Currency the peseta
Driving on the right
Population 40 million
Capital Madrid
Popular sport bullfighting

Neighboring countries France and Portugal

UNIT 13

A terrific book, but a terrible film

2. CONVERSATION

B Audio script

LYNN: You never saw Johnny Depp in *Benny and Joon*? That's got to be one of my favorite movies of all time!

CAROL: Actually, I did see that, it was OK PAUL: I saw it, too, and I thought it was aswful. LYNN: Well, I'll call the theater and find out what time this new movie starts. {Dials number} Hello. Could you tell me what time the new Johnny Depp movie is playing tonight? [Pause as Lynn listens] Oh, really? Oh, OK. Thanks. [Hangs up] You guys won't believe this. The new Johnny Depp movie just finished playing last night!

PAUL: Oh, no!

LYNN: Yeah. And guess what's playing now?

CAROL: What?

LYNN: Benny and Joon!

CAROL: Well, so much for our going to the movies tonight. What else could we do?

PAUL: I have an idea

LYNN: What?

PAUL: The new skating rink opens tonight. Let's go acesks final

CAROL: Ice-skating? That sounds like fun' LYNN: Let's do it!

Answers

Lynn calls the theater and finds out the new Johnny Depp movie just finished playing last night. Playing now is another Johnny Depp movie called *Benny and Joon*. It's one of Lynn's favorite movies of all time; Carol saw it but thought it was just OK; Paul saw it, too, and thought it was awful

They finally decide to go ice-skating at a new rink that's opening tonight.

3 GRAMMAR FOCUS

- Denzel Washington is a very interesting actor.
- 2.1 find nature films fascinating.
- 3. I'm not interested in horror movies.

- 4. I'm bored with watching television.
- I loved Winona Ryder's latest movie. I was amazed that it didn't do better.
- 6. I thought Jurassis Park was an exciting book.
- 7. I'm tascinated by Michael Crichton's novel.
- It's surprising they don't make many westerns these days.

4 WORD POWER

Answers

stupid awful absurd disqueting dreadful dumb horrible ndiculous silly terrible strange wonderful bizarre fabulous odd fantastic marvelous unusual weird outstanding

5 LISTENING Audio script

1

MAN 1; What did you think of the new Stephen King book?

WOMAN 1: Oh, I couldn't stop reading it once I got started, I stayed up till four o'clock in the morning to finish it!

MAN 1: And wasn't the ending great?

WOMAN 1: Yeah, it really was! Such a surprise! And the whole story moved along so last, too!

2.

WOMAN 2: How did you like the movie?

MAN 2: Well, I walked out after half an hour.

WOMAN 2: You did?

MAN 2: Yeah, it was so dull that I started failing asleep! And five never seen such bad acting from Jim Carrey! WOMAN 2: Oh, realiy? He's usually pretty good. MAN 2: Well, not in that movie. I wish he'd choose better roles.

3

MAN 1: What did you think of that documentary about Australia?

MAN 2: Oh, I learned so much! I didn't know they had so many different kinds of animals there. And the photography!

MAN 1: Yeah, it was something, wasn't it?

MAN 2: Uh-huh, it was pretty amazing. It made me want to go there and see it for myself sometime.

4

WOMAN 2: Have you read that book that just came out about UFOs?

WOMAN 1: Yeah, what a waste of time! Just the same stilly stuff about visitors to Earth from other planets.
WOMAN 2: Uh-huh. It said absolutely nothing new.
WOMAN 1: You know, I'm sick of hearing those stories about little green crearures. If they're real, how come no one can ever take a picture of them?

Answers

fascinating
 boring

3. terrific 4. ridiculous

6 PRONUNCIATION

A Answers

absurd fantastic outstanding amazing fabulous fascinating successful terrible unusual ridiculous surprising terrific

B. Answers

It was a terrific book, but a terrible movie!

I thought Jurassic Park was indiculous, but it was very successful.

Jaws was an exciting movie with many frightening scenes.

9 GRAMMAR FOCUS Relative clauses

Answers

A: Have you heard of West Side story?
 B: Yes, it's musical which/that has some wonderful

 A: What's the movie Schindler's list about?
 B: It's about an Austrian man who/that saved the life of many people during World War II

3.A. Did you enjoy reading Stephen King's latest novel?

B: Yes, it was a great book which/ that was hard to put down.

4. A: Who was George Gershwin?

B: He was an American composer who/that wrote lots of fantastic music.

 A: Who is Stephen Spielberg?
 B: He's a movie director who/that's made some of the most successful movies of all time.

11 LISTENING

A Audio script

PAULINE: [Music] Welcome to A Night at the Movies' I'm Pauline Kahn ...

COLIN: And I'm Colin Hale. Good evening!
PAULINE: Tonight we're going to review the new
James Bond film. Well, I really liked this new James
Bond actor very, very much!

COLIN: Mm-hmm.

PAULINE: He's the best actor they've ever had in the role - warm, human, even funny. A totally believable character.

COLIN: I have to agree, a perfect double-on-seven type. Pauline, what did you think of the story? PAULINE: It was a standard story for a Bond movie ... uh, the usual beautiful women, the usual evil villain nothing new.

COLIN: Well, I'm surprised. I have to say that I thought the story was unusually good. The race car scenes were exciting, and the surprise ending was great. PAULINE: Well, I can't agree with you there! COLIN: Well, what did you think about the photogra-

PAULINE: I was not very impressed at all by the photography. Everything looked take, not real. I can't believe it was actually filmed in Africa where the story took place.

COLIN: I can't believe you. I haven't seen such good photography in a long time, especially in the action scenes.

PAULINE: Now that brings up another weakness in the film: the special effects. Again, it's just the same old stuff ... the car that flies, the pen that's really a gun You get tired of that kind of thing.

COLIN: I'd hardly think you and I saw the same movie. Pauline, I have to say that the special effects were the

best ever in a Bond film. For example, the scene where...

PAULIME: Excuse me, Colin. We're gaing to have to break for a commercial.

COUN: You're right; Pauline. We'll be right back with our ratings. [Musich.

E Audio script

PAULINE: [Music]: So, Colin, how do you rate the new James Bond movie that we've reviewed this week? COLIN: Well, Pauline, I'd have to say that I'm proud to: give this movie my highest rating... four stars... and I would like to encourage everyone to go and see thismovie soon! How about you, Pauline? You did like the new actor who plays James Bond.

PAULINE: That part's true, Colin; however, I have to give the movie only two stars... a rating of "fair" COLIN: Hmm Well, that's all from us tonight. See you next week [Music]

Answers

	Pauline	Colin
Acting	3	3
Story	2	3
Photography	ĩ	3
Special effects	1 or 2	3

13 READING

Movie Director's latest triumph!

The critic probably gave it four stars.

Key words/phrases: triumph, even better, incredible, improved, technical genius, know how to win our hearts. Everyone will love, exciting, one of the greatest movie villains of all time, spectacular, (two exclamation points - one in the title and another in the last sentence - which show strong feeling)

A new old hit

The critic probably gave it two stars

Key words/phrases: New, Old Hit, better than ever... sort of, clearer but...louder, some new characters, but seem a little silly now, expected this to be so much better... Maybe... should have made an entirely new movie.

"What Junk!"

The critic probably gave it one star.

Key words/phrases: "What Junk!", why ... spend money and time, tired old movie, journey to save... on yes, (sarcasm here) the universe, a piece of junk (repeated twice).

UNIT 14

So that's what it means!

2 CONVERSATION

B Audio script

FREDDY: So how are things at school, Raj?

RAJ: Oh, pretty good, actually.

FREDDY: Do you find it easy to communicate with people?

RAJ: Most of the time - though there are some things I find a bit unusual - or example, the way that people end a conversation. You know, they'll say things like "Hey, let's get together soon." At first, I thought that they were inviting me to do something, but then I'

realized it's just a way of saying good-bye. It's not really an invitation at all. It takes a bit of getting used

Answer

Raj finds the way people end a conversation unusual. For example, they'll say things like "Hey, let's get together soon." He says it's just a way of saying goodbye; it's not really an invitation at all.

3 GRAMMAR FOCUS

A Answers

1. That sounds crazy! 2. Come here.

Be careful. 6. We won!

3. Be quiet.

7. Hello!

4. Peace.

8. i can't hear you.

B. Possible answers

Go away = with right hand, palm down, fingers straight, quickly flick the hand up several times I give up. ≈ elbows bent, hands up, palms open Pay attention. = with right hand, palm down, fingers closed except index finger, which is straight up

That's perfect! = make a circle with thumb and index finger with other three finger straight up.

I'm angry! = both fists clenched and lips tight I'm scared. * arms quickly thrown back beside shoulders, hands up, palms facing forward with eyes open wide and lips pulled back showing teeth

I'm hungry. = use right hand to rub stomach in a circular, clockwise motion.

That's delicious. = use tongue to go over the lips, or with lips together make a "mm-mmm" sound, while rolling eyes upward and around.

4 WORD POWER

Answers (from left to right)

g, a, f, c, h, d, e, b

Answers

1. That's interesting!

5. That's shocking!

2. That's amazing! 3. That's exciting!

6. That's disgusting!

4. That's confusing!

7. That's embarrassing! 8. That's annoying!

7 PROVERBS

Possible answers

A penny sawed is a penny earned. = The money you don't spend is also money you have saved.

A stitch in time saves nine = It's better to deal with a problem as soon as possible, before it becomes a much bigger problem.

Don't burn your bridges behind you. = Don't do anything you might feel sorry about later.

Every cloud has a silver lining. = Good can often come out of unpleasant situations, so try to be optimistic

One person's meat is another one's poison. * What one person loves, another person may hate; or, what is good for one person may be bad for another person.

Don't count your chickens before they hatch = Be careful not to act as if something has already happened when it really hasn't happened yet.

9 CONVERSATION

B Audio script

JOHN: Um, have you noticed that police car behind

VICKIE: Oh, yeah

JOHN: [Police siren] Oh, no! I'd berter pull over. POLICE OFFICER: May I see your driver's license, please?

JOHN: Sure, of course. Did I do something wrong, Officer?

POLICE OFFICER: Well, for one thing, you went over a double yellow line back there to pass a car. JOHN: Oh.

POLICE OFFICER: A double yellow line means "no passing". You can only pass when there's a broken yellow line on your side.

JOHN: Oh.

POLICE OFFICER: And another thing! You were in the left-turn-only lane, but you didn't turn! You went straight through the intersection instead.

JOHN: Oh, I guess I did, Officer, ... but ...

POLICE OFFICER: Yes, you did! Don't you know that if there's a sign with an arrow pointing to the left, you have to turn left when you're in that lane?

JOHN: Oh, yeah, you're right.

POLICE OFFICER: Of course, I'm right! My goodness! How did you ever pass your driving test and get a License?

JOHN: Gosh, I'm sorry, Officer.

Answers

The picture on the left The sign on the right

10 GRAMMAR FOCUS

A Answers

1.e 3.b 5.f 7.d 2.c 4.h 6.g 8.a

B. Possible answers

Number one means you aren't allowed to touch something.

You might see this sign in a gift shop or a museum,

Number two means you can swim there. You might see this sign at a beach or a lake,

Number three means you have to wear a hard hat. You often see this sign at a construction site.

Number four means you can recycle something. You may see this on aluminum cans or plastic bottles. Number five means you've got to fasten your seat belt. You should be able to see this sign in a taxi.

Number six means you aren't allowed to ride your bicycle there.

You might see this sign on a sidewalk or a pedestrianonly shopping street.

Number seven means you can drink the water. You usually see this sign above a drinking fountain. Number eight means you can't play ball there. You could see this sign in a park or at a beach.

11 LISTENING

B Audio script

- WOMAN: This one means you aren't allowed to hitchnike. You would see this on a freeway - where cars aren't allowed to stop - or where it's dangerous to walk.
- MAN This means you're allowed to use a camera to take photos if you want to. You might see this one in a museum or an art gallery.
- WOMAN- You would see this one at an airport or immigration checkpoint. I guess it means you have to go through customs and may have to open your bags for customs inspection.

- 4. MAN: This one means that the tap water isn't safe to drink. I guess you would see this one in a campsite, where they have water for washing or for cars but which isn't clean enough to drink. You might also see it in a hotel in some countries, where the tap water can't be drunk.
- WOMAN: This one means you can take a dog with you. Perhaps you would see it in a park or at a beach or public area.

Answers (from left to right)

3, 4, 5, 1, 2

12. READING

Answers

1.b 2.a 3.c

UNIT 15

What would you do?

2 CONVERSATION

B Audio script

KATE: So, what would you do if you found a lot of money?

LOU: Oh, you know me, Kate. I'm so honest. I scare myself sometimes. I'd take the money straight to the police.

KATE: I guess that wouldn't be such a bad idea. Maybe you'd be luckier than the guy in the article. Maybe the owner of the money would give you a big reward. LOU: Well, they say honesty pays. Right?

Answer

Lou would take the money straight to the police.

3 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Answers

1. d/g 3. b/c/e 5. a/g/h 2. c/f 4. c 6. b/e

4 LISTENING

A Audio script

1. JANE: I just got a postcard from my friend Alisa. She lost all her money on vacation in Europe. Isn't that horrible?

BURT: Yeah, that's terrible.

SUSAN: Jane, what would you do if you were on vacation overseas and you lost all your money and credit cards?

JANE: I guess I'd call my parents and ask them to send me some money right away. What about you, Burt?

BURT: Yeah, I'd probably do the same thing... although maybe I'd try going to the American Express office to see if I could get a loan or something. What about you, Susan? SUSAN: Well, I guess I'd probably sell my watch and camera or I might get a job as a waitress somewhere 'til I made enough money to buy a plane ticket home.

BURT: You know, I'm really worned about Gary SUSAN: Why?

BURT: Well, I think he has a serious drinking problem.

JANE: Really?

BURT: Yes, I think so. But I really don't know what to do. What would you do if you discovered a friend drank too much?

IANE: Oh, no question, I... I'd talk to him about it. BURT: Oh, I don't think i would.

JANE: Why not?

BURT. Well, because it's none of my business. I wouldn't tell a friend what to do in that type of situation ... so I wouldn't say or do anything about it. SUSAN: Well, I think I'd probably talk to his family about it. It's a serious type of personal problem, and his family should try to help him first.

3. SUSAN: You know, I was faced with a tough situation the other day. I was walking down the street and saw two people fighting. It looked pretty violent, but I didn't know what to do. So I just walked away. I figured it was none of my business. But now. I think I should have done something. What would you do if you saw two people fighting on the street?

JANE. I'm not really sure, but I know I'd have to do something. I guess I would call the police.

BURT No, that takes too long. I'd try to break it up.

JANE: But you could get hurt if you did that.

BURT Well, then I'd try to get someone to help me break it up. In the meantime, I'll shout for someone to call the police.

Answers

- 1. What would you do if you were on vacation overseas and you lost all your money and credit cards?
- 2 What would you do if you discovered a friend drank too much?
- 3. What would you do if you saw two people fighting on the street?

B Answers (These suggestions were given.)

 Jane and Burt would phone their parents and ask them to send money.

Burt might also try going to the American Express office to get a loan or something.

Susan would sell her watch and camera or get a job as a waitress till she made enough money to buy a plane ticket home.

Jane would talk to her friend about it. Burt wouldn't say or do anything because it's none of his business.

Susan would talk to his family.

3. Jane would call the police.

Burt would try to break it up or get someone to help him, and he'd shout for someone to call the police.

6 WORD POWER

Answers

admit - deny spend -save
enjoy - dislike divorce - marry
agree - disagree accept -refuse
borrow - lend find - lose

remember - forget

8 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Answers

1. a/c/f 4. d/h 2. a/c/f/g 5. b/e/f 3.a

11 LISTENING

A Audio script

DR. HILDA: [Music] This is Dr. Hilda. Welcome to today's show. Now let's get started right away with our first caller. Helto!

CALLER 1: Hello, Dr. Hitda. I'm calling about my daughter. She's ... she's dating an older man. DR. HILDA: Oh. Now how old are these two people? CALLER 1: My daughter's eighteen, and this man is forty-two.

OR, HILOA, Mm-hmm.

ÇALLER 1: I told her she had to stop seeing him, and ... and now she won't speak to me. I feel terrible. Tell me, Dr. Hilda, what should I have done?

DR. HILDA: First, you should have spoken to this forty-two-year-old man. You should have asked him not to date your daughter for a couple of weeks - to give the situation some time to cool off. Then, if they still wanted to see each other and if the man seems like a nice person, you should let your daughter date him. You shouldn't worry so much about the age difference. OK, now let's go to our next caller Hello, caller!

CALLER 2: Hello? Uh, I'm a first-time caller, and uh well, my problem is that my father went away on a husiness trip, and I borrowed his brand-new car, and I had a bad accident.

DR. HILDA: Where is your mother?

CALLER 2: She's in Florida visiting some friends.

DR. HILDA: All right, go on.

CALLER 2: Well, I sent a telegram to my father and I...
I told him ... well, I told him someone had stolen the

DR. HILDA: Oh! You should have told your father the truth! Your father would probably understand about a car accident, and he would be glad you weren't hurt. CALLER 2: I'm not too sure about that!

DR. HILDA: Oh ... give it a try, young man, because the truth is always better than a lie. OK, now let's hear from our next caller. This is Dr. Hilda. You're on the air. CALLER 3: Hi, uh, I'm calling about a problem. Oh, it's kind of a personal problem ... it concerns work. DR. HILDA: Oh, yes, go on.

CALLER 3: Well, uh, I invited some friends from the office to my house for a party a couple of weeks ago. Everything was fine until someone started talking about politics.

DR. HILDA: Oh! You shouldn't have let the subject of politics come up.

CALLER 3: Well, it came up, and, uh, well, I finally got really angry at one of my co-workers, and, uh, to prevent a fight, I asked him to leave.

DR. HILDA: And ... what happened after that? CALLER 3 Well, now it's caused a big problem in the office. Uh, he won't speak to me.

DR. HILDA: Again, you shouldn't have talked about politics at a party! It's not a safe topic.

CALLER 3: That's for sure.

DR. HILDA: And you shouldn't have gotten so angry either!

CALLER 3: That's true! But what should i do now? DR. HILDA: It's easy. You should simply apologize to your friend and say that you were a fool.

CALLER 3: Well, maybe that's a good idea. I'll give it a try.

DR. HILDA: Good! Well, folks, "Nothing ventured, nothing gained," I always say. I'm Dr. Hilda ... until the next time. [Music]

Answers

Caller 1

- caller's daughter (18) dating older man (42)

- caller told her to stop seeing man; now daughter won't speak to caller (her mother), who feels temble - she should have spoken to man; asked him not to date daughter for few weeks; should let daughter date him if he seems nice; caller shouldn't worry about age difference

Caller 2

- caller borrowed father's new car; had bad accident
- caller sent telegram; said someone had stolen car.
- he should have told the truth: father would probably understand/be glad son wasn't hurt

Caller 3

- caller had some office friends over for party
- caller had discussion about politics and got really angry at one co-worker; to prevent fight, asked that co-worker to leave; now man wont speak to him
- he shouldn't have talked about politics: shouldn't have gotten so angry; should simply apologize to man; say he was a fool.

12 READING

Answers

Letters to Alice signed by

Distraught Sister

Feeling Guilty Tired Mom

Alice's response

begins:

Well, you learned a lesson. I think you did the right

thing.

You're making it too easy for him

UNIT 16

What's your excuse?

3 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Anwers

- Amanda asked them/told them/said to meet at Albert's apartment at 7:30 on Saturday.
- 2. Amanda asked them/told them/said to bring their favorite CDs.
- She asked them/told them/said not to bring any lood.
- 4. Amanda asked them/told them/said to bring a small gift for Albert.
- 5. She asked them/told them/said not to spend more than \$10 on the gift.
- 6. Amanda asked them/told them/said to be careful not to say anything about the party to him.

5 WORD POWER

Answers

express anger, a concern, your regrets give a compliment, an excuse, a reason make a complaint, a criticism, an excuse offer your congratulations, an invitation, sympathy tell a joke, a lie, a truth

Possible questions

When would you express anger? In what situation would you give a compliment? When would you make an excuse? In what situation would you offer your congratulations? When would you tell a joke?

7 LISTENING A Audio script

1. Scott

ALBERT: [Dials number]

SCOTT: Hello?

ALBERT: Hi, Scott! This is Albert, How are things? SCOTT: Oh, hi, Albert.

ALBERT Um, you know, it's my birthday on Saturday, and I thought maybe you'd like to come to my party. SCOTT: Oh, I really wish I could, but I won't be around this weekend, I'm leaving Friday night and won't get back till Sunday afternoon.

ALBERT: Oh.

SCOTT: I'm sorry, Albert, Uh, have a great party, though, and happy birthday.

ALBERT: Oh, thanks, And you have a great weekend,

SCOTT: Oh, thanks.

ALBERT: Well, bye.

SCOTT: See you around. [Both hang up]

2. Fumiko

ALBERT: [Dials number]

FUMIKO: Helio?

ALBERT: Furniko? Hi, it's Albert. How are you?

FUMIKO: I'm fine. How are you?

ALBERT: Oh, I m fine, too. Um, you know, Saturday is my birthday, and I was wondering if you'd like to come to my party.

FUMIKO: Oh. What time?

ALBERT: Say around seven thirty?

FUMIKO: Oh, I'm sorry. I think I may already have plans ... to go to the movies with my friends.

ALBERT: Oh, OK, Fumiko. I ... I hope you have a good tirne.

FUMIKO: Thank you. And I hope your party's fun. ALBERT: Yeah, well, I hope so, too, Uh, see you in

class on Monday?

FUMIKO: Sure! Bye-bye!

ALBERT Byel [Both hang up]

3. Manuel

ALBERT: [Dials number]

MANUEL: Hello?

ALBERT: Hello, Manuel?

MANUEL: Hi, Albert, Hey! How are you doing?

ALBERT: I'm pretty good. MANUEL: What's up?

ALBERT: Well, my birthday is Saturday and I'm having a little party with some friends, and I thought maybe you'd like to come.

MANUEL: Saturday?

ALBERT, Yeah.

MANUEL: Oh, you know, listen, I already promised my mother I'd take her to the new dance club downtown. She loves to dance, and she's really looking forward to

ALBERT: Oh, I didn't know your mom liked to dance, Manuel.

MANUEL: Oh, yeah, she loves it! And, well, Mom ... ALBERT: It's OK, Manuel, Don't worry about it.

MANUEL: I'm really sorry, OK, well...

ALBERT: See you soon. MANUEL: Take care, Albert, ALBERT: Oh bye, Manuel. MANUEL: Bye. (Both hang up)

4. Regina

ALBERT: [Dials number]

REGINA: Hello?

ALBERT: Hello? Regina? This is Albert.

REGINA: Oh, hi; Albert, [Coughs]

ALBERT: What's wrong? REGINA: I ... I ve got the flu.

ALBERT: Oh, I'm sorry to hear that. I guess you won't

be coming to my party on Saturday, huh?

REGINA: No. I guess not. I'm feeling pretty run-down, ALBERT; Oh, I'm sorry. Well, hey, take care of yourself

Regina. I hope to see you next week. REGfNA Yeah, me, too. [Coughs] Bye.

B Audio script

ALBERT: (Just back from the movies with Amanda, Albert is unlocking the door of his apartment Happy birthday to me, happy birthday to me, happy birthday to me, happy -

SCOTT, FUMIKO, MANUEL, REGINA: Surprise! Surprise! Happy birthday!

ALBERT: Oh, wow! Oh, no! Oh, my goodness! Scott, Furniko .. wow, what a terrific surprise! Manuel, Reginal Well, you really fooled me! I can't believe it! Amanda, did you set this up? Gee!

Answers |

1.d 2.e 3.b 4.a

8 GRAMMAR FOCUS

Answers

- 1. Cindy said/told me there was a party on Saturday at her house.
- 2. Bob said/told me he was leaving town for the weekend.
- 3. Mary said/told me that she had been invited to a wedding on Saturday.
- 4. Jim said/told me he had promised to help Joanne
- Ann said/told me she couldn't come because she had/has the flu.
- 6. John said/told me he would be studying for a test all weekend
- Susan said/told me she had to meet someone at the airport.
- David said/told me that he might have to work that

11 LISTENING AND WRITING

Audio script

NANCY S VOICE MAIL MESSAGE: [Phone rings and answering machine starts Hi. This is Nancy, Please leave your name and number and a short message. and I'll call you back. Thanks!"

BILL: [Beep] Hi, Nancy, This is Bill, It's about nine o'clock on Friday evening. About our dinner date: I'll meet you in front of Pizza House at six-thirty P.M. on Monday, OK? Bye!

MARY: [Beep] Hi, this is Mary, It's around eleven on Saturday morning. I'm just calling to let you know there's a French club meeting on Tuesday afternoon at two. See you then! Bye-bye!

AUNT MARIA: [Beep] Hello, Nancy! This is your Aunt Mana! I'm arriving on Wednesday, May fifth, late. I'll need you to pick me up at the airport at eleven thirty. By the way, I'm going to stay with you for three weeks I hope that's all right. Good-bye, dear.

TONY: [Beep] Hi, Nancy. This is Tony. Remember we planned to have dinner together on Monday? I'll meet you at seven o'clock in front of the Seafood Grill at the Hilton Hotel, OK? Hope your weekend was great! See you Monday!

Answers

- 1. Friday, 9 p.m. Bill called. He said he would meet you in front of Pizza House at 6:30 P.M. on Monday.
- Saturday, 11 A.M. Mary called. She said there was a French Club meeting on Tuesday at 2 P.M. She said she would see you then.
- Your aunt Maria called, She said she was arriving on. Wednesday, May 5, late. She said to pick her up at the airport at 11:30. She said she was going to stay with you for three weeks.
- 3. Tony phoned. He said that he would meet you at 7 on Monday in front of the Seafood Grill at the Hilton Hotel. He said he hoped your weekend was great!

12. READING

Answers

1 1/4 3. 1/4 4.2 5. 1

Review of Units 13-16

2 LISTENING

A Audio script,

WOMAN 1: Gee, that road sign looks kind of strange to me. I wonder what it means. Maybe it means the road gets slippery when it's wet. Or it could mean there are a lot of animals crossing this road.

WOMAN 2: Ught! That's the last time I ever go to a Sylvester Stallone movie! He's good-looking, but he really can't act! And the stories in some of these action movies are just unbelievable!

MAN: Wow! That lecture really made me think. Professor Smith makes everything so clear. He must be the best teacher I've ever had. I could never understand Greek philosophy before, but he made it all make sense.

WOMAN 1: What a day! First, they didn't have my reservation. Then we took off two hours late! And the food was cold... I couldn't even eat it! And the guy sitting next to me talked nonstop. Next time I think I'll try a different airline.

Answers

 a road sign 3. a lecture 2. a movie

4. a plane flight

B Answers

- 1. She is confused.
- She hated it.
- 3. He thought it was very interesting
- 4. She thought it was terrible.

Workbook Answer Key

UNIT 1 A TIME TO REMEMBER Exercise I

Α

Verb	Past Tense	Verb ·	Past Tense
þe	was/were	lose	lost
scream	screamed	get	got
write	wrote	hide	hid
laugh	laughed	become	became
move	moved	open	opened
have	had	do	did
B.			

My best friend in school was Miguel. He and I were in Mrs. Gilbert's third grade class, and we became friends then. We often did crazy things in class, but I don't think Mrs. Gilbert ever really got mad at us. For example, Miguel had a pet rat named Curly. Sometimes he hid it in Mrs. Gilbert's desk. Later, when she opened the drawer, she always screamed loudly and the class laughed. After two years, Miguel's family moved to another town. We wrote letters to each other for a few years but then we lost contact. I often wonder what he's doing now.

Exercise 2

MARY. Are you from around here?

SILVIO No, I'm from Brazil.

MARY Oh, really? Were you born in Brazil?

SILVIO: No, I wasn't born there, actually. I'm originally from Portugal.

MARY: That's interesting. So, when did you move to

SILVIO: I moved to Brazil when I was in elementary school. My parents immigrated there.

MARY: Did you grow up in Brazil?

SILVIO: Yes, I grew up in Brazil.

MARY: Where did you live?

SILVIO: We lived in Recife. It's a beautiful city in

northeast Brazil. Then I went to college. MARY: Did you go to school in Recife?

SILVIO: No. I went to school in Sao Paolo.

MARY: And when did you come to the United States? SILVIO: I came here last week. I'm Silvio Mendes. It's nice to meet you.

MARY: Nice to meet you, too. I'm Mary Burns.

Exercise 3

Answer will vary.

Exercise 4

Answer will vary.

- 1. True
- 2. True
- 3. False He made several unsuccessful films.
- 4. False: He only considered becoming a fulltime pilot; he did not work as a full-time pilot.
- 5. False: John and Kelly used to work or go out on weekends, but they prefer to stay home now.
- False: They have four homes and three planes.

Exercise 5

My favorite pet was a cat called Felix.

- 3. We used to go to camp during summer vacations. It was really fun.
- Our neighbors had a great tree house in their backyard. We used to sleep in it.

Answer will vary. Possible answers:

- They also used to go bicycling. Their dog Bruno. always used to follow them.
- And every year they used to play at the beach.
- 4. Winters were very different. Peter used to play the
- 5. Kate and Peter both used to read.

Exercise 7

- 2. A: Did you use to collect shells?
 - B. No, we didn't collect snells. We used to build sand
- 3. A: Did you use to go swimming?
 - B. Yes, we did. We used to go swimming for hours. Then we played all kinds of sports.
- 4. A: Really? What kinds of sports did you use to plav? or What sports did you use to plav?
- B: Well, we used to play beach volleyball with some other kids.
- 5 A: Did you use to lose?
 - B: No, we didn't. We used to win!

Exercise 8.

Answer will vary.

Exercise 9

MARIA; I'm an immigrant here. I was born in Chile and grew up there. I came here in 1995. I wasn't very happy at first. Things were difficult for me. I didn't speak English, so I went to a community college and studied English there. My English got better and t found this job. What about you?

Exercise 10

- 2. A: Tell me a little about yourself B: What do you want to know?
- 3. A: How old were you when you moved here? B: About 16.
- 4. A: Did you learn English here?
 - 8: No, I studied it in Morocco.
- A: By the way, I'm Lisa.
 - B: Glad to meet you.

UNIT 2 CAUGHT IN THE RUSH

Exercise 1

- 2 bus stop 3, bicycle lane
- traffic jam 5, news stand
- 6. taxi stand

Exercise 2

- 2. dark streets: install modern street lights
- no parking spaces: build a public parking garage.
- 4. cnme: hire more police officers
- 5. car accidents: install more traffic lights
- 6, traffic jams: build a subway line

There is too much crime.

The city should hire more police officers.

- There are too many dark streers.
- The city should install modern street lights.
- There are too many traffic jams. The city should build a subway line.

There are too many car accidents.

The city should install more traffic lights.

6 There aren't enough parking spaces.

The city should build a public parking garage.

- 2. There should be less crime.
- 3. There should be fewer dark streets.
- There should be fewer traffic iams.
- There should be fewer car accidents.
- There should be more parking spaces.

Exercise 3

- 2. business distnot
- 3. parking garages
- 4. air pollution
- 5 police officers
- 6. train system

Dear Editor.

Life in this city needs to be improved. For one thing, there are too many cars, and there is too much smog, especially at rush hour. The air pollution is terrible. This problem is particularly bad downtown in the business. district. Too many people drive their cars to work So what should we do about it? I think there should be more police officers at busy intersection. They could stop traffic jams.

We also need fewer parking garages downtown. The city spends too much money building them. It's easy to park, so too many people drive to work. On the other hand, the city doesn't spend enough on public transportation. There aren't enough subway lines, and the train system needs a lot of improvement.

Answers will vary.

Exercise 4

Answers will vary.

1 nekshaw

2. ferry 3. subway

4. tram

C

Answer will vary.

Exercise 5

- 2. A: Can you tell me where the buses are? B: Yes, there's a bus station just outside this
- 3. At Oh. no. I don't have enough money B: There's a cash machine right over there.
- 4. A: Do you know what time the last bus leaves for downtown?
 - B: No but I can check the schedule for you.
- 5. A: Could you tell me where the taxi stand is?
 - B. Sure. Just follow that sign.

Exercise 6

ROB: Could you tell me where the gym is? CLERK: Sure, the gym is on the nineteenth floor. ROB: OK. And can you tell me where the coffee shop 15?

CLERK: Yes, the, coffee shop is next to the gift shop. ROB: The gift shop? Hmm. I need to buy something for my wife. Do you know when the gift shop closes? CLERK: It closes at six o clock. I'm sorry, but you'll have to wait until tomorrow. It's already six fifteen.

ROB OK. Oh, I'm expecting a fax to arrive for me Could you call me when it arrives?

CLERK: Don't worry. I'll call you when it arrives.

ROB Thanks. Just one more thing. Do you know how often the airport bus leaves?

CLERK: The airport bus leaves every half-hour.

Anything else?

ROB. No. I don't think so. Thanks

Exercise 7

- 2. We need less traffic downtown
- 3. Could you tell me where the subway entrance is?
- 4. There aren't enough parking lots.
- 5 Do you know how often the bus come?
- 6. Can you tell me what time the last train leaves?

Exercise 8

Answers will vary.

UNIT 3 TIME FOR A CHANGE

Exercise 1

- 2. cramped/spacious
- 3. dangerous/<u>safe</u>
- 4. huge/small
- 5. light/dark
- 6. modern/old 7. quiet/noisy
- 8. reasonable/expensive

Exercise 2

- 2. The rooms are too dark.
- 3. The living room is too cramped for the family, or The living room is roo small for the family
- 4. The bathroom isn't modern enough
- The yard is too small for the children.
- 6. The street isn't quiet enough for us
- The neighborhood isn't safe enough.
- 8 The kitchen is too inconvenient.

Exercise 3

- There aren't enough bedrooms.
- It's not modern enough.
- 4. There aren't enough parking spaces.
- The neighborhood doesn't have enough street lights.
- There aren't enough closets.
- 7. It's not private enough.
- 8 The living room isn't spacious <u>enough</u>.

Exercise 4

REALTOR: How did you like the house on Twelfth Street?

LOU: Well, it's not as convenient as the apartment on Main Street.

REALTOR: That's true, the house is less convenient. LOU: But the house is not as cramped as the apartment

REALTOR: Yes, the house is more spacious. LOU: I think there are just as many closets in the

REALTOR: You're right. The closet space is the same. LOU: The wallpaper in the apartment is not as shabby as in the house.

REALTOR: I know, but you could change the wailpaper in the house.

LOU: Mmm, the rent on the aparrment is almost as expensive as (or not as expensive as) the house, but the house is much bigger. Oh, I can't decide. Can you show me something elice?

Α

Answers will vary

R

Answers will vary. Possible answer:

I live in a nice neighborhood. It's quiet and the people are friendly. There's a large park with a take and lots of trees nearby. However, there aren't enough shops or restaurants. My apariment is comfortable and bright, but it's cramped. The rooms are too small, and there isn't enough closet space. However, it's pretty convenient. For example, I have my own washing machine.

Exercise 6

Α

be change have move
healthier my appearance more free time somewhere
else
happier my job no homework to a new

В

- 2. I wish I could change my appearance.
- 3 I wish I had no homework.
- 4 | wish I had more free time.
- 5. I wish I could change my job.
- I wish I could move somewhere else, or I wish I could move to a new place.

Exercise 7

Δ

Answers will vary. Possible answer:

- 2 He wishes he went out more offen.
- 3 He wishes he went to the movies more often
- 4 He wishes he visited his friends more often.
- s He wishes his weekends weren't boring.
- 6 He wishes he didn't spend his time cleaning the house and watching TV

R

Answers will vary.

Exercise 8

- 2. A: I wish I could retire.
 - B: I know what you mean.
- A Where do you want to move?B: Somewhere else.
- 4. A: I wish I could find a bigger apartment.
 - B: I like it, though.

Exercise 9

- 2. The neighborhood isn't dangerous. or The neighborhood isn't too dangerous.
- 3. My apartment isn't private enough.
- 4. Our house has just as many bedrooms as yours.
- I wish I had more closet space, or I wish I had enough closet space.
- 6. We wish we could move somewhere else.
- The apartment isn't big enough.
- 8,1 wish this exercise were not difficult.

UNIT 4

I'VE NEVER HEARD OF THAT!

ISABEL: I went to Sunrise Beach last week. Have you ever been to Sunrise Beach, Andy?

ANDY: Yes, I have, it's beautiful. Did you go there on the weekend?

ISABEL: Yeah, *I did.* I *went* on Sunday. I *got up* at 4:00

ANDY: Wow! I've never waken up that early! ISABEL: Oh, it wasn't so bad. I got to the beach early to see the sun rise. Have you ever seen a sunrise. Andy?

ANDY: No, I haven't, I prefer sunsets to sunness. ISABEL: Really? Then I went swimming around 6:00, but there were some strange dark shadows in the water. Have you ever heard of sharks at Sunrise Beach?

ANDY: Yes, I have. I heard a news report about sharks last summer.

ISABEL: Gee! Maybe ! had a lucky escape on Sunday morning! Why don't you come with me next time? ANDY: Are you kidding?

Exercise 2

Α

place

Answers will vary.

B and C

Answers will vary. Possible answer:

- 2 Have you ever eaten raw fish?
 - Yes, I have, I ate some yesterday. I really liked it
- Have you ever tried Indian food?
 Yes, I have. I tried some in an Indian restaurant last month. It was great.
- Have you ever traveled abroad?
 Yes, I have. I went to Russia last summer. I loved it.
- Have you ever ridden a motorcycle?
 Yes, I have. I rode my brother's motorcycle. It was scary.

Exercise 3

Α

Answers will vary.

В

	Problem	What didn't work?	What work?
Luis	headaches,	taking medicine,	not eating
	tomachaches	not eating sweets	fishs
	sore mouth	not drinking milk,	not eating not
		eating cheese	tomatoes
Fred	not able to	taking medicine	not eating
		hold his tools	bread and
			pasta.

Exercise 4

Α

- After that, pour the eggs into a frying pan.
 Add the mushrooms and cook.
- 2. Then beat the eggs in a bowl.
- First, slice the mushrooms.
- 3. Next, add salt and pepper to the egg mixture.
- Finally, fold the omelet in half And enjoy! Your ornelet is ready!

В

Answers will vary. Possible answer:

How to cook scrambled eggs.

First, mix two eggs in a cup. Then heat some butter in a frying pan. Next, pour the egg mixture into the pan. After that, cook slowly for about three minutes and stir the egg mixture once or twice with a spoon. Finally, pour the scrambled eggs onto a plate.

Exercise 5

SYLVIA: I went to a Thai restaurant last night.

JASON: Really? I've never eaten Thai food. SYLVIA: Oh, you should try it. It's delicious.

JASON: What did you order?

SYLVIA: First, I had soup with green curry and rice. Then I tried Pad Thai, It's noodles, shrimp, and vegetables in a spicy sauce.

JASON. I've never tasted Pad Thai, Was it very hot? SYLVIA: No. It was just spicy enough. And after that, ! ate bananas in coconut milk for dessert.

JASON: Yum. That sounds good.

SYLVIA: It was.

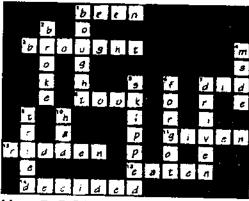
Exercise 6

- 2. I had a huge lunch, so I skipped dinner.
- What ingredients do you need to cook crispy fried
- First, fry the beef in oil and curry powder and then pour the coconut milk over the beef
- s. We need to leave the restaurant soon. Could we have the bill, please?

Exercise 7

- 1. A: Have you ever tried barbecued fish? You marinate the fish in soy sauce and garlic for about an hour and then barbeque it.
 - B: Mmm! That sounds good.
- 2. A: Here's a recipe called Baked Eggplant Delight, I usually bake eggplant for an hour, but this says you bake the eggplant for only ten minutes.
 - B: That sounds strange.
- A: Look at this dish frog's legs with bananas! I've never seen that on a menu before. B: Yucki That sounds awful.

Exercise 8



UNIT 5 GOING PLACES Exercise 1

ta*ke* rent go long walks a camper camping sailing lessons swimming а саг a vacation a condominium on vacation catch up on my studying lots of hiking some fishing my reading my homework

something exciting

8

Answers will vary.

Answers will vary.

Exercise 2

DAVE, So, Stella, do you have any vacation plans? STELLA: Well, I'm going to paint my apartment. The walls are a really ugly color. What about you? Are you going to do anything special?

DAVE: I'm going to rent a car and take a long drive STELLA: Where are you going to go?

DAVE: I'm not sure. I'll probably visit my sister Joanne. I haven't seen her in a long time.

STELLA: That sounds nice. I always like to visit my family.

DAVE: Yes, and maybe I'll go to the mountains for a few days. I haven't been hiking in months. How abow you? Are you going to do anything else on your vacation?

STELLA: I'll probably catch up on my studying. I have a lot of work to do before school starts DAVE: That doesn't sound like much tun. STELLA: Oh, I am planning to have some fun. I'm going to relax on the beach. Hove to swim.

Exercise 3

Α

- 2. A: How are you going to get there? B: I'm going to drive.
- A: Where are you going to stay? B: I'm going to stay in a condominium. My friend has one near the beach.
- 4. A: <u>Are you going to travel with anyone?</u>
 - B: No, I'm going to travel by myself.

- 2 Maybe I'll take the train
- 3. I'm not going to stay in a hotel.
- 4. I think I'll ask a friend.

Exercise 4

А

Answers will vary.

- 1. True
- False: Iguacu Falls is bigger than Niagara Falls.
- False; Rio de Janeiro has parks and beaches. Buenos Aires and Iguacu Falts have parks.

Exercise 5

- You should never leave cash in your hotel room.
- You need to take your credit card with you.
- You have to pay an airport tax.
- 5. You should let your family know where they can contact you.
- You'd better not go out alone late at night.
- You must get a vaccination if you go to some. countries
- 8. You don't have to get a visa for many countries nowadays,

Exercise 6

Α

- 2 a windbreaker
- 3 a first-aid kit
- 4. suitable clothes

Answers will vary. Possible answers:

- They'd better take windbreakers.
- They need to take a first-aid kit.
- He ought to take suitable clothes.

Exercise 7

Answers will vary. Possible answers

- 2. You must buy good quality camping equipment.
- You need to take a credit card.
- 4. You don't have to take a lot of cash.
- 5. You'd better take cooking equipment.
- 6. You should remember to bring insect spray.
- 7. You shouldn't forget your passport or identification.
- 8 You ought to take maps and trawl guides.
- 9. You shouldn't pack a lot of luggage.
- 10. You don't have to remember to bring a jacket.
- 11. You'd better not forget a first-aid kit.

- 1. I'm not going to go on vacation alone
- 2. I want to travel by myself.
- 3. You should travel with a friend.
- You must take warm clothes.

Exercise 9

Α

Answers will vary. Possible answers:

First. I'm going to arrive in Lisbon, Portugal, on July 6th I'm going to check in at the Tivoli Hotel. Then maybe I'll go shopping. I'm going to spend three days in Lisbon signt seeing. Then I'm going to take a tour bus across the border to Seville in Spain. Maybe I'll visit the cathedral. I'm going to see some flamenco dancing in the evening. Next, I'm going to rent a car and drive to Malaga or the Costa del Sol. I think I'll visit the-old city center and spend time on the beach. I'm going to fly to Madrid on July 19th. I'll probably visit some museums. I'm going to take a tour of the city and see the sights. Finally, I'm going to go home on July 22th.

R

Answers will vary. Possible answers:

- I have to pack enough clothes.
- I should get a passport.
- 4. I ought to get a vaccination.
- 5. I must make hotel reservations.

UNIT 6 SURE. NO PROBLEM!

Exercise 1

- Please put the dishes away. OK, I'll put them away.
- Hang up the towels.
 OK, I'll hang them up.
- 4. Turn off the lights, please. Sure, I'll turn them off.
- 5. Turn on the radio.
 Sure, I'll turn it on.

Exercise 2

- 1. clean <u>up</u>
- 6. take off
- 2. clean <u>out</u> 3. hang <u>up</u>
- 7. take <u>out</u> 8. pick <u>up</u>
- 4. put <u>away</u>
- 9. turn down
- 5. put on or
- 10. turn on or
- put out
- turn <u>off</u>

В

Answers will vary. Possible answers:

- 2. Hang up your pants. They're on the floor.
- 3. Put the trash out, it smells bad.
- 4. Turn up the radio, please, I can't hear it.
- 5. Pick up those books. They shouldn't be on the floor.

Exercise 3

- 2. Take out the trash.
- 3. Turn down the heat.
- 4. Pick up your things.

- 5. Put away your clothes.
- 6. Turn on the radio.

Exercise 4

Α

- Please put the groceries away. The milk is getting warm.
- 3. Take your shoes off. They're dirty.
- 4. Clean up the kitchen, please. It's a mess.
- 5. Turndown the music. It's too loud.

R

Answers will vary. Possible answers:

- 2. In a few minutes, I'm busy right now,
- 3. I'm not staying long.
- I'm doing my homework right now.
- 5. I den't think it's too loud

Exercise 5

Δ

Answers will vary

Ç

- 2. Strategy: soft
- 2. Strategy: <u>hard</u>
- 3. Strategy: fair

Ð

Answers will vary.

Exercise 6

- 2. Would you mind taking this form to the office?
- Could you please turn the CD player down?
- 4. Would you mind not leaving the door open?
- 5. Would you let me share your book?6. Can you pass me that book please?

Exercise 7

- 2. A: Would you mind helping me?
 - B: Sorry I can't right now.
- 3. A: By the way, you're sitting in my seat.
 - B: Excuse me, I didn't realize.
- 4. A: Would you like to come in?
 - B: All right. Thanks
- 5. A: Would you mind not taking all the coffee?
 - B: I'm sorry. I'll make some more.
- 6. A: Can you turn the radio up?
 - B: No problem.

Exercise 8

Answers will vary. Possible answers:

STEVEN: You're late, I've been waiting for you for half an hour.

KATIE: I'm sorry. My watch stopped.

- ROOMMATE 1: Could you turn the television down?
 I'm trying to study and the noise is bothering me.
 ROOMMATE 2: I'm sorry, I'll watch television later.
- FATHER: You didn't mail the letters this morning.
 SON: Oh. sorry, | was in a hurry and | forgot.
- CUSTOMER: I brought this Walkman in for repair last week, but it's still not working right.
 SALESPERSON: Oh. I'm sorry. I'll fix it for free this
- NEIGHBOR 1: Could you to something about your dog,? It banks at night and keeps me awake.
 NEIGHBOR 2: I dign't realize, it won't happen again.
- APARTMENT RESIDENT: Would you mind moving your car? You've parked in my parking space. VISITOR: I'll move it night now.
- TEACHER: Please put away your papers. You left them on your desk yesterday.
 STUDENT: Oh, I'm sorry! I forgot about them.

- 1. Throw those empty bottles away. Put them in the recycling bin.
- Would you mind picking up some groceries? We need coffee, milk, and rice.
- 3. Turn the faucet off. Water costs money!
- My neighbor made a <u>promise</u>. He said, "I'll be sure to stop my dog from barking."

Exercise 10

Α

- 2. not criticize my friends 6. take off your sunglasses
- 3 mail these letters
- 7. turn down the oven
- not talk so loud
 clean up your bedroom
- 5, put away the videotapes

В

Answers will vary. Possible answers:

- 2. Would you mind not criticising my friends?
- 3. Can you mail there letters?
- 4. Would you please not talk so loud?
- 5. Could you put away the videotapes?
- 6. Can you take off your sunglasses?
- 7. Would you mind turning down the oven?
- 8. Would you mind cleaning up your bedroom?

Exercise 11

Answers will vary. Possible answers:

- My roommates are often noisy late at night. I wish they would be guiet.
- My roommate Lucy always opens the window in winter: I wish she wouldn't open it.
- My friend Joe is always asking me for money. I wish he would ask someone else.
- My cousin Carol never returns my phone calls. I wish she would return my calls.

UNIT 7 WHAT'S THIS FOR? Exercise 1

- A lax machine is used for sending documents.
- 3. A robot is used for doing boring jobs.
- A satellite is used for transmitting radio and TV programs.
- A telephone is used for talking to friends.

Exercise 2

- ✓ Xerox machine
 ✓ photocopies
- A Xerox machine is used to make photocopies.
- 3. / satellites / weather

Satellites are used to study the weather.

- 4. < criminals > DNA fingerprinting
- ONA fingerprinting is used to identify criminals.
- 5. ✓ the World Wide Web ✓ information The World Wide Web is used to find formation

Exercise 3

- 2 CD-ROM is used for storing information on many subjects.
- 3. Police use DNA fingerprinting to identify criminals.
- 4. Computers are used to a access the Internet.
- 5. Satellites are used for transmitting radio programs.
- Home computers are used to make budgets.

Exercise 4

- People always <u>used</u> to mail letters, but nowadays they often fax them.
- A cellular phone is used to make phone calls from cars car from the street.
- I <u>used to</u> have an electric typewriter, but now I have a computer.

- 5 We just bought a great new CD player. We <u>used to</u> have a cassette player, but it was terrible.
- Modems are used to access the Internet.

Exercise 5

А

Answers will be vary

С

1, A, B, E 2, C 3, A, C 4, B, E 5, C, D

Exercise 6

Α

groups the World Wide

8

Answers will vary. Possible answers:

- 2. I use a carncorder to record family celebrations.
- I use the World Wide Web for researching school papers.
- I use a cellular phone to call for help when my car breaks down.

Exercise 7

- 3 Next, put it in a suitable place. Try not to expose it to direct sunlight.
- First of all, make sure to span the box carefully.
 Don't drop it. It's fragile.
- 4 After that, remember to attach the wires from the speakers to the main unit.
- 5 Finally, plug it into an electrical outlet. Turn it on and enjoy your music!
- 2 Then take the stereo out of the box. Don't forget to remove the plastic bags around the speakers

Exercise 8

Answers will vary. Possible answers:

- 2. Remember to keep it away from water.
- 3. Don't forget to get gas.
- 4. Be sure to plug it in.

Exercise 9

My brother just bought a laptop computer, it's really great. It has a color screen; it is easier on the eyes than a black-and-white screen. The computer has a battery, so he can use it without electricity far up to eight hours. It also has a modern inside. If he wants to send fax, he can send it electronically. And he can connect to the Internet. My brother joined a "chat group" on mountain climbing. He plans to take his laptop on an airplane when he takes a vacation mountain climbing. It's a very small computer, so he takes it everywhere with him.

Exercise 10

- 2. It's very fragile.
- Unplug it.
- 4. Don't spill anything on it, or Don't spill drinks on it.
- 5. Try not to drop the package.

Exercise 11

- A: What a day! First, my microwave didn't work.
- B: What happened?
- A: It burned my lunch.

Then I tried to use my computer, but that didn't work either.

- B: Why not?
- A: (t didn't connect to the Internet. After that I tried to use the vacuum cleaner.
- B: Let me guess, it didn't pick up the dirt.
- A: Worse! It spread dirt around the room.
- B: Did you have your robot help?
- A: Well, I tried to get it to clean the outside windows. But it refused.
- B: I don't blame it! You live on the 50th floor!

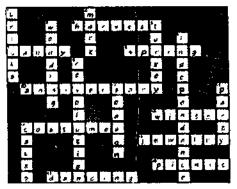
UNIT 8 LET'S CELEBRATE! Exercise 1

Two of the most important holidays in the United States are Independence Day and Thanksgiving Day. Independence Day, the Fourth of <u>July</u> marks the United States' declaration of <u>independence</u> from Britain. Most towns, big and small, celebrate the Fourth of July with parades and <u>fireworks</u>. Families celebrate with barbecues or picnics. Thanksgiving Day is celebrated in the <u>fall</u>, on the fourth Thursday in November. It is a day when people give thanks for the <u>harvest</u>. Most families have a large dinner with <u>roast</u> turkey Both Thanksgiving and Independence Day are national <u>holidays</u>.

Exercise 2

- 1 I hate April 15th. In the United States, it's the day when people pay taxes. I owe the government money every year.
- I don't like September. It's the month when school starts. I always miss summer vacation.
- June is my least favorite month. It's the month when students in the United States take exams. I never study enough.
- d. I have never liked winter, it's a season when I feet sad and depressed. The mid weather always affects my mood.

Exercise 3



Exercise 4

A Answers will vary.

С	People give	The religion	l celebrate
	gifts on:	holidays are:	
Easter		1	Answers
Secretaries' D	ay 🗸		will
Earth Day			vary.
Mothers Day	/		
Father's Day	1		
Labor Day			
Hanukkah	✓	~	
Christmas	✓	✓	

Exercise 5

Answers will vary.

Exercise 6

Newly marned couples often leave on their honeymoon before the wedding reception ends. When they go on their honeymoon, they like to be alone. After they come back from their honeymoon, many newlyweds have to live with relatives. They can only live in a place of their own when they have enough money to pay for it.

Exercise 7

- The woman's female friends often give her <u>a bridal</u> shower.
- The man's male friends often give him a <u>bachelor</u> party.
- 4. The wedding <u>ceremony</u> is often held in a church.
- After the wedding reception, the couple usually goes on their <u>honeymoon</u>.

Exercise 8

Answers will vary. Possible answers:

In my country, before a man and woman get marned, they usually get engaged. Sometimes the man gives his francee an engagement ring. After they get engaged, the couple plan their wedding.

Most couples get married in a church. The bride's

Most couples get married in a church. The bride's family and friends sit on one side of the church and the bridegrooms family and friends sit on the other side. After the wedding ceremony ends, everyone goes to the reception. It's a time when people make speeches about the couple and give them gifts. Then the couple leave for their honeymoon.

Exercise 9

- New Year's Eve is a night when many people have parties.
- 3 Everyone exchanges presents on Christmas.
- After they leave the reception, many couples change into everyday clothes.
- The bride and groom usually leave the reception before the guests do.

Exercise 10

Answers will vary. Possible answers:

- Should I bring flowers?
- 3. Do you serve any special food or drink?
- 4. Are we going to sing and dance?
- 5. What clothes should I wear?
- 6. Are there going to be any fireworks?

UNIT 9 BACK TO THE FUTURE

Exercise 1

Answers will vary. Possible answers:

In many cities nowadays, food shopping takes very little time. In the past, people <u>used to go</u> to a different shop for each item. For example, you <u>bought</u> meat at a butcher's shop and fish at a fish market. A fruit market <u>used to sell</u> fruit and vegetables For dry foods like noe or beans, you <u>had to go</u> to grocery stores. Today, you <u>get all these things at a supermarket. Many supermarkets <u>make</u> a lot of money these days. But times are changing. Soon, people <u>will drive</u> in their ears to huge out-of-town stores called "hypermarkets" to buy everything. And who knows? Sometime in the future, everyone is going to have a computer at home. People <u>might use</u> them to purchase everything from food to furniture, from legal advice to medical help. In some places, it's happening already.</u>

- 1. A: When did people travel by horse and carriage? B. About 100 years ago.
- 2. A: When might doctors find a cure for the flu? B: In the next 50 years.
- 3. A: When did the first man go to the moon? B: About 30 years ago.
- A: When are most people going to have computers at home?
 - B: In the next few years.

Exercise 3

Answers will vary. Possible answers:

- In the past, people used to collect records. Nowadays, they collect CD.
- A few years ago, <u>people used typewriters</u>. Today, they use computers.
- About a hundred years ago, women wore long dresses. These days, they wear short skirts.
- Nowadays, <u>apartment buildings often have 10 floors</u>. Sometime in the future, they might have 200 floors.

Α

Answers will vary.

	Advantage	Disadvantage
wind power	clean, lots of it	no energy without wind
waterpower	no pollution	expensive
geothermal power	cheap	not possible in
		most places
solar power	clean	no energy
		without sunlight

Exercise 5

- 1. A: What if I get in shape this summer?
 - B: You might be able to come rock climbing with me.
- 2. A: What will happen if I stop smoking?
 - B: Well, you might gain weight.
- 3. A: What if I get a new job?
 - B: You'll be able to buy new clothes.
- 4. A: What will happen if I don't get a summer job? B: You'll have to live with a roommate when school
- <u>starts.</u> Exercise 6

А

feel get lose quit

energetic married touch dieting relaxed a cold weight smoking

В

Answers will vary. Possible answers:

- 2. If I feel relaxed, I might sleep better.
- 3. If I get married, I'll have to save money
- 4. If I lose touch with Linda, I'll be very sad,
- 5. If I lose weight, III be very happy.
- 6. If I quit smoking, I'll feel healthier

Exercise 7

Answers will vary. Possible answers:

- 2. I'll feel healthier if I eat better food.
- If I get more exercise, I might have more energy.
- 4. If I don't get good grades in school, I won't be able to get a good job.
- 5. I might get more sleep if I go to bed earlier.
- I'll be happy if I graduate this summer.

Exercise 8

Noun Adjective energy energetic environmental environment health healthy

Noun Adjective medicine medical success successful

В

- 2. There are many environmental problems in my country. There's a lot of air pollution and the oceans
- 3. My health is not as good as it used to be. So I've decided to eat better food and go swimming every
- 4. My vacation was a great success, I feel much healthier and more relaxed.
- 5. If I start exercising more often, I might feel more energetic.

Exercise 9

- 2. In the future, few people will use cash to buy things
- 3. People used to use bicycles more than they do today, or in the past, people used to use bicycles. more than today.
- 4. If I get a better job, I'll be able to buy an apartment.
- 5. There's going to be a big new mall down town.

Exercise 10

Answers will vary. Possible answers.

I used to live in a very quiet place. My parents' house was in a small village. There was only one store and very little traffic.

Now, I live in a big city. My job is pretty boring. I work in a small company. If my English improves, I may be able to get a job in an international company. I'd like to travel around the world.

Next year, I'm going to take a course in English. I might go on vacation in the United States and Canada. Then my English will be very good and I'll try and get a new job there.

UNIT 10 I DON'T LIKE WORKING ON WEEKENDS!

Exercise 1

- 1. A: I enjoy working in sales.
 - B: So do !.
- A: I like working night shifts.
- B: Gee, I don't.
- A: I can't stand getting to work late.
 - B: Neither can !.
- A: I'm interested in using my language skills.
 - B: So am I.

Exercise 2

- 2. Ichiro is a word processor, but he hates working on a computer.
- Gwen usually works alone all day, but she enjoys working with a team, too.
- Ellen works for a large company, but she's interested in starting her own business.
- Carl has to use Portuguese and Japanese at work but he's not very good at learning languages.
- 6. Cindy has to drive to work every day, but she doesn't like commuting.

Exercise 3

- I'm not good at making decisions quickly.
- 1 can't stand having to meet deadlines.
- lenjoy working with a team.

Answers will vary. Possible answers:

- 2.1 can't stand working late on Fridays.
- 3. I don't mind starting work early in the morning.
- I'm interested in jogging and hiking.
- 5. I'm not interested in staying home.
- i'm good at cooking delicious food for lots of people.
- I'm not very good at making new friends.

Exercise 5

- Sam doesn't smile or laugh a lot. He often looks worried about things. He is a very <u>serious</u> person
- 2. You can trust Rose If she says she's going to do something, she'll do it. She's very <u>reliable</u>.
- Joe isn't good at remembering things. Last week he missed an important business meeting again. He is so forgetful.

Exercise 6

Α

Answers will vary.

В

- 1. journalist
- 2. stock broker
- truck driver
- 4. flight attendant

C

Answers will vary.

Exercise 7

- 2. Anita could be a good carpenter because she likes doing things with her hands and enjoys working with wood. She couldn't be a factory worker because she doesn't enjoy working in the same place everyday and hates being in noisy places.
- Jill would make a good teacher because she's good at explaining things and she really tikes children. She would make a bad doctor because she can't stand working long hours.
- 4. Mana would make a good model because she's really interested in meeting people and enjoys wearing different clothes every day. She could never be an accountant because she isn't good at organizing her time and she can't stand computers.
- 5. Larry could be a salesperson because he's really good at selling things and loves helping people. He wouldn't make a good detective because he isn't good at solving problems.

Exercise 8

- 1. Jerry could never be a nurse or teacher because he is very bad-tempered and impatient with people. On the other hand, he's an efficient and reliable person. So he would make a good bookkeeper or accountant.
- Christine would make <u>a</u> terrible lawyer or executive.
 She isn't good at making decisions. On the other hand, she'd make <u>an</u> excellent actress or artist because she's very creative and funny

Exercise 9

Α

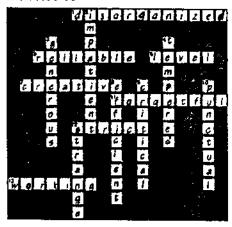
- 2. friendly/unfriendly
- 5. level-headed/moody
- 3. hard-working/lazy
- 7. quiet/outgoing
- 4. interesting/boring
- 8. reliable/forgetful
- 6. patient/impatient

В

- Su Yin is a very outgoing person. She really enjoys meeting new people.
- I can't a stand working with forgetful people. I like having reliable co-workers.

- Becky is very moody. One day she's happy and the next day she's sad.
- Phillip is an interesting person. I'm never bored when I talk to him.

Exercise 10



UNIT 11 IT'S REALLY WORTH SEEING!

Exercise 1

- 2. The play *Romeo and Juliet* was written by William Shakespeare in the 1590s.
- 3. The telephone <u>was invented</u> by Alexander Graham Bell in 1876.
- 4. The picture *Sunflowers* was painted by Vincent van Gooh in 1888
- Penicillin was discovered by Sir Alexander Fleming in 1929.
- The movie for the film West Side Story was composed by Leonard Bernstein in 1952

Exercise 2

- 2 The novel Frankenstein was written by Mary Shelley
- The Guggenheim Museum in New York City was designed by Frank Lloyd Wright.
- The first space satellite was launched by the Soviet Union in 1957.
- The first human heart transplant was performed by Dr. Christiaan Barmaid in 1967.

Exercise 3

- 2 The Eiffel Tower was designed by Gustave Eiffel in 1889.
- The pyramids were built by the ancient Egyptians in about 2500 B.C.
- The Sydney Opera House was designed by Jam Utzon in 1973.
- Brasilia was planned by Lucia Costa and Oscar Niemeyer in the late 1950s,

Exercise 4

Α

<u>Rome, Italy</u> According to many historians, this city was founded in 753 B.C. by Romutus and was named after him. However, the name may come from Ruma, the old name for the The Tiber River.

Mexico City, Mexico This city was founded by the Spanish on an island in a lake. Both the country and the city are named after an older name for the city, Metz-xih-co, which means "in the center of the waters of the moon."

Madrid, Spain This city was made the capital in 1561. Its name may come from the Arabic name Medshrid, meaning "timber". Good supplies of timber were found in the area at the time.

London, England The Romans founded this city in the first century B.C. In Roman times it was known as Londinium which may have been the name of a group of people.

Manita, the Philippines Founded in 1571, this city takes its name from Tagalog, a language that's widely spoken there. It means "a place where the plant indigo is found" (may = "there is"; nila = "indigo")).

Ottawa, Canada This city became the capital of the country in the middle of the nineteenth century. Its name is taken from the word Adawa in the Algonquin Indian language, which probably means "to trade".

- Faise: The name Rome may come from Romulus, the man who founded the city, or Ruma, the old name for the Tiber River.
- 2. True.
- 3. True
- False: The name London may come from Londinium, which may have been the name of a group of people.

Exercise 5

Ecuador is situated on the equator in the northwest of South America. It is made up of a coastal plain in the west and a tropical rain forest in the east. These two areas <u>are</u> separated by the Andes mountains in the center of the country.

The economy is based on oil and agricultural products. More oil is produced in Ecuador than any other South American country except Venezuela. Bananas, coffee, and cocoa are grown there. Many of these products are exported. Hardwood is also produced and exported.

The people are mostly of Indian origin. Several Indian languages <u>are</u> spoken there, for example, Quechua. Spanish <u>is</u> spoken in Ecuador, too. The currency <u>is</u> called the sucre.

Exercise 6

- 2. The peso's the currency that is used in Chile.
- Tourism is a very important industry in Italy. Millions of people visit every year.
- 4. Gold mining is an important industry in South Africa.
- Much of the world's <u>wheat</u> is grown in the Canadian prairies. It's used to make foods like bread and pasta.
- A lot of meat, especially <u>beef</u>, is exported from Argentina.
- The <u>electronics</u> industry was developed in many Asian countries in the 1980s. Now, a lot of computers and televisions are exported from countries like South Korea.

Exercise 7

Answers will vary, Possible answers;
Every year, millions of tourists visit California.
California is known for its beautiful scenery, warm climate, and excellent food. There are twenty national parks in California. They are visited by over thirty million people every year. Many world-famous museums are located there, including the Getty Museum in Malibu and the San Francisco Museum of Modern Art.

The state is divided into two parts, called Northern California and Southern California. San Francisco and Yosemite Nadonal Park are located in Northern California. San Francisco is surrounded by water on three sides and is a city with a beautiful bay and several bridges. Its streets are always filled with tourists. On the north end of the bay is Napa Valley, where many excellent wines are produced. South of San Francisco, there is an area that is famous for its computer industries; it is called Silicon Valley, Many computer industries are located there. Los Angeles, Hollywood, and Disneyland are found in Southern California, Southern California is known for its desert areas, which are sometimes next to snowcapped mountains. Southern California is one of the few places. in the world where you can ski in the morning and surfin the afternoon.

Exercise 8

- The song Mull of Kintyre was written by Sir Paul McCartney.
- The new entrance to the Louvre in Paris was designed by I.M. Pei.
- German, French, and Italian are spoken in Switzerland.
- 4 Malaysia is governed by a prime minister

Exercise 9

Α

- Who wrote The Color Purple?
- What is produced in Thailand?
- 3. Where is Acapulco Located?
- 4. When was Santiago, Chile, founded?

R

- 1. Do you know when the Golden Gate Bridge was completed?
- 2. Can you tell me who Don Quixote was written by?
- 3. Do you know when antibiotics were first used?
- 4. Could you tell me who the tea bag was invented by?

Exercise 10

- 1804 The first steam locomotive was built in Britain
- 1829 A speed record of 35 mph (48 kph) was established by a train in Britain.
- 1857 Steel rails were used for the first time in Britain.
- 1863 The world's first underground railway was opened in London.
- 1869 The air brake <u>was developed</u> by the U.S. inventor George Westinghouse. This made high-speed train travel possible.
- 1898 The first U.S subway system was opened in Boston.
- 1964 'Bullet train' service was introduced in Japan.
- 1990 A speed of 320 mph (512 kph) <u>was reached</u> by the French high-speed train (called "TGV")
- 1995 Maglevs were tested in several countries. These trains use magnets to lift them above the ground

Unit 12 IT'S BEEN A LONG TIME!

Exercise 1

- 2. Mr. Yuen was cooking dinner.
- The Hardings were watching television.
- Jenny was using her computer.

- 5. Andrew was sleeping.
- 6. Ann was reading the newspaper,

Answers will vary. Possible answers:

- 2. At 11:00 in the morning, I was working.
- 3. At noon, I was having lunch.
- 4. In the afternoon, I was taking English classes.
- At 10:00 last night, I was talking to a friend on the phone.
- 6. At this time yesterday, I was doing my homework.

Exercise 3

CARL: How did you get your first job. Anita? ANITA: Well, I got a summer job in a department store

while I was studying at the university.

CARL No. I mean your first full-time job.

ANITA: But that is how I got my first full-time job. I was working during the summer when the manager offered me a job after graduation.

CARL: Wow. That's lucky. Did you like the job?
ANITA: Well, I did at first, but then things changed. I was doing the same thing every day, but they didn't give me any responsibility. I was getting really bored when another company asked me to work for them.

Exercise 4

- 2.1 met a really nice guy last week while I was jogging.
- My car was giving me a lot of trouble, so <u>I went to a</u> mechanic.
- 4. Dinner arrived while was talking on the phone.

Exercise 5

Α

Answers will vary.

C

- False: Bill Gates learned that you have to work hard for what you want.
- 2. True.
- 3. False: He hated losing a game of tennis.
- True.
- False: He made his first million dollars by the time he was 25.

Exercise 6

Δ

- Ruth and Peter have been going to graduate school since August.
- 3. Jim has been studying Chinese for a year.
- 4. Maria hasn't been teaching since she had a baby.
- Cindy hasn't been living in Los Angeles for very long.
- Felix and Anna have been traveling in South America for six weeks.

В

Answers will vary. Possible answers:

- 2. I've been studying architecture for eighteen months.
- 3. I've been working here for a few weeks.
- 4. I've been playing chess since high school.
- 5. I've been living in this city since 1996.
- 6. I haven't been swimming for ages.

Exercise 7

CHRIS: What have you been doing lately?

ALEX: I've been working a lot and trying to stay in shape.

CHRIS: Have you been logging?

ALEX: No. I haven't been jogging, t've been playing tennis in the evenings with friends.

CHRIS: Really? Have you been winning?

ALEX: No, I've been losing most of the games. But it's fun. How about you? <u>Have you been getting any exercise</u>?

CHRIS: No, I haven't been getting any exercise. I've been working long hours.

ALEX: Have you been working weekends?

CHRIS: Yes, I've been working weekends. I've been working Saturday mornings.

ALEX: Well, why don't we play a game of tennis on Saturday afternoon? It's great exercise!

Exercise 8

- A: When I was a kid, I lived in New Zealand.
 B: Wow! Tell me more.
- A: I haven't been ice-skating for ages.
 - B: Neither have 1.
- 3. A: I was a teenager when I got my first job.
 - 8: Really? That's interesting.
- A: I haven't seen you for a long time.
 - B: Not since we graduated.

Exercise 9

- 2. A: Were you living in Europe before you moved here?
- B: No, I was living in Korea.
- 3. A: How long have you been studying English?
 - B: I have been studying it for about a year.
- 4. A: What were you doing before you went back to school?
 - B: I was selling real estate.
- 5. A: What have you been doing since I last saw you?
 - B: I have been traveling around Europe.

Exercise 10

- He was an adolescent when he started saving up for a world trip.
- I was commuting to work when I lived in the suburbs.
- 4 I've had a part-time job for a year.
- 5. I haven't been saving enough money lately.
- 6. I haven't seen you for ages.

UNIT 13 A TERRIFIC BOOK, BUT A TERRIBLE FILM!

Exercise 1

The President

Nathan Kane's movie. The President is based on a true story about the life of a president. But don't watch this movie if you're interested in history. It isn't all true. However; Kane makes the film exciting, and the editing is outstanding. I was also amazed by the photography, which certainly deserved to win an Oscar.

The Patient

You will be <u>surprised</u> at how good *The Patient* is, it is one of the most <u>fascinating</u> films I've ever seen. It's a romantic story about four people during the Second World War. All the actors are fantastic. You won't be <u>bored</u> for one second. A must-see.

Exercise 2

- think Spielberg's movie The Lost World is as good as Jurassic Park. In fact, it's really terrific.
- The dogs were really great in 101 Dalmations. I don't know how they made them do such fantastic things.
- Uma Thurman is wonderful in Pulp Fiction. I think she's a really great actress.

- A: His new movie is the dumbest movie t've ever seen.
 - B: Ldidn't like it, either.
- A: It's weird that they don't show movie classics on TV. I really like them.
 - B: <u>I know, it's strange.</u>
- A: I think Glenn Close is an outstanding actress.
 B: Yeah, she's excellent.
- 5. A: The movie we saw last night was ridiculous.
 - B: Well, I thought it was pretty stood.

Exercise 4

Answers will vary.

Exercise 5

A

Answers will vary.

В

1. a horror film 2. a musical

4. a romance 3. a science fiction film

С

1. The African Queen

- 2. The Wizard of Oz
- 3. Dr. Jekyll and Mr. Hyde
- 4. 2001: A Space Odyssey

Exercise 6

Α

- Shine is a movie which is based on a true story about an Australian pianist.
- Geoffrey Rush is the actor who won an award for his role in the movie Shine.
- Mae West is an actress who was known for her roles in silent films.
- The Last Emperor is a great movie which won a lot of awards.
- Ginger Rogers was an actress and dancer who made a lot of films about fifty years ago.

₿

Answers will vary. Possible answers:

- The Phantom of the Opera is a musical which has some terrific songs.
- Denzel Washington is an actor who starred in Cry Freedom and The Pelican Brief.

Exercise 7

KAREN: Which one is Keanu Reeves?

PEDRO: Oh, you know him. He's the <u>one</u> who starred in *Speed*.

KAREN: Yeah, I remember. That's one movie that was really exciting. We were glued to our seats.

PEDRO: Right. Reeves is a detective who is hunted by a crazy guy. The guy puts a bomb on a bus that has a lot of people on it.

KAREN: What happens to the people? I forgot.

PEDRO: Well, a woman who is on the bus gets really frightened and...

KAREN: Oh, now I renumber: there's the bus <u>that</u> can't stop, the girl <u>who</u> gets hurt, the man <u>who</u> gets caught, and the couple <u>who</u> fall in love.

PEDRO: Yeah! What a great movie!

Exercise 8

А

- 2. A romance is a movie that has a love story.
- 3. A comedy is a movie that makes you laugh.
- 4. A western is a movie that has cowboys in it.

- 5. A horror film is a movie that is scary.
- 6. A musical is a movie that has songs.
- A nature film is a movie that tells you about animals or plants.

В

Answers will vary.

Exercise 9

- I thought the <u>special effects</u> in Star Wars were terrific. They were very well made and exciting to watch.
- I think the <u>photography</u> to Cances with Wolves is marvelous. There are lots of scenes with wild animals in the beautiful American West.
- Harrison Ford plays the main <u>character</u> in Raiders of the Lost Ark.
- Eve forgotten the name of the <u>composer</u> who wrote the music for the film <u>Ransom</u>.

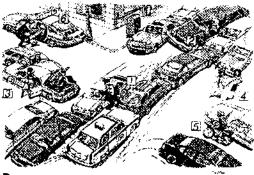
Exercise 10

The English Patient is a fascinating movie that (or which) won lots of awards at the Oscars. It's a romance that (or which) takes place in Italy during the Second World War. The story is about a patient who was badly burned in a plane crash. Ralph Fiennes is the actor who plays the patient. Kristin Scott Thomas is the actress who plays his girlfnend. It's a fantastic movie that (or which) has something for everyone.

Unit 14 SO THAT'S WHAT IT MEANS!

Exercise 1

Α



В

Answers well vary. Posšible answers:

- 2. It might mean he is angry.
- 3. It could mean they need help.
- 4. It must mean they need a taxi.
- 5. Perhaps it means she wants to make a turn.
- Maybe it means there has been a crime.

Exercise 2

Α

annoyed \underline{N} embarrassed \underline{N} interested \underline{P} confused \underline{N} excited \underline{P} shocked \underline{N} disgusted \underline{N} frightened \underline{N}

В

- 2 That sign is really <u>confusing</u>. What does it means? It's not clear at all.
- I'm <u>amazed</u>. I passed my test, and I didn't even study for it.

- The food in that restaurant on the highway is discusting. I'll never eat there again!
- The new horror movie is pretty scary. Some of the scenes are really <u>frightening</u>.

- 2. Pay attention. 3. I'm scared.
- That sounds crazy.

Exercise 4

Α

- 3 If you eat the right food, you will be healthy.
- 1 If someone gives you a present, you should enjoy it and not ask questions about is.
- 4 Don't worry if you love someone who doesn't return your love. You can always find someone else.
- You can't be sure about something until you try it.
- 5 Practice makes perfect, so you shouldn't stop trying. The harder you try, the more you'll be able to get what you want.

В

- A: Oh, yuck. Those fried brains look disgusting.
 B: Try them. They're delicious.
 - A: Really? Oh, they are good. I'm shocked. B: See, The proof of the pudding is in the eating.
- 2 A: Hey, what happened? You look so sad.
 B: I am you know that guy I was dating. Well, last night he said he didn't want to see me anymore.
 A: Well, don't he too worded You'll find any many that the worded You'll find a
 - A: Well, don't be too worned. You'll find someone else. There are plenty of fish in the sea.
 - B: Thanks a lot, That really helps!
- 3 A: You know the person who sits next to me in class gave me these flowers for my birthday I'm amazed. I don't even know his name. What does that mean?
 B: Don't looks gift horse in the mouth. That was really nice. Just say thank you and don't worry.

C

Answers will vary. Possible answers:

- 1. it could mean you shouldn't worry about problems.
- Maybe it means you should check something carefully before you decide if it is good or bad.

Exercise 5

Answers will vary. Possible answers:

- FATHER: Well first you <u>have to</u> start the car. SON: Oh, yeah I almost forgot,
- FATHER: OK Now remember, you aren't allowed to go above the speed limit.
 - SON: I know.
- SON: What does that sign mean?
 FATHER That means you can't turn left.
 SON: OK
- FATHER: See that sign. It means you <u>can</u> turn left or you <u>are allowed to</u> go straight. Lets turn left, but be careful.
 - SON: OK. This is great, Dad. It's easy.
- FATHER: Hey, stop! Didn't you see that sign? It means you <u>must</u> come to a complete stop.
 SON: What sign? I don't see any sign.
 FATHER: That's a problem!

Exercise 6

- 1. It may mean you're not allowed to fish here.
- 2. You aren't allowed to fight a fire here.
- That sign might mean you're not allowed to swim here.
- 4. That sign probably means you can get food here.

Exercise 7

Answers may vary. Possible answers:

TONY: So, tell me what all these things mean, Kanya. KANYA: Well, this one is the fan. <u>You can use</u> it to heat or cool your car.

TONY: And what about this one?

KANYA: That's your horn, You know, in the city, you're not allowed to use it after midnight.

TONY: OK. I'll try to remember that, And what does this one mean?

KANYA: I'm not sure. <u>it's probably</u> the hazard light. When your car breaks down, you turn it on.

TONY: What's this mean?

KANYA Oh, that's your fuel light. You <u>have to</u> add gas when the light is on.

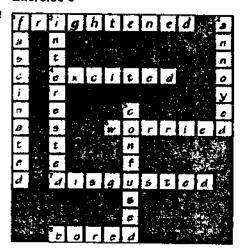
TONY: So, how do you like my new car?

KANYA; Like it? I love it! You must let me drive it. TONY: Uh, I don't think so.

Exercise 8

- A: I fell asleep during class this afternoon. The teacher woke me up.
 - B: Oh, that's embarrassing.
- A: I went to the movies last night. The couple who sat behind me talked during the entire movie.
 B: That's annoying.
- A: Everyone in my office was just fired.
 B: Oh, that's <u>shocking</u>.
- A: A You speak English very well.
 B: Thank you. I learned it three months ago.
 A. That's amazing.

Exercise 9



Unit 15 WHAT WOULD YOU DO?

Exercise 1 A

Answers will vary.

В

Answers will vary. Possible answers:

- It someone climbed through my neighbors window. I think I'd call the police.
- If my boss always made things difficult for me at work, I guess I'd look for another job.
- If a friend sounded unhappy on the phone, I'd invite him or her ower.

Answers will vary. Possible answers:

- If a relative asked to borrow some money, <u>I'd</u> <u>probably say no.</u>
- If I had three wishes, I wouldn't tell anyone about them.
- 3. If I could have any job I wanted, I'd be a movie star.
- 4. If I had a month to live, I'd travel around the world!
- If I could change one thing about myself, I'd be more patient.

Exercise 3

- If I saw a friend cheating on an exam, I know exactly what I'd do. I'd go <u>straight</u> to the teacher.
- I'm in a difficult <u>predicament</u> at work, I don't know whether to talk to my boss about it or just <u>quit.</u>
- If I saw someone <u>shoplifting</u> in a store, I'd tell the store detective immediately.
- 5. I just won 520,000 in the lottery. I think I'll <u>invest</u> it.
- 6. I've just read a great novel. Would you like to <u>borrow</u> it?
- Tom has a drinking problem, but he <u>denies</u> it. He says there is nothing wrong.
- My aunt <u>refused</u> to lend me her car because she thinks I'm a terrible driver.

Exercise 4

А

Answers will vary.

В

- 6 (guess I'd take it back to the store and exchange it for something else.
- 3 I guess I'd write a letter of complaint to the manufacturer.
- Maybe I'd ask them to repair it.
- 4 I think I'd make an appointment to see the instructor to talk about it,
- 2 I'd probably wait until next month to see if they corrected then mistake.
- 1 I'd write a letter to the city council and ask them to pay for the damage.

_

Answers will vary.

Exercise 5

Answers will vary. Possible answers

- I wouldn't have asked her to stop smoking. I would have moved in a different seat.
- I wouldn't have told them to come back the next day.I would have suggested going to a restaurant.
- i wouldn't have called the police. I would have asked them to turn their TV down.
- I wouldn't have given her a bill for her room and board. I would have asked her to leave
- 6.1 wouldn't have decided not to say anything about it. I would have offered to buy a new vase.

Exercise 6

Answers will vary. Possible answers

- I should have called my sister last week, i shouldn't have spent so much moray
- I should have studied harder last month, I shouldn't have been so lazy.
- I should have bought an apartment last year. I shouldn't have bought a new car.

Exercise 7

Δ

Dear Harriet,

I've never written to an advice column before, but I have a big problem. I'm going out with this really nice guy. He's very sweet to me, and I really want to <u>marry</u> him. In fact, we plan to have our wedding next summer. But he has a problem with money. He <u>spends</u> money like crazy! Sometimes he <u>borrows</u> money from me, but he never <u>returns</u> it. When I ask for my money back, he says he has none left. I want to <u>save</u> money because I want us to buy an apartment when we get married. However, if I tell him he has a problem with money, he says: "I <u>disagree</u> with you. You worry too much. You never want to go out and <u>enjoy</u> yourself." As you can see, he just <u>denies</u> his problem. What can I do?

J.M., Sealtle

Dear J.M.

You and your boyfriend must <u>agree</u> on how you spend your money <u>before</u> you get married. If you both <u>admit</u> that there is a problem, you could probably <u>find</u> an answer. He should <u>accept</u> your idea of saving some money. And you shouldn't always <u>refuse</u> to go out and have tun. Don't <u>forget</u> that talking can really help. Good luck!

Harriet

В

Answers will vary.

Exercise 8

A

JUDY: Guess what, Tina! The University of Auckland in New Zealand has offered me a scholarship.

TINA: Great! When are you going?

JUDY: That's just it. I may not go. What <u>would</u> you <u>do</u> if your boyfriend asked you not to go?

TINA. Well, I would invite him to come with me.

JUDY: I've tried that. He said he won't go. And he might break up with me.

TINA: That's ridiculous. If I were you, I would want him not to try and control you. I missed a big opportunity once.

JUDY: What happened?

TINA: I was offered a job in Thailand, but my husband dislike the idea, so we didn't go. I should have taken the job i've always regretted my decision. In my situation, what would you have done?

JUDY: Oh, I would have accepted the offer.

TINA: Well, there's the answer to your predicament. Accept your scholarship!

В

Answers will vary.

Exercise 9

Answers will vary, Possible answers:

- 2.1 wouldn't leave it where someone could see it.
- 3. I could never just leave it on the beach.
- I might try and sell it.
- 5. I might not tell any of my friends about it.

UNIT 16 WHAT'S YOUR EXCUSE?

Exercise 1

- 2. Jenny asked me to type some letters.
- Dave asked me to make copies of these disks.
- 4. Anna asked me to file these documents.
- Linda asked me not to lorget to add paper to the copier

- Ricky asked me to fax this report to New York.
- 7. Chuck asked me to make coffee for him.
- Katie asked me to make five copies and not to give her any excuses;
- 9. Pete asked me to give him a ride home.
- 10. Olive asked me not to be late to work again

Α

Noun Verb Noun Verb acceptance accept cnticize criticize apology apologize excuse excuse complaint complain invitation invite compliment compliment sympathy sympathize

В

- 2. I <u>accepted</u> an invitation to Terry and Anna's house for dinner.
- 3 I didn't want to go to Cindy party, so I made up an excuse.
- 4 I was rude to my teacher. I must give him an apology.
- My English teacher <u>complimented</u> me on my homework She said it was excellent, i was really surprised.
- My parents <u>criticize</u> everything I do. I wish they weren't so negative.
- I'm sorry you have the flu. I had it last week, so I really sympathize with you.
- 3 I received an <u>invitation</u> to Janet's party, I can't wait to go.

Exercise 3

- Larry gave me an apology. He asked me to forgive him because he forgot about the party.
- I couldn't go to the meeting, so I <u>expressed</u> my regrets.
- Wendy told me she was graduating from college, so I <u>offered</u> her my congratulations.
- Jill was very funny at the class party. As usual, she told lots of jokes.

Exercise 4

Α

Invitations

- a. Can you come to the movies on Saturday night? It's a Jack Nicholson movie, and it starts at 9:00 at City Plaza. If you're free earlier, you could meet Ursula and me at Pizza Parlor around 8:00. Also, we thought we might go to a nightclub after the film. Hope you can make it.
- b. Would you like to come to our barbecue on Sunday? It's going to <u>start around noon</u>. In case you've forgotten, we live at 2135 Main Street, We're going to have kebabs and buy chicken, but there will also be vegetarian food. You're a vegetarian, aren't you? Let me know.
- c. Hi! Nicola and I are going hiking on Saturday or Sunday. We thought we'd start early and hike the Forest Hill trail. Nicola said to bring some food and lots to drink if you can come. Oh, and Phi! might be joining us. If you can't make it, you'd better have a good excuse!

Excuses

1 b Thanks for your invitation. Unfortunately, I won't be able to make it. I have to work in the afternoon. I must say I'm really annoyed with my boss. She lives for her work and expects me to do the same.

- Anyway, enjoy yourselves!
- 2 c I got your e-mail-thanks. I'd love to come, but I'll be out of town all weekend. I'm going hiking, too. I hope you have a great time and that the weather is good.
- 3 a Thanks for your e-mail. I'm afraid I'm busy <u>dunng</u> the evening. It's my dad's 50th birthday, and I'm taking him and Mom out to dinner. But I might be able to <u>come dancing later</u>. Let's keep it open-OK?

В

2 be outdoors all weekend

3 go out on the weekend

1 work on the weekend

Exercise 5

A

- Maria said her sister was having a baby.
- Jim said he might have some houseguests on Saturday.
- Keiko and Kenji said they were going camping this weekend.
- Carlos said he was sorry, but he'd be busy on Saturday afternoon

В

- Tom and Nancy told her they dibe moving to their new apartment that day.
- Franco told her he watched the football game on TV every Sunday.
- Juliet told her she'd already made plans to do something else.

В

Answers will vary.

Exercise 6

Α

2.a 3.e 4.b 5.d

В

- 2. William: "I'm sorry I'll be a little late to the party"
- Robert: I can't come for dinner on Friday. I have to work late."
- Janice and Keith: "We're really sorry you have the flu. We hope you feel better soon."
- 5. Ben: "I'm going to ask Sarah to the party."

Exercise 7

- A: We're going to go horseback riding. Do you want to join us?
- B: Sorry, I won't be able to.
- 2. A: I'm really sorry. We'll be out of town this weekend.
- B: No problem.
- 3. A: Meet us at 7:00. OK?
- B: <u>Sounds like fun</u>.
- A: I'm sorry. I won't be able to make it.
- B: Well, never mind.

Exercise 8

Α

	Accepting	Refusing
2. Great	, ,	
Sounds line fun,	1	
4. I've made other plans.		~
5. I won't be able make it		,
6. I'm busy.		1
7. Thanks a lot.	/	
8. I'd love to.	/	

Е

Answers will vary

Chịu trách nhiệm xuất bản

Giám đốc:

PHÙNG QUỐC BẢO

Tổng biên tập:

NGUYỄN THIỆN GIÁP

Biên tập và sửa bản in: VÂN HÀ

> Trình bày bìa: QUYNH MAI

NEW INTERCHANGE 2

Mã số: 02.35.ĐL 2003

In 1000 cuốn tại Nhà in Khoa học Công nghệ

Số xuất bản: 91/120/CXB. Số trích ngang 113 KH/XB In xong và nộp lưu chiểu quý II năm 2003.

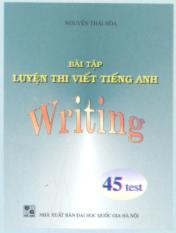
MỞI BẠN TÌM ĐỌC



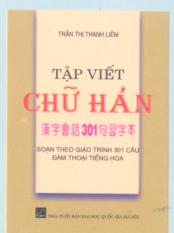
















Giá: 22.000